

Pro S

TIẾNG ANH

Ngữ pháp cho kỳ thi THPT QG

- ✔ Nội dung bám sát chương trình luyện thi THPTQG.
- ✔ Phân loại kiến thức từ nhận biết tới vận dụng cao.
- ✔ Bài giảng video của cô Vũ Mai Phương trên moon.vn.
- ✔ 100% bài tập có giải chi tiết (tra ID).



MỤC LỤC

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 5. GIỚI TỪ VÀ CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ

BÀI 1: GIỚI TỪ (PREPOSITIONS)	5
A - LÝ THUYẾT	5
B - LUYỆN TẬP	30
C - THI ONLINE.....	51
BÀI 2: CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ (PHRASAL VERBS).....	53
A - LÝ THUYẾT	53
B - LUYỆN TẬP	126
C - THI ONLINE.....	143

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 6: CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN

A - LÝ THUYẾT	145
B - LUYỆN TẬP	149
C - THI ONLINE.....	169

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 7: CÂU CHỦ ĐỘNG, BỊ ĐỘNG

A - LÝ THUYẾT	171
B - LUYỆN TẬP	191
C - THI ONLINE.....	212

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 8: CÂU TRỰC TIẾP, GIÁN TIẾP

A - LÝ THUYẾT	214
B - LUYỆN TẬP	236
C - THI ONLINE.....	269

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 9: ĐẢO NGỮ

A - LÝ THUYẾT	271
B - LUYỆN TẬP	285
C - THI ONLINE.....	308

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 10: CÂU HỎI ĐUÔI

A - LÝ THUYẾT	312
B - LUYỆN TẬP	316
C - THI ONLINE	321

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 11: GIẢ ĐỊNH CÁCH

A - LÝ THUYẾT	322
B - LUYỆN TẬP	328
C - THI ONLINE	334

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 12: LIÊN TỪ VÀ CÁC DẠNG MỆNH ĐỀ

BÀI 1: MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ	357
A - LÝ THUYẾT	337
B - LUYỆN TẬP	344
C - THI ONLINE	356
BÀI 2: CÁC DẠNG MỆNH ĐỀ	357
A - LÝ THUYẾT (ID: EV1065)	357
B - LUYỆN TẬP	365
C - THI ONLINE	370
BÀI 3: LIÊN TỪ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ LIÊN KẾT	371
A - LÝ THUYẾT (ID: EV1066)	371
B - LUYỆN TẬP	377
C - THI ONLINE	383

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 13: CHỨC NĂNG GIAO TIẾP

A - LÝ THUYẾT	385
B - LUYỆN TẬP	402
C - THI ONLINE	433

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 14: SỐ ĐẾM - ĐO LƯỜNG - CÁC QUY TẮC CHÍNH TẢ

LÝ THUYẾT	434
-----------------	-----

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 5. GIỚI TỪ VÀ CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ

BÀI 1: GIỚI TỪ (PREPOSITIONS)

A – LÝ THUYẾT

Trong tiết học này, các em sẽ được học khái niệm về các loại giới từ: giới từ chỉ thời gian, giới từ chỉ nơi chốn, giới từ chỉ sự chuyển dịch, giới từ chỉ thể cách, giới từ chỉ mục đích, giới từ chỉ lý do, và phân biệt một số giới từ dễ nhầm lẫn. Bên cạnh đó, các em cũng được học về các tính từ đi với giới từ, danh từ đi với giới từ. Đây là dạng bài quan trọng trong các đề thi tiếng Anh, chúng ta cùng tìm hiểu các em nhé!

I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA (ID: EV1039)

Giới từ (Preposition) là từ loại chỉ sự liên quan giữa các từ loại trong cụm từ, trong câu. Những từ thường đi sau giới từ là tân ngữ (Object), Verb + ing, Cụm danh từ...

Eg: Mozart was born in Salzburg in 1756.

II. CÁC LOẠI GIỚI TỪ

- Giới từ chỉ thời gian: at, on, in, before, after, during, by, until/till, since, for, afterwards,...
- Giới từ chỉ nơi chốn: at, in, on, over, above, below, beneath, under,....
- Giới từ chỉ sự chuyển dịch: to, into, from, across, through, along, round, around,...
- Giới từ chỉ thể cách: with, without,
- Giới từ chỉ mục đích: to, for...
- Giới từ chỉ lý do: at, for, on

1. Giới từ chỉ thời gian

- at: vào lúc (thường đi với giờ):

Eg: at dawn, at mid night, at 6 o'clock, at the age of 16,...

- on: thường đi với ngày:

Eg: on Monday, on June 1st, on Monday morning

- before:

before + V.ing

before + mốc thời gian

Eg: The meal must be done before 7:00 p.m.

I must finish my work before I go home.

- from... to/till/until:
Eg: My mother works from morning till night.
- since + mốc thời gian:
Eg: I have learn English since I was a four-year-old child.
I have lived here since 1998.
- during + danh từ/cụm danh từ ("During" không đi với mệnh đề):
Eg: during the Middle Ages, during the summer,...
- for + khoảng thời gian:
Eg: Last night, I slept for 3 hours.
- till/until + Mốc thời gian:
Eg: I will wait here until 11:30.
- after + Mốc thời gian:
Eg: I called him after lunch.

2. Giới từ chỉ nơi chốn

- at + địa điểm cụ thể, xác định:
Eg: at school, at work, at the bus stop,...
- in:
Eg: in the room, in the forest, in the sky,...
- from:
Eg: I'm from Hanoi.
- on, above, over:
Eg: The cat is on the table
They built a new room above the garage.
I put a rug over the sleeping child.
- under, below, beneath:
Eg: Most of the iceberg is under the water.
The standard of his work is well below the average of his class.
As a musician, he is far beneath his brother.

III. PHÂN BIỆT MỘT SỐ GIỚI TỪ DỄ NHẦM LẪN

1. at, in, on:

- at: dùng trước thời gian ngắn: giờ, phút, giây...
Eg: at 6 o'clock, at mid night, at this moment,....
- in: dùng trước thời gian dài: tháng, mùa, năm,....
Eg: in June, in 2016, in Spring...

- on: dùng trước thời gian chỉ: ngày, thứ ngày (trong lịch)

Eg: On Saturday, on this day,....

❖ Phân biệt "on time/ in time":

- on time: đúng giờ

Eg: The 11.45 train left on time.

- in time: kịp lúc

Eg: Will you be home in time for dinner?

❖ in/at the end:

- in the end, = finally:

Eg: He got more and more angry. In the end he just walked out of the room.

- at the end/beginning of + sth:

Eg: I'm going away at the end of January.

❖ arrive in/at:

- arrive at: khi nơi chốn nhỏ như sân bay, nhà ga...

Eg: They arrived at the airport at 10.00.

- arrive in: khi nơi chốn lớn như quận, tỉnh, thành phố, nước...

Eg: They arrived in Ha Noi at night.

2. in, into, out of:

- in: dùng chỉ vị trí (địa điểm - không chuyển hướng).

Eg: in the room, in the office,...

- into: dùng chỉ sự chuyển động từ ngoài vào trong.

Eg: I go into the room.

- out of: dùng chỉ sự chuyển động từ trong ra ngoài.

Eg: I go out of the room.

3. for, during, since:

- for: dùng để đo khoảng thời gian.

Eg: for two months, for the last few years,...

- during: dùng để chỉ hành động xảy ra trong suốt thời gian của sự vật, sự kiện.

Eg: during the vacation, during the film,...

- since: dùng để đánh dấu thời gian.

Eg: since last Monday, since July,...

4. on, above, up:

- on: dùng chỉ vị trí đứng liền ngay ở trên, chỉ sự tiếp xúc bề mặt.

Eg: on the floor, on the table,...

- above: nghĩa là trên nhưng chỉ sự cao hơn so với vật khác.

Eg: The plane is flying above our heads.

- over: mang nghĩa là trùm lên.

Eg: We put a rug over us.

5. under, below, beneath:

- under: khi vật trực tiếp ở bên dưới, nhất là có dính liền hoặc bị phủ lên.

Eg: Under the table were some wine bottles.

- below: dùng trong câu mang nghĩa thấp hơn trong đo đạc về nhiệt độ, chiều cao,... có thang điểm hay cấp bậc.

Eg: This year, the rainfall was slightly below average.

- beneath: dùng nó trong các loại văn có tính trang trọng.

Eg: Coral reefs that lie beneath the waters were a beautiful sight.

6. between, among:

- between: giữa 2 vật

Eg: I sit between Lan and Huong.

- among: dùng khi không xác định được có bao nhiêu vật.

Eg: He was happy to be among his friends again.

Một số ví dụ:

Điền giới từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống:

1. I haven't seen Kate for a few days. I last saw her Tuesday.
2. the end of the street, there is a path leading to the river.
3. I like to get uptime to have a big breakfast before going to work.
4. It has been raining three days without stopping.
5. We usually go out at weekends, but we don't often go out the week.

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. Đáp án "on"

Dùng "on" trước các danh từ chỉ ngày.

Dịch: Tôi đã không gặp Kate một vài ngày nay rồi. Lần cuối tôi nhìn thấy cô ấy là vào ngày thứ ba.

2. Đáp án "at"

Ta có cấu trúc "At the end of + Noun": ở cuối...

Dịch: Ở cuối con đường này, có một con đường mòn dẫn tới dòng sông.

3. Đáp án "in time"

in time: kịp lúc (để làm gì); on time: đúng giờ.

Dịch: Tôi thích dậy kịp lúc để ăn một bữa sáng no thật no trước khi đi làm.

4. Đáp án "for"

"three days" là một khoảng thời gian nên ta dùng "for".

Dịch: Trời đã mưa 3 ngày không dừng.

5. Đáp án "during"

Ta dùng "during" để chỉ hành động xảy ra trong suốt thời gian của sự vật, sự kiện.

Dịch: Chúng tôi thường đi chơi vào cuối tuần, nhưng chúng tôi thường không đi chơi trong suốt tuần.

Để làm được dạng bài nêu trên các em cần xác định được danh từ đứng sau giới từ đó là loại danh từ nào, đi với giới từ nào. Đồng thời, các em cũng cần phải hiểu được nghĩa của câu để tìm được giới từ phù hợp.

IV. GIỚI TỪ CHỈ SỰ CHUYỂN ĐỘNG (ID: EV1040)

1. to: đến một nơi nào đó

Eg: I will move to New York next week.

When are you coming back to Ho Chi Minh city?

2. from: từ (xuất phát từ một địa điểm nào đó)

Eg: Where do you come from?

3. away from: chỉ sự di chuyển hướng ra xa

Eg: When you hear the alarm, run away from the building.

4. across: qua, ngang qua, băng qua

Eg: He went across the street to buy a box of cigarette.

5. along: dọc theo

Eg: I walked along the street.

The flowers grow along the side of the wall.

6. through: xuyên qua

Eg: The sun is shining through the window.

He walked through a wood.

7. into: vào trong

Eg: I silently walked into the room.

Please throw waste paper into the dustbin.

8. onto: lên trên (bề mặt...)

Eg: The cat jumped onto the table.

Please move these vases onto the kitchen table.

9. up: lên trên (vị trí cao hơn)

Eg: up hill and down dale.

They hiked up the mountain every morning.

10. down: xuống dưới

Eg: He fell down right on the stage.

11. out of: ra ngoài, ra khỏi

Eg: I can't get this ring out of my finger.

Fish can survive for only a short time out of water.

The bird flew out of the cage.

12. past: quá, qua

Eg: He is past fifty.

He ran past the house.

13. off: tách khỏi

Eg: The cover has come off the book.

She fell off the ladder.

14. toward(s): về phía (chưa tới nơi đến).

Eg: He was running towards us.

They drove towards the German frontier.

❖ Phân biệt across, over & through

- **across:** di chuyển từ bên này sang bên kia của một vật mà có các phía như thành phố, sông, đường,...

Eg: We took a boat across the river.

- **through:** được dùng để chỉ sự chuyển động trong không gian 3 chiều, hoặc di chuyển từ chỗ này đến chỗ khác trong một môi trường nào đó được bao quanh: the forest, long glass,...

Eg: I love walking through the forest.

- **over:** bao trùm lên

V. GIỚI TỪ CHỈ MỤC ĐÍCH**1. for + V-ing/Noun:**

Eg: We stopped for a rest.

We use chalk for writing on a blackboard.

2. to = in order to = so as to + V. inf:

Eg: We use chalk to write on a blackboard.

I went out to/in order to/so as to post a letter.

VI. GIỚI TỪ CHỈ NGUYÊN NHÂN**1. for = because of = owing to + N/V.ing**

Eg: Aileen is proud of her family for their support.

Thank you for inviting me to your party.

2. *through: vì*

Eg: He didn't pass the exam through his ignorance.

It was through you that we were able to meet again.

VII. GIỚI TỪ CHỈ THỂ CÁCH

1. *by: bằng cách*

Eg: The thief got in by breaking a window.

The streets are lighted by electricity.

He made the cake by hand.

2. *in: bằng*

Eg: This book is written in English.

There is a statue in marble.

3. *with: với*

Eg: They welcome us with smiles.

If loving you with all my heart is crime, then I'm guilty.

4. *without: không có*

Eg: You can't leave the country without a passport.

He said that he couldn't live without her.

VIII. MỘT SỐ GIỚI TỪ KHÁC

1. *about:*

- Khoảng chừng

Eg: It is about 3 km.

- Về

Eg: What do you think about that?

2. *against:*

- Chống lại, trái với

Eg: struggle against,...

- Đụng phải

Eg: He ran against the trunk.

- Dựa vào

Eg: I placed her against the trunk.

- So với

Eg: The class now has 50 students against 40 last years.

- Chuẩn bị, dự trù

Eg: I saved \$2,000 against my study next year.

3. of:

- Của

Eg: These are the works of Shakespeare.

- Thuộc

Eg: We are of the working class.

- Vì:

Eg: My grandfather died of tuberculosis.

- (Làm) bằng

Eg: She has a house of wood.

- Gồm có

Eg: He is a man of ability.

- Trong

Eg: One of my friends is a doctor.

4. like: giống

Eg: Don't talk like that!

He rides a white horse like mine.

5. except: ngoại trừ

Eg: Everyone except me got an invitation.

The restaurant opens every day except Monday.

IX. VỊ TRÍ CỦA GIỚI TỪ

1. Đứng ngay trước danh từ hay đại từ.

Eg: He usually visits me on Sundays.

I bought a cake for him.

I gave a book to him.

2. Sau động từ: Có thể liền sau động từ, có thể bị 1 từ khác chen giữa động từ và giới từ.

Eg: I live in Hanoi.

I write a letter for him.

3. Đứng sau tobe:

Eg: Jean is at home right now.

The picture is on the wall.

4. Đứng sau tính từ:

Eg: I'm interested in reading.

I'm not worried about living in a foreign country.

5. Trong những trường hợp dưới đây (dùng đại từ quan hệ), giới từ có thể đặt trước đại từ hoặc đặt ở cuối câu:

Eg: Whom are you talking to?

= To whom are you talking?

The man whom you are talking to is my father.

= The man to whom you are talking is my father.

Lưu ý: Vị trí của giới từ trong câu có thể làm thay đổi nghĩa của câu đó.

Eg:

1. A letter was read from his friend in the class room.

A letter from his friend was read in the class room.

2. With his gun towards the forest he started in the morning.

With his gun, he started towards the forest in the morning.

XI. TÍNH TỪ ĐI VỚI GIỚI TỪ (ID: EV1041)

1. Adj + to

STT	Adj + to	Meaning	Example
1	acceptable to	có thể chấp nhận	Is this proposal acceptable to you?
2	accustomed to (Hay dùng: get accustomed to)	quen	I soon got accustomed to his strange ways.
3	agreeable to	có thể đồng ý, thích hợp với	He said the terms were not agreeable to him.
4	applicable to	có thể ứng dụng	"It is not safe to infer that the results of experiments on animals will be applicable to human beings." I said.
5	addicted to st	say mê cái gì, nghiện	Children are often addicted to fairy stories.
6	bad to st	có hại cho, không tốt cho	Staying up late is bad to us.
7	contrary to	trái với	Contrary to his expectations, he found the atmosphere exciting.
8	clear to	rõ ràng	You could see clear to the bottom of the lagoon.
9	close to	gần	He spent close to 30 years in jail.
10	dedicated/devoted to	hiến dâng, tận tụy	I am dedicated to making this world a better place. She is devoted to her job.
11	engaged to	đính hôn	She was engaged to a lecturer.
12	equal to	đủ sức, đủ khả năng	I just don't feel equal to the challenge that I'm facing now.

STT	Adj + to	Meaning	Example
13	essential to/for	cần thiết	Food is essential to/for life.
14	harmful to	có hại	Smoking is harmful to health.
15	faithful to = loyal to	trung thành	He remained faithful to the ideals of the party. These brave soldiers are always loyal to their ideal.
16	grateful/thankful to sb for st	biết ơn ai	I'm grateful/thankful to you for all your help.
17	important to sb	quan trọng đối với ai	It's important to me that you should be there.
18	indifferent to	thờ ơ, lãnh đạm	The government cannot afford to be indifferent to public opinion.
19	kind to sb	tử tế với ai	He was very kind to me when the children were ill.
20	likely to	có khả năng/có thể thích hợp	He is not likely to come now.
21	married to	kết hôn	Ali is married to Salma.
22	necessary to	cần thiết, thiết yếu	Sleeping is necessary to health.
23	open to	cởi mở	The system is open to abuse.
24	opposed to	bất đồng	He was bitterly opposed to the war.
25	polite to	lịch sự	You must be more polite to the customers.
26	related to	liên quan đến	He was related to that crime.
27	responsible to sb	chịu trách nhiệm với ai	The head of state is responsible to his people and must obey the law.
28	similar to	tương tự	Your hat is similar to mine.
29	sensitive to/about	nhạy cảm	She is very sensitive to other people's feelings.
30	used to	quen với	I'm used to getting up early.

2. Adj + of

STT	Adj + of	Meaning	Example
1	afraid of	sợ hãi	Are you afraid of snakes?
2	ashamed of	xấu hổ, bối rối	She was deeply ashamed of her behaviour at the party.

STT	Adj + of	Meaning	Example
3	aware of	nhận thức về cái gì	He was well aware of the problem.
4	capable of	có khả năng về cái gì	He is capable of anything if it furthers his ambition.
5	careful of/with/about sth	cẩn thận	He was very careful of his reputation.
6	certain of/about	chắc chắn về cái gì	You don't seem too certain of it.
7	characteristic of	đặc trưng cho tính cách của ai đó hoặc của vật nào đó	Enthusiasm is characteristic of him.
8	conscious of	nhận thức, chú ý đến	She's very conscious of the problems involved.
9	desirous of	khao khát	The Pope was desirous of peace in Europe.
10	doubtful of/about	ngghi ngờ	I was doubtful of my judgement.
11	envious of = jealous of	ghen tị	He was envious of the local boys who could see her every day. Other girls were jealous of her good looks.
12	fond of	ưa thích	I'm fond of cooking.
13	frightened of	sợ hãi	I've always been frightened of snakes.
14	full of	đầy	The bin needs emptying, it's full of rubbish.
15	guilty of	cảm thấy có lỗi, hối lỗi	She was guilty of a serious error of judgement.
16	hopeful of/about	hi vọng	She is hopeful of returning to work soon.
17	incapable of	không có khả năng	Professors who seem incapable of any original thought.
18	innocent of	ngây thơ, vô tội	She was found innocent of any crime.
19	independent of	độc lập	The study is totally independent of central government.
20	nervous of/about	lo lắng	He's always been a little nervous of speaking in public.

STT	Adj + of	Meaning	Example
21	proud of	tự hào về	They are proud of their daughter.
22	respectful of/for	lễ phép, tôn trọng	I'm respectful of your opinion.
23	be/get + rid of	tống khứ	We got rid of all the old furniture.
24	sick of	chán ngấy	I'm sick of waiting around like this.
25	scared of	sợ hãi	All small children are scared of ghost.
26	sure of	chắc chắn	I'm not sure of the results.
27	suspicious of/about	ngghi ngờ	He was suspicious of/about her motives.
28	tired of	chán vì cái gì	I am tired of studying all the time.
29	terrified of	cảm thấy khiếp sợ	I'm terrified of spiders.
30	typical of	điển hình	This meal is typical of local cookery.
31	unaware of	không nhận thức được	He was unaware of my presence.

3. Adj + for

STT	Adj + for	Meaning	Example
1	anxious for sb about st	lo lắng	Parents are naturally anxious for their children.
2	appreciated for	được đánh giá cao	I was appreciated for my help.
3	available for	có sẵn, sẵn sàng	The Prime Minister was not available for comment.
4	bad for st	có hại cho	Staying up late is bad for our health.
5	convenient for	thuận tiện, thuận lợi	Will it be convenient for you to start work tomorrow?
6	difficult for	khó	The questions are too difficult for the children.
7	eager for	hào hứng	I am eager for my next trip.
8	eligible for	đủ điều kiện	Only those over 70 are eligible for the special payment.
9	enough for	đủ	Have we got enough sandwiches for lunch?
10	important for	quan trọng cho	Oxygen is important for our lives.
11	famous for	nổi tiếng	Hanoi is famous for "pho".

STT	Adj + for	Meaning	Example
12	grateful/thankful for s.t	biết ơn	I was grateful for the light so I could see. I hold my babies tight and I am thankful for every moment I have with them.
13	late for	muộn	He was ten minutes late for school.
14	necessary for	cần thiết	She hasn't the experience necessary for the job.
15	perfect for	hoàn hảo	It was my favorite little black dress that I thought would be absolutely perfect for my date with Rick.
16	prepared for st	chuẩn bị	The troops were being prepared for battle.
17	qualified for	đủ điều kiện, đủ khả năng	He is qualified for this dangerous mission.
18	responsible for st/ v-ing	có trách nhiệm	You must be responsible for paying these bills.
19	ready for	sẵn sàng	I'm ready for the exam.
20	sorry for st/V-ing	lấy làm tiếc, hối hận	Aren't you sorry for what you've done?
21	suitable for	thích hợp	This programme is not suitable for children.
22	sufficient for	đầy đủ	He had a small private income which was sufficient for her needs.

4. Adj + at

STT	Adj + at	Meaning	Example
1	amazed/astonished + at/by	ngạc nhiên	My parents looked astonished at my news.
2	amused at/by	vui vẻ, thích thú	Everyone is amused at/by the clown's comic gestures.
3	angry at/about st	tức giận	I was very angry at how rainy it was.
4	annoyed at/about st	bực mình cái gì	He was beginning to get very annoyed at/about my carelessness.
5	bad at	không giỏi về, dốt	I'm bad at Maths.
6	clever at	thông minh	She's clever at getting what she wants.

STT	Adj + at	Meaning	Example
7	delighted at/by/with	vui vẻ, hài lòng	She was delighted by/at the news of the wedding.
8	excellent at	xuất sắc	My teacher is excellent at English.
9	furious at	giận dữ, điên tiết	They were furious at not being invited to the party.
10	good at	giỏi	I'm good at English.
11	hopeless at	không còn hy vọng, vô vọng	I'm hopeless at science. I am hopeless at paying my bills on time.
12	lucky at	may mắn cho cái gì	I'm lucky at winning this trip.
13	proficient in/at	thành thạo	I was proficient at my job.
14	quick at	nhanh	He is quick at solving mathematical problems.
15	slow at	chậm	She is frequently slow at making up her mind.
16	shocked at/by	sốc	I was shocked at the news of her death.
17	skillful at	khéo tay, tài giỏi	He is skillful at inventing excuses.
18	surprised at/by	ngạc nhiên	We were surprised at your behavior.

5. Adj + with

STT	Adj + with	Meaning	Example
1	acquainted with (Hay dùng: get acquainted with)	quen với cái gì	The students are already acquainted with the work of Shakespeare.
2	associated with	cộng tác với, liên quan tới	He no longer wished to be associated with the party's policy on education.
3	annoyed with sb at/about st	khó chịu	Kelly was annoyed with him.
4	bored with = fed up with	chán	I'm bored with my job. In the end, I just got fed up with his constant complaining.
5	busy with sth/doing st (hoặc busy doing sth)	bận rộn	Irina and Marcus were busy with preparations for their wedding.

STT	Adj + with	Meaning	Example
6	content with	bằng lòng với cái gì	She seemed quite content with her results.
7	careful with/about/of sth	cẩn thận	Please be careful with my glasses.
8	connected with	kết nối với, liên hệ với	The fall in retail sales is directly connected with the decline in employment.
9	crowded with sth = packed with	đông đúc, đầy	This is a room crowded with books
10	disappointed with/at/by/in	thất vọng	I was very disappointed with myself.
11	dissatisfied with	không hài lòng	He has been very dissatisfied with his life in recent months.
12	delighted at/by/with	vui vẻ, hài lòng	I was delighted with my presents.
13	familiar with	quen thuộc	He is familiar with me.
14	friendly with	thân thiện	I am very friendly with the people.
15	generous with	rộng rãi, rộng lượng	To be generous with your time.
16	gentle with	lịch thiệp	He is gentle with women and children.
17	involved with	liên quan đến	Angela told me she was involved with someone else.
18	pleased with	hài lòng với	It took a long time to complete the work, but I'm very pleased with the results.
19	patient with	nhẫn nại	Susan's very patient with the children.
20	popular with	được yêu thích bởi số đông	These policies are unlikely to prove popular with middle-class voters.
21	satisfied with	hài lòng với	He felt satisfied with his job.
22	troubled with	bồn chồn, lo lắng	Don't be troubled with that.
23	wrong with	sai về	There's something wrong with the printer.

6. Adj + in

STT	Adj + in	Meaning	Example
1	disappointed at/by/with/in	thất vọng	I'm disappointed in you. I really thought I could trust you!

2	experienced in	có kinh nghiệm về cái gì	He's very experienced in looking after animals.
3	honest in	trung thực	Always be honest in whatever you do.
4	involved in	liên quan đến; dành nhiều thời gian, sự chú ý	We need to examine all the costs involved in the project first. I was so involved in my book I didn't hear you knock.
5	interested in	quan tâm, thích thú	I'm interested in football.
6	proficient in/at	thành thạo	She felt reasonably proficient in Italian.
7	rich in	giàu	Many vegetables and fruits are rich in vitamins.
8	successful in	thành công	Finally, they were successful in putting out the fire.
9	weak in	kém về	He is the student who is weak in algebra.

7. Adj + from

STT	Adj + from	Meaning	Example
1	absent from	vắng mặt	Most pupils were absent from school at least once.
2	derived from	bắt nguồn từ cái gì	In fact the word "fiction" is derived from the Greek "fictus", which means to shape.
3	different from	khác	Their tastes are different from mine.
4	distinct from	khác biệt	Man is distinct from animals.
5	free of/from	không chứa hoặc không bị ảnh hưởng bởi thứ gì đó độc hại, không tốt	free from difficulty/doubt/fear free from artificial colours and flavourings.
6	far from	cách xa	My house is far from my school.
7	isolated from = separate from	tách biệt	He was isolated from all the other prisoners. Criticism of one can and should be kept entirely separate from the other.

8. *Adj + about*

STT	Adj + about	Meaning	Example
1	anxious about sth/for sb	lo lắng	He seemed anxious about the meeting.
2	confused about	bối rối, nhầm lẫn	She was utterly confused about what had happened.
3	careful with/about/of sth	cẩn thận	I'm very careful about washing my hands before eating.
4	concerned about sth	quan tâm về cái gì	The President is deeply concerned about this issue.
5	crazy about	điên cuồng vì cái gì	It's pretty obvious he's crazy about you.
6	certain about/of	chắc chắn về cái gì	You don't seem too certain about it.
7	curious about	tò mò, hiếu kỳ	She was curious about what had happened.
8	doubtful about	hoài nghi, không chắc chắn	Rosy was doubtful about the whole idea.
9	excited about	có hứng thú với	I'm very excited about the news.
10	enthusiastic about	hứng thú	You don't sound very enthusiastic about the idea.
11	glad about	vui mừng	She wasn't going to leave, and he was glad about that.
12	happy about/with	hạnh phúc, hài lòng	If there's anything you're not happy about, come and ask.
13	hopeful of/about	hi vọng	He is not very hopeful about the outcome of the interview.
14	nervous of/about	lo lắng	She was nervous about walking home so late.
15	optimistic about < pessimistic	lạc quan >> không lạc quan	Peter is not optimistic about the outcome. Doctors are pessimistic about his chances of making a full recovery.
16	serious about	nghiêm trọng, nghiêm túc	I'm serious about my work.
17	suspicious of/about	ngghi ngờ	I'm always suspicious about his kindness.
18	upset about	buồn về	I was upset about losing my money.
19	worried about	lo lắng	He is always worried about his wife.

9. Adj + on

STT	Adj + on	Meaning	Example
1	based on	dựa trên cái gì	This novel is based on a real story.
2	dependent on	phụ thuộc vào, dựa vào	Success is dependent on how hard you work.
3	keen on	thích thú	The kids are mad keen on computer games at the moment.

Một số ví dụ:

Chọn đáp án đúng

- We were very grateful our friends for all of their assistant.
A. for B. with C. to D. in
- Was your friend succesful.....getting a loan from the bank?
A. on B. in C. with D. at

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. Đáp án C

to be grateful to sb for st: biết ơn ai về điều gì

Dịch: Chúng tôi rất biết ơn những người bạn của mình vì tất cả sự giúp đỡ của họ.

2. Đáp án B

to be successful in: thành công trong việc gì

Dịch: Bạn của bạn có thành công trong việc vay tiền ngân hàng không?

Để làm được dạng bài nêu trên các em cần nhớ được tính từ nào thì đi với giới từ nào và nghĩa của chúng.

XI. DANH TỪ ĐI VỚI GIỚI TỪ (ID: EV1042)

GIỚI TỪ ĐI SAU DANH TỪ

1. N + to

STT	N + to	Meaning	Example
1	according to	theo	According to the archives, he was born in Paris.
2	attention to Hay dùng: pay attention to	quan tâm, chú ý	I pay attention to the details.
3	attitude to/toward	thái độ	He has a very bad attitude to/towards work.

STT	N + to	Meaning	Example
4	answer to	câu trả lời	The minister promised to give a written answer to the MP's detailed question.
5	cruelty to	độc ác	The farmer was accused of cruelty to animals.
6	contribution to (Hay dùng: made a contribution to)	đóng góp	This invention made a major contribution to road safety.
7	admission to	quyền được vào, được tham gia	Admission to the exhibition will be by invitation only.
8	devotion to	cống hiến	She will be remembered for her selfless devotion to the cause.
9	addiction to	thói nghiện cái gì	I have an addiction to mystery stories.
10	damage to (Hay dùng: do/ cause damage to sth)	thiệt hại	Recent discoveries about corruption have done serious damage to the company's reputation.
11	invitation to	lời mời	Thanks for the invitation to your birthday party.
12	key to	giải pháp	See the key to test 3 on page 176.
13	reaction to	phản ứng	Reactions to the proposal so far have been adverse.
14	reply to	đáp lại	There were very few replies to our advertisement.
15	thanks to	nhờ có	Thanks to my friends helped me with the exam, I passed it.
16	owing to	nhờ có	The concert has been cancelled owing to lack of interest.
17	with a view to	với mục đích gì	These measures have been taken with a view to increasing the company's profits.
18	appeal to	lời kêu gọi ai	The police made an appeal to the public to remain calm.
19	guide to	sách hướng dẫn cái gì	He has written a fully comprehensive guide to Rome.
20	introduction to	trải nghiệm đầu tiên	That trip was my introduction to winter sports.

STT	N + to	Meaning	Example
21	clue to	đầu mối, manh mối	The police found a vital clue to the girl's disappearance in a wooded area near her home.

2. N + for

STT	N + for	Meaning	Example
1	a cheque for + số tiền	tấm séc trị giá...	I wrote him a cheque for £50.
2	demand for	nhu cầu	There was little demand for tickets.
3	need for	nhu cầu	There's a growing need for cheap housing in the larger cities.
4	dislike for	ghét	I have a strong dislike for this movie.
5	reason for	lý do	Car exhaust is the main reason for the city's pollution.
6	passion/love for	niềm say mê	Anton has a consuming passion for science fiction.
7	desire for	sự mong muốn, khao khát gì	There is a strong desire for peace among the people.
8	estimate for	bản dự tính	We'll accept the lowest of three estimates for the building work.
9	incentive for	khuyến khích, khích lệ, động viên	There is little incentive for people to leave their cars at home when public transport remains so expensive.
10	inspiration for	niềm say mê, nguồn cảm hứng	The golden autumn light provided the inspiration for the painting.
11	request for	yêu cầu về việc gì	They received hundreds of requests for more information.
12	room for	chỗ trống	Is there enough room for me in the car?
13	thirst for	sự khao khát	He's always had a thirst for adventure.

3. N + in

STT	N + in	Meaning	Example
1	an increase in	tăng	Any increase in production would be helpful.

STT	N + in	Meaning	Example
2	rise in	sự tăng lên	The rise in house prices him to sell his house for a large profit.
3	a fall/drop/ decrease in	giảm	There has been a steady decrease in the number of visitors.
4	advance in	sự phát triển	Recent advances in medical science mean that this illness can now be cured.
5	delight in = pleasure of	vui thích	He seems to take great delight in teasing his sister.
6	confidence in	sự tin tưởng	I have complete confidence in her. She'll be perfect for the job.
7	faith in	sự tin tưởng	All her life she had implicit faith in socialism.
8	interest in	sự quan tâm	I've always had an interest in astronomy.
9	revolution in	cuộc cách mạng	Penicillin produced a revolution in medicine.
10	specialist in	chuyên gia	She's a specialist in childhood illnesses.
11	trade in	sự buôn bán	There's a flourishing trade in second-hand video machines.
12	trust in	sự tin cậy, tin tưởng	Sometimes you have to trust in the goodness of human nature.
13	delay in	sự trì hoãn cái gì	There has been a delay in the book's publication.
14	truth in	tính xác thực	There is no truth in the reports of his resignation.

4. N + of

STT	N + of	Meaning	Example
1	cause of	nguyên nhân	Sugar is a major cause of tooth decay.
2	picture of	tranh	Freddy drew/painted a picture of my dog.
3	photograph of	ảnh	A photograph of her daughter was prominently displayed on her desk.
4	danger of	nguy hiểm	If there's any danger of seeing Gary at the party, I'm not going.

STT	N + of	Meaning	Example
5	a number of	số lượng	A large number of invitations have been sent.
6	a lot of	nhiều	There were a lot of people there.
7	as a result of	là kết quả của	750 manual workers will lose their jobs as a result of company cutback.
8	for fear of	sợ	I didn't want to move for fear of waking her up.
9	in the middle of	ở giữa	When she called, I was in the middle of making dinner.
10	on behalf of	thay mặt	He gave what amounted to an apology on behalf of his company.

5. N + between.../with....

STT	N + between.../with....	Meaning	Example
1	a relationship/a connection/contact with...	mối quan hệ/ sự kết nối/ liên lạc với....	Do you have a good relationship with your parent? The police want to question a man in connection with the robbery.
2	Nhưng: a relationship/a connection/a different between two things or people	mối quan hệ/ sự kết nối/ liên lạc giữa 2 vật hoặc 2 người	There are some differences between British and American English.

GIỚI TỪ ĐI TRƯỚC DANH TỪ

1. By + N

STT	By + N	Meaning	Example
1	by heart	học thuộc lòng	My father can still recite the poems he learned by heart at school.
2	by chance	tình cờ	I got this job completely by chance.
3	by mistake	nhầm	I've paid this bill twice by mistake.
4	by air	đường hàng không	I don't travel much by air.
5	by accident	tình cờ	I deleted the file by accident.

STT	By + N	Meaning	Example
6	by cheque	bằng séc	I don't have any cash on me, so could I pay by cheque?
7	by all means	bằng mọi cách	"May I borrow this book?" "By all means".
8	by the way	nhân tiện	I think we've discussed everything we need to - by the way, what time is it?

2. In + N

STT	In + N	Meaning	Example
1	in fact	thực tế	He was in fact near death by the time they reached him.
2	in general	nhìn chung	In general, men are taller than women.
3	in charge of	chịu trách nhiệm	The teacher put me in charge of organizing the project.
4	in cash	bằng tiền mặt	Will you pay by credit card or in cash?
5	in public	công chúng	I'd never behave like that in public.
6	in advance	đặt trước	If you're going to come, please let me know in advance.
7	in addition to	thêm vào	In addition to his apartment in Manhattan, he has a villa in Italy and a castle in Scotland.
8	in debt	nợ nần	The company is deep in debt.
9	in good/bad condition	ngăn nắp/không ngăn nắp	The arms, eight muskets, and as many horse-pistols, were in good condition, and all loaded.
10	in person	trực tiếp	All the famous movie stars were there in person.
11	in my opinion	theo tôi	In my opinion, that is a very ugly picture.
12	in trouble/difficulties	khó khăn	She'll be in big trouble if she scratches Sam's car.
13	in vain	vô ích	I tried in vain to start a conservation.

14	in other words	nói cách khác	He was economical with the truth - in other words, he was lying.
15	in danger of	có nguy cơ	If he carries on like this he's in danger of losing his job.

3. On + N

STT	On + N	Meaning	Example
1	on fire	lửa	If your home was on fire and you could save only one thing, what would it be?
2	on strike	đình công	The city's bus drivers have been on strike for three weeks.
3	on holiday	nghỉ	Patricia is on holiday next week.
4	on time	đúng giờ	The 11.45 train left on time.
5	on credit	tín dụng	They decided to buy the car on credit.
6	on purpose	cố tình	I didn't do it on purpose - it was an accident.
7	on condition that	với điều kiện là	I'll come to the party on the condition that you don't wear those ridiculous trousers!
8	on average	trung bình	My income's rather variable, but I earn £175 a day on average.
9	on the whole	nói chung	We have our bad times but on the whole we're fairly happy.
10	on sale	giảm giá	The new model goes on sale next month.
11	on display	trưng bày	There are so many pictures on display.
12	on TV/on the telephone	trên TV/điện thoại	I heard my song on TV.

4. For + N

STT	for + N	Meaning	Example
1	for a walk/change	đi dạo	We stopped for a walk.
2	for a picnic/drink	cho một bữa ăn ngoài trời/ cho một thức uống	Would you like to go out for a drink.
3	for example	ví dụ	Offices can easily become more environmentally - friendly by, for example, using recycled paper.

4	for a while	một lúc	I haven't seen him for a while.
5	for the moment	tạm thời	Let's keep doing what we agreed for the moment.
6	for life	cả đời	I believe marriage is for life.

5. Out of + N

STT	Out of + N	Meaning	Example
1	out of the question	không thể thực hiện	A formal coalition is out of the question.
2	out of work	thất nghiệp	Both she and her husband are out of work.
3	out of tune	bị hỏng	The piano is out of tune.
4	out of date	lỗi thời, lạc hậu	That radio looks so out of date.
5	out of luck	kém may mắn	The bike only comes in large sizes, so if you're a short person you're out of luck.

6. At + N

STT	at + N	Meaning	Example
1	at present	hiện tại, vào lúc này	At present she's working abroad.
2	at risk	có rủi ro, nguy hiểm	As with all diseases, certain groups will be more at risk than others.
3	at first sight	từ cái nhìn đầu tiên	The moment I saw her, it was love at first sight.
4	at war	đang gây chiến tranh	Two countries are at war.
5	at times	thi thoảng	You can be really annoying at times, you know.
6	at a disadvantage	đang gặp bất lợi	Having too little money to spend has put me at a disadvantage with my friends.

Ví dụ:

Chọn đáp án đúng:

1. The reason_____ this meeting is to discuss the cause of the reduction in price.

A. in B. on C. of D. for

2. Did you do any damage_____ the house?

A. for B. in C. of D. to

3. If we go to war, innocent lives will be put ____ risk

- A. at B. in C. on D. of

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. Đáp án D

reason for: lý do

Dịch: Lý do cho buổi họp này là để thảo luận nguyên nhân của việc cắt giảm giá.

2. Đáp án D

damage to: thiệt hại đến

Dịch: Bạn có gây ra thiệt hại nào đến ngôi nhà không?

3. Đáp án A

at risk: nguy hiểm

Dịch: Nếu chúng ta xảy ra chiến tranh, những cuộc đời vô tội sẽ bị đặt vào chỗ nguy hiểm

Để làm được dạng bài nêu trên các em cần nhớ được danh từ nào thì đi với giới từ nào và nghĩa của chúng.

B - LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1: (ID: ET1099)

Câu 1 [ID: 288377] I shall meet you ____ the corner of the street.

- A. at B. in C. to D. from

Câu 2 [ID: 288378] It never snows here ____ Christmas.

- A. in B. on C. into D. at

Câu 3 [ID: 288379] He never comes ____ time for the class.

- A. at B. on C. in D. since

Câu 4 [ID: 288380] We had a few problems at first, but ____ the end everything was OK.

- A. at B. in C. on D. from

Câu 5 [ID: 288381] I'm going away ____ the end of this week.

- A. at B. on C. in D. since

Câu 6 [ID: 288382] I waited for you ____ half an hour and then decided that you weren't coming.

- A. at B. in C. on D. for

Câu 7 [ID: 288383] I have no time ____ the moment.

- A. in B. on C. into D. at

Câu 8 [ID: 288384] There is vocabulary ____ the end of the book.

- A. in B. at C. onto D. on

- Câu 23 [ID: 288421] I felt really ill last week. I could hardly eat anything _____ three days.
A. since B. for C. during D. on
- Câu 24 [ID: 288425] I'll be moving to a new address _____ the end of September.
A. at B. in C. on D. for
- Câu 25 [ID: 288430] The course begins _____ 7 January and ends sometimes _____ April.
A. at/on B. in/on C. at/in D. on/in
- Câu 26 [ID: 288441] There are usually a lot of parties _____ New Year's Eve.
A. at B. in C. on D. since
- Câu 27 [ID: 288499] It was a lovely day. There wasn't a cloud _____ the sky.
A. at B. in C. on D. into
- Câu 28 [ID: 288508] There are some beautiful trees _____ the park.
A. at B. in C. on D. from
- Câu 29 [ID: 288509] There were many interruptions _____ the president's speech.
A. since B. for C. during D. on
- Câu 30 [ID: 288510] The president gave a long speech. She spoke _____ two hours.
A. since B. for C. during D. of
- Câu 31 [ID: 288511] There are forty students _____ the class.
A. at B. in C. on D. into
- Câu 32 [ID: 288512] The oranges are _____ the table.
A. at B. in C. on D. for
- Câu 33 [ID: 288513] We will leave _____ 10:30 _____ Monday.
A. at/on B. at/in C. in/on D. in/at
- Câu 34 [ID: 288514] Valentine is _____ 14th February.
A. at B. in C. on D. for
- Câu 35 [ID: 288515] We are going to have a party _____ Christmas.
A. at B. in C. on D. since
- Câu 36 [ID: 288516] There are some food _____ the fridge.
A. at B. in C. on D. into
- Câu 37 [ID: 288517] The country looks beautiful _____ Springs.
A. at B. in C. on D. since
- Câu 38 [ID: 288518] I don't like getting up early _____ Sunday morning.
A. at B. in C. on D. for
- Câu 39 [ID: 288519] I have breakfast _____ 7:00 every morning.
A. at B. in C. on D. for

Câu 40 [ID: 288520] I like swimming _____ the summer.

- A. at B. in C. on D. into

Câu 41 [ID: 288521] He was born _____ 1995.

- A. at B. on C. in D. from

Câu 42 [ID: 288522] I'll see her _____ the beginning of the week.

- A. at B. in C. on D. since

Câu 43 [ID: 288523] I'm very busy _____ present.

- A. in B. on C. from D. at

Câu 44 [ID: 288524] _____ the last few days, I haven't been able to sleep _____ night.

- A. During/in B. During/at C. Since/on D. For/at

Câu 45 [ID: 288525] _____ Saturday night, I went to bed _____ midnight.

- A. On/in B. At/at C. On/at D. On/on

Câu 46 [ID: 288526] Summer comes _____ Spring.

- A. after B. into C. in D. before

Câu 47 [ID: 288527] The train service isn't very good. The trains are rarely _____.

- A. in time B. on time C. after time D. before time

Câu 48 [ID: 288528] We usually go out at weekends, but we don't often go out _____ the week.

- A. since B. for C. during D. on

Câu 49 [ID: 288529] – Can we eat now? – Let's wait _____ Peter comes.

- A. until B. for C. in D. to

Câu 50 [ID: 288530] They have married _____ October.

- A. from B. on C. during D. since

ĐÁP ÁN

1. A	2. D	3. B	4. B	5. A	6. D	7. D	8. B	9. C	10. B
11. C	12. D	13. A	14. B	15. B	16. B	17. B	18. A	19. B	20. A
21. D	22. C	23. B	24. A	25. D	26. C	27. B	28. B	29. C	30. B
31. B	32. C	33. A	34. C	35. A	36. B	37. B	38. C	39. A	40. B
41. C	42. A	43. D	44. D	45. C	46. A	47. B	48. C	49. A	50. D

LUYỆN TẬP 2: (ID: ET1100)

Câu 1 [ID: 288531] _____ the end of the month, I'm going to stay at my uncle's place _____ Chicago _____ a week.

- A. In/in/during B. At/in/in C. At/in/for D. In/in/in

Câu 19 [ID: 288549] I began to work here _____ January _____ the year 1990.

- A. on-in B. at-on C. in-in D. in-at

Câu 20 [ID: 288550] He thought _____ a moment and then spoke.

- A. on B. at C. for D. during

Câu 21 [ID: 288551] _____ time of war we have to agree to things we should refuse _____ time of peace.

- A. in-in B. in-on C. on-on D. in-on

Câu 22 [ID: 288552] I can't get this ring _____ my finger.

- A. off B. out of C. out D. for

Câu 23 [ID: 288553] Many people _____ the Orient like plain boiled rice.

- A. during B. at C. in D. on

Câu 24 [ID: 288554] I will stay _____ London _____ about three weeks.

- A. in-for B. on- for C. in-during D. on-during

Câu 25 [ID: 288555] He walked _____ the room _____ which we were sitting.

- A. in-on B. onto-in C. into-in D. into-on

Câu 26 [ID: 288556] He became a singer _____ the age of 16.

- A. at B. in C. on D. from

Câu 27 [ID: 288557] I have learnt English _____ 6 years.

- A. since B. in C. within D. for

Câu 28 [ID: 288558] He is a successful man _____ his forties.

- A. on B. in C. about D. to

Câu 29 [ID: 288559] He was much stronger _____ his holiday in the mountain.

- A. in B. at C. on D. after

Câu 30 [ID: 288560] Lan often visits her grandparents _____ the weekends.

- A. on B. in C. at D. A & C

ĐÁP ÁN

1. C	2. A	3. B	4. A	5. A	6. A	7. A	8. B	9. C	10. C
11. C	12. B	13. A	14. A	15. D	16. A	17. D	18. B	19. C	20. C
21. A	22. B	23. C	24. A	25. C	26. A	27. D	28. B	29. D	30. D

LUYỆN TẬP 3: (ID: ET1101)

Câu 1 [ID: 289131] I had passed the exam with the flying colors ____ studying constantly.

- A. from B. by C. up D. towards

Câu 2 [ID: 289132] The old couple became very ill _____ the neglect of their families.

- A. of B. from C. through D. to

Câu 3 [ID: 289133] _____ the drought, crops are short.

- A. owing to B. Across C. with D. from

Câu 4 [ID: 289134] "Just stay ____ him ! He has gone down with the flu.

- A. to B. against C. from D. away from

Câu 5 [ID: 289135] Porter lost everything when he went to prison ____ his books.

- A. because of B. with C. except D. for

Câu 6 [ID: 289136] Canned goods and condensed milk became more common during the 1860's, but supplies remained low because cans had to be made ____ hand.

- A. of B. by C. with D. without

Câu 7 [ID: 289137] I cheered up my mother ____ cooking dinner for her.

- A. with B. of C. by D. on

Câu 8 [ID: 289138] I walked ____ the office.

- A. on B. at C. below D. to

Câu 9 [ID: 289139] Move the books ____ the second shelf.

- A. onto B. into C. from D. to

Câu 10 [ID: 289140] He threw the letter ____ the fire.

- A. on B. at C. in D. into

Câu 11 [ID: 289141] Tom dived ____ the water.

- A. into B. along C. against D. onto

Câu 12 [ID: 289142] You can't enter this camp ____ a permit from the General.

- A. without B. with C. by D. bike

Câu 13 [ID: 289143] As I was walking ____ the street, I saw a \$ 10 note on the pavement.

- A. through B. along C. to D. into

Câu 14 [ID: 289144] Be careful when you walk ____ the street.

- A. through B. above C. across D. up

Câu 15 [ID: 289145] Some children can cover the whole length of the pool ____ coming up for breath even once.

- A. owing to B. by C. with D. without

Câu 16 [ID: 289147] He stayed home ____ the rain.

- A. because B. because of C. for D. against

Câu 17 [ID: 289150] There's nothing ____ exercises for making you warm.

- A. like B. in C. for D. about

Câu 18 [ID: 289152] The village runs ____ the bus-stop.

- A. past B. from C. along D. across

Câu 19 [ID: 289153] He landed the airplane all right, but it was more ____ good luck than good management.

- A. against B. by C. because of D. with

Câu 20 [ID: 289154] I shall wait _____ you.

- A. about B. by C. to D. for

Câu 21 [ID: 289155] He'll do anything _____ money.

- A. to B. for C. up D. below

Câu 22 [ID: 289156] Governments should bring up international laws _____ terrorism.

- A. against B. to C. for D. because of

Câu 23 [ID: 289157] Our conference was interrupted _____ telephone calls several times.

- A. for B. with C. of D. by

Câu 24 [ID: 289158] I have moved _____ England since 2006.

- A. to B. by C. with D. for

Câu 25 [ID: 289159] Malaria can be controlled _____ attacking the parasite.

- A. on B. by C. with D. out of

Câu 26 [ID: 289160] Only _____ doing homework, can you get good marks.

- A. by B. with C. for D. in

Câu 27 [ID: 289171] It is _____ three o'clock; it is nearly a quarter past three.

- A. about B. at C. past D. around

Câu 28 [ID: 289173] We started _____ Hanoi at 6 o'clock.

- A. from B. about C. across D. along

Câu 29 [ID: 289174] The hotel is _____ the river.

- A. with B. across C. out of D. no preposition

Câu 30 [ID: 289176] I like skiing _____ big mountains.

- A. up B. down C. about D. across

Câu 31 [ID: 289178] He took the money _____ his pocket.

- A. out B. out from C. onto D. out of

Câu 32 [ID: 289179] I earn a good salary _____ working hard.

- A. by B. with C. into D. about

Câu 33 [ID: 289181] The army swept through the city _____ a pestilence.

- A. in B. like C. from D. up

Câu 34 [ID: 289182] The aim of this exam is _____ test your IQ.

- A. onto B. into C. to D. from

Câu 35 [ID: 289185] My mother go _____ the garden to plant a tree.

- A. up B. through C. for D. into

Câu 36 [ID: 289186] The boy run _____ the stairs to call his mother.

- A. up B. past C. through D. with

- Câu 37 [ID: 289189]** We both jumped _____ the swimming pool at the same time.
A. into B. from C. with D. to
- Câu 38 [ID: 289190]** In PE classes we have to climb _____ a rope in 20 seconds.
A. up B. into C. along D. across
- Câu 39 [ID: 289191]** He caught the ball _____ his left hand.
A. on B. at C. from D. with
- Câu 40 [ID: 289199]** The ball rolled _____ the lawn.
A. across B. to C. through D. from
- Câu 41 [ID: 289201]** The king tried to drive the enemy _____ the seas.
A. off B. into C. onto D. through
- Câu 42 [ID: 289203]** Who is not for me is _____ me.
A. towards B. against C. with D. along
- Câu 43 [ID: 289209]** I shall wait _____ you.
A. about B. by C. to D. for
- Câu 44 [ID: 289215]** The country fought _____ independence.
A. for B. with C. by D. about
- Câu 45 [ID: 289223]** I study hard _____ get a scholarship.
A. to B. so as to C. A & B D. into
- Câu 46 [ID: 289249]** He opened the door in order _____ get some fresh air in the room.
A. to B. from C. against D. down
- Câu 47 [ID: 289275]** When are you coming _____ Hanoi?
A. to B. on C. onto D. at
- Câu 48 [ID: 289148]** These are documents _____ your study.
A. for B. to C. with D. by
- Câu 49 [ID: 289149]** The boy speaks English _____ making mistakes.
A. without B. with C. through D. about
- Câu 50 [ID: 289151]** When we get ready for dinner, I have to take my books _____ the table.
A. off B. from C. out D. of

ĐÁP ÁN

1. B	2. C	3. A	4. D	5. C	6. B	7. C	8. D	9. A	10. D
11. A	12. A	13. B	14. C	15. D	16. B	17. A	18. A	19. B	20. D
21. B	22. A	23. D	24. A	25. B	26. A	27. C	28. A	29. B	30. B
31. D	32. A	33. B	34. C	35. D	36. A	37. A	38. A	39. D	40. A
41. A	42. B	43. D	44. A	45. C	46. A	47. A	48. A	49. A	50. A

LUYỆN TẬP 4: (ID: ET1102)

- Câu 1 [ID: 289250]** Tears are streaming _____ her face.
 A. down B. up C. from D. in
- Câu 2 [ID: 289251]** We often go fishing _____ the river bank.
 A. towards B. inside C. along D. around
- Câu 3 [ID: 289252]** He was trying to throw his hat _____ the roof.
 A. into B. onto C. on D. to
- Câu 4 [ID: 289253]** These are documents _____ high-ranking officials.
 A. for B. to C. with D. by
- Câu 5 [ID: 289254]** I took the envelope _____ my pocket.
 A. out B. out from C. out of D. onto
- Câu 6 [ID: 289255]** The boat was driven _____ the rocks.
 A. out B. into C. out of D. onto
- Câu 7 [ID: 289256]** This novel is written _____ Japanese.
 A. in B. on C. at D. by
- Câu 8 [ID: 289257]** He thanked me _____ my help.
 A. for B. because C. since D. as
- Câu 9 [ID: 289258]** He sent me a souvenir _____ post.
 A. in B. with C. by D. on
- Câu 10 [ID: 289259]** She studies hard _____ pass the next exam.
 A. to B. for C. in order to D. A & C
- Câu 11 [ID: 289260]** I often sit alone to look _____ the window.
 A. across B. through C. over D. into
- Câu 12 [ID: 289261]** There is a bridge _____ the river.
 A. across B. through C. over D. A & C
- Câu 13 [ID: 289262]** Sara got _____ her car and shut the door.
 A. to B. into C. onto D. from
- Câu 14 [ID: 289263]** She sailed _____ the river.
 A. along B. onto C. into D. at
- Câu 15 [ID: 289264]** The train went _____ the tunnel.
 A. across B. through C. over D. onto
- Câu 16 [ID: 289265]** He ran _____ the mountain.
 A. down B. off C. onto D. in
- Câu 17 [ID: 289266]** If there is any hazard alarm , quickly run _____ the house.
 A. out B. out of C. into D. in

Câu 18 [ID: 289267] I went there _____ Tom's car.

- A. at B. with C. in D. on

Câu 19 [ID: 289268] I tried to get _____ the car before it exploded.

- A. into B. out of C. out from D. out

Câu 20 [ID: 289269] You can park your car everywhere _____ here.

- A. not B. without C. with D. except

Câu 21 [ID: 289270] You can't enter this concert _____ a ticket.

- A. without B. with C. by D. like

Câu 22 [ID: 289271] Please cover the bowl and put it _____ the fridge.

- A. onto B. into C. from D. by

Câu 23 [ID: 289272] I could dance and sing _____ joy.

- A. for B. because C. so as to D. as

Câu 24 [ID: 289273] She entered the room _____ knocking.

- A. by B. within C. without D. in

Câu 25 [ID: 289274] Today I would like to tell you a little more _____ what is involved and what I do.

- A. about B. of C. with D. in

Câu 26 [ID: 289276] Lan often goes to school _____ bus, but today she's going _____ foot.

- A. by/by B. on/on C. on/by D. by/on

Câu 27 [ID: 289277] I went _____ the mountain to cut wood.

- A. up B. in C. out D. on

Câu 28 [ID: 289278] The wind is whipping around the building, _____ the cracks in the doors and _____ the chimneys.

- A. across/up B. across/down C. through/up D. through/down

Câu 29 [ID: 289279] Unable to find the house keys, she climbed _____ a window to get help.

- A. across B. through C. over D. into

Câu 30 [ID: 289280] Please do it _____ my sake.

- A. for B. because C. since D. As

ĐÁP ÁN

1. A	2. C	3. B	4. A	5. C	6. D	7. A	8. A	9. C	10. D
11. B	12. D	13. B	14. A	15. B	16. A	17. B	18. C	19. B	20. D
21. A	22. B	23. A	24. C	25. A	26. D	27. A	28. D	29. B	30. A

LUYỆN TẬP 5: (ID: ET1103)

Câu 1 [ID: 290195] It's typical _____ businessmen to shake hands in formal meetings.

- A. of B. about C. for D. with

Câu 2 [ID: 290196] We were all shocked _____ the things we saw on the news.

- A. about B. with C. by D. in

Câu 3 [ID: 290198] I wouldn't like to be in her position. I feel sorry _____ her.

- A. of B. to C. at D. for

Câu 4 [ID: 290199] Cheques are useful _____ travellers.

- A. with B. to C. for D. on

Câu 5 [ID: 290200] Are you successful _____ your experiment?

- A. on B. in C. at D. to

Câu 6 [ID: 290202] She seems friendly _____ everyone in the village.

- A. to B. on C. for D. at

Câu 7 [ID: 290203] She was sad _____ my refusal.

- A. about B. for C. with D. to

Câu 8 [ID: 290205] Ben isn't very happy at college. He says he's bored _____ the course he's doing.

- A. for B. of C. with D. to

Câu 9 [ID: 290207] Quang Linh is popular _____ folk songs.

- A. with B. to C. for D. in

Câu 10 [ID: 290209] Why are you always so rude _____ your parents? Can't you be nice _____ them?

- A. to/to B. to/of C. of/of D. of/to

Câu 11 [ID: 290210] The student is quick _____ understanding what the teacher explains.

- A. with B. at C. for D. in

Câu 12 [ID: 290212] She is never late _____ work.

- A. to B. for C. from D. at

Câu 13 [ID: 290214] Yesterday, Nga was absent _____ class because she was ill.

- A. with B. for C. from D. in

Câu 14 [ID: 290216] We always have the same food every day. I'm fed up _____ it.

- A. from B. to C. with D. by

Câu 15 [ID: 290217] Are you still upset _____ what I said to you yesterday?

- A. with B. about C. of D. to

Câu 16 [ID: 290219] I was surprised _____ the way he behaved.

- A. at B. with C. in D. A & C

Câu 17 [ID: 290221] Don't be worried _____ the money! I'll lend you.

- A. about B. with C. to D. for

Câu 18 [ID: 290223] It's made me much more sensitive _____ the needs of the disable.

- A. to B. for C. about D. with

Câu 19 [ID: 290225] Jane has been very concerned _____ her mother's poor health.

- A. of B. about C. to D. with

Câu 20 [ID: 290226] Albert said he was very ashamed _____ his friend's bad manners.

- A. with B. to C. by D. of

Câu 21 [ID: 290227] Can we be sure _____ his honesty?

- A. with B. to C. of D. for

Câu 22 [ID: 290228] Is he guilty or innocent _____ the crime?

- A. to B. of C. with D. for

Câu 23 [ID: 290229] Fred is capable _____ doing better work than he's doing at present.

- A. to B. with C. of D. at

Câu 24 [ID: 290230] While studying, he was financially dependent _____ his parents.

- A. to B. with C. on D. by

Câu 25 [ID: 290231] If you're not satisfied _____ your essay, I suggest that you rewrite it.

- A. to B. for C. on D. with

Câu 26 [ID: 290233] People nowadays are interested _____ saving money and natural resources.

- A. on B. in C. at D. about

Câu 27 [ID: 290236] We are fond _____ listening to music.

- A. of B. on C. in D. with

Câu 28 [ID: 290237] He is angry _____ losing his wallet.

- A. of B. at C. in D. with

Câu 29 [ID: 290238] That hotel is famous _____ its pleasant atmosphere and fine food.

- A. with B. about C. for D. to

Câu 30 [ID: 290239] I certainly hope that David is aware _____ all the problems involved.

- A. for B. of C. with D. about

Câu 31 [ID: 290240] Dogs are usually very faithful _____ their masters if treated properly.

- A. about B. of C. with D. to

Câu 32 [ID: 290241] I was amazed _____ his behavior.

- A. at B. in C. with D. on

Câu 33 [ID: 290243] I'm sure the explanation in the book will be quite clear _____ you.

- A. to B. with C. for D. on

Câu 34 [ID: 290245] Disneyland is crowded _____ tourists in July.

- A. to B. in C. at D. with

Câu 35 [ID: 290246] I wish Carl would take a vacation. It would be good _____ his health.

- A. to B. at C. with D. for

Câu 36 [ID: 290247] Are you serious _____ learning to be an architect?

- A. about B. for C. with D. at

Câu 37 [ID: 290248] He is very keen _____ English, but he is not good _____ listening.

- A. at/on B. on/on C. on/at D. at/at

Câu 38 [ID: 290250] I am sorry _____ the noise last night. We were having a party.

- A. in B. for C. about D. with

Câu 39 [ID: 290251] What he said was contrary _____ common sense.

- A. with B. for C. from D. to

Câu 40 [ID: 290253] The message he sent to me was full _____ mistakes.

- A. with B. about C. of D. in

Câu 41 [ID: 290255] Don't worry. We'll look after you. There is nothing to be scared.....

- A. from B. of C. with D. about

Câu 42 [ID: 290256] Linda doesn't look very well. I'm worried _____ her.

- A. from B. of C. with D. about

Câu 43 [ID: 290257] She was experienced _____ marketing.

- A. about B. with C. in D. of

Câu 44 [ID: 290258] The word 'man' is derived _____ the Sanskrit 'manas'.

- A. in B. from C. at D. for

Câu 45 [ID: 290259] He is not confused _____ animals and speaks very clearly about the panther, deer and their characteristics.

- A. with B. about C. in D. on

Câu 46 [ID: 290260] He is generally quite content _____ himself and his life.

- A. with B. about C. for D. in

Câu 47 [ID: 290261] This kind of thing happens sometimes, but I was annoyed _____ myself _____ handling it badly.

- A. with/in B. at/at C. with/at D. at/in

Câu 48 [ID: 290262] My problem was that I was brilliant _____ maths but hopeless _____ English.

- A. in/at B. at/at C. in/in D. at/in

Câu 49 [ID: 290263] The film is based _____ a novel by Pat Conroy.

- A. at B. of C. in D. on

Câu 50 [ID: 290264] These toys are not suitable _____ children under five.

- A. for B. with C. of D. about

ĐÁP ÁN

1. A	2. C	3. D	4. C	5. B	6. A	7. A	8. C	9. A	10. A
11. B	12. B	13. C	14. C	15. B	16. A	17. A	18. A	19. B	20. D
21. C	22. B	23. C	24. C	25. D	26. B	27. A	28. B	29. C	30. B
31. D	32. A	33. A	34. D	35. D	36. A	37. C	38. B	39. D	40. C
41. B	42. D	43. C	44. B	45. B	46. A	47. C	48. B	49. D	50. A

LUYỆN TẬP 6: (ID: ET1104)

Câu 1 [ID: 290150] Thank you for all your help. You've been very kind _____ me.

- A. of B. to C. at D. for

Câu 2 [ID: 290151] I don't think that I'm acquainted _____ him.

- A. with B. to C. for D. by

Câu 3 [ID: 290152] What have I done wrong? Why are you annoyed _____ me?

- A. about B. with C. at D. by

Câu 4 [ID: 290153] Opening the parcel, he was surprised _____ what he saw.

- A. at B. in C. on D. of

Câu 5 [ID: 290154] Rosy married a wealthy man. She got married _____ him last June.

- A. by B. for C. about D. to

Câu 6 [ID: 290155] Don't be familiar _____ John. He is a dishonest man.

- A. into B. to C. with D. for

Câu 7 [ID: 290156] My plan is similar _____ yours, but it is different _____ Ken's.

- A. to/to B. from/to C. to/from D. from/from

Câu 8 [ID: 290157] It was very nice _____ you to do my shopping for me. Thank you very much.

- A. of B. for C. to D. with

Câu 9 [ID: 290158] I'm capable _____ speaking two languages.

- A. to B. with C. for D. of

Câu 10 [ID: 290159] Contrary _____ his doctor's orders, he has gone back to work.

- A. from B. to C. with D. by

Câu 11 [ID: 290160] I've been trying to learn Spanish but I'm not very satisfied _____ my progress.

- A. to B. with C. at D. by

Câu 12 [ID: 290161] Attending all the lectures is important _____ us.

- A. for B. to C. at D. on

Câu 13 [ID: 290162] The United States became independent _____ England in 1776.

- A. on B. with C. of D. to

Câu 14 [ID: 290163] We were grateful _____ our friends _____ all the assistance.

- A. to-with B. for-to C. to-for D. for-with

Câu 15 [ID: 290164] You know that stealing is wrong! You should feel ashamed _____ yourself!

- A. with B. on C. of D. about

Câu 16 [ID: 290165] He is jealous _____ his rival's success.

- A. by B. of C. with D. for

Câu 17 [ID: 290167] I am very opposed _____ your going abroad.

- A. to B. with C. by D. about

Câu 18 [ID: 290169] She is indifferent _____ life.

- A. with B. from C. about D. to

Câu 19 [ID: 290171] Although his last name is the same as mine, I'm not related _____ him.

- A. with B. to C. by D. for

Câu 20 [ID: 290173] You'll find that this tool is very useful _____ many different things.

- A. for B. with C. by D. of

Câu 21 [ID: 290175] The students are very anxious _____ the results of the examination.

- A. to B. with C. about D. for

Câu 22 [ID: 290177] The clerk said she was tired _____ hearing complaints day after day.

- A. with B. of C. about D. for

Câu 23 [ID: 290179] George is still very loyal _____ his friends despite their argument.

- A. to B. for C. of D. with

Câu 24 [ID: 290182] A good basic knowledge of English is essential _____ advanced work.

- A. with B. by C. towards D. for

Câu 25 [ID: 290184] I think Martha was pleased _____ the gift I gave her for her birthday.

- A. with B. about C. to D. by

Câu 26 [ID: 290185] We're still hopeful _____ hearing from our friends before Saturday.

- A. of B. to C. with D. in

Câu 27 [ID: 290188] I'm conscious _____ their feelings, but I'm afraid _____ offending them.

- A. with/of B. to/of C. for/to D. of/of

Câu 28 [ID: 290190] Mr. Anderson is responsible _____ hiring and firing employees.

- A. for B. about C. to D. with

Câu 29 [ID: 290191] I didn't expect to win the match. I was quite surprised _____ the result.

- A. to B. in C. at D. with

Câu 30 [ID: 290193] At present, my daily expenses are just about equal _____ my income.

- A. for B. to C. with D. by

ĐÁP ÁN

1. B	2. A	3. B	4. A	5. D	6. C	7. C	8. A	9. D	10. B
11. B	12. B	13. C	14. C	15. C	16. B	17. A	18. D	19. B	20. A
21. C	22. B	23. A	24. D	25. A	26. A	27. D	28. A	29. C	30. B

LUYỆN TẬP 7: (ID: ET1105)

Câu 1 [ID: 290975] He took a photograph _____ his girlfriend.

- A. on B. for C. of D. in

Câu 2 [ID: 290976] Do you have a good relationship _____ most of your relatives?

- A. with B. of C. in D. between

Câu 3 [ID: 290977] She has a great deal of experience _____ introducing new products to international markets.

- A. of B. on C. in D. about

Câu 4 [ID: 290978] His fear _____ flying made travel difficult.

- A. on B. of C. for D. in

Câu 5 [ID: 290979] Did you send Alice an invitation _____ the party?

- A. to B. with C. in D. of

Câu 6 [ID: 290980] His habit _____ smoking in restaurants caused many problems in California.

- A. of B. on C. about D. with

Câu 7 [ID: 290981] The company has strong links _____ big inventors.

- A. with B. for C. to D. from

Câu 8 [ID: 290982] The search _____ the missing teenager was called off.

- A. on B. of C. for D. to

Câu 9 [ID: 290983] The decrease _____ profits is due to the bad market.

- A. on B. of C. in D. from

Câu 10 [ID: 290984] There is a real demand _____ qualified English teachers.

- A. for B. of C. with D. on

Câu 11 [ID: 290985] Who is _____ all these dogs? They seem to be running wild!

- A. on duty B. in charge of C. in authority D. in duty

Câu 12 [ID: 290986] We have seen a fall _____ prices recently.

- A. of B. for C. on D. in

Câu 13 [ID: 290987] The cause _____ his problems is his wife.

- A. on B. for C. of D. in

Câu 14 [ID: 290988] Did you do any damage _____ the car?

- A. on B. in C. to D. for

Câu 15 [ID: 290989] I think your attitude _____ your employer is very bad indeed.

- A. to B. on C. of D. between

Câu 16 [ID: 290990] She is _____ holiday now. Can you phone her at 0261.321.578.

- A. in B. on C. of D. with

Câu 17 [ID: 290991] There is a great need _____ low-cost housing in this country as an answer _____ the homeless problem.

- A. for/for B. to/to C. to/for D. for/to

Câu 18 [ID: 290992] His addiction _____ surfing the Internet is a problem.

- A. of B. on C. for D. to

Câu 19 [ID: 290993] Her anxiety _____ speaking in public caused her to lose the job.

- A. on B. of C. in D. about

Câu 20 [ID: 290994] His belief _____ god is influenced by his mother.

- A. in B. of C. on D. for

Câu 21 [ID: 290995] His dedication _____ teaching was impressive.

- A. on B. in C. to D. of

Câu 22 [ID: 290996] The delay _____ processing the visa caused problems.

- A. of B. from C. with D. in

Câu 23 [ID: 290997] _____ saying the wrong thing, I chose to say nothing at all.

- A. For the purpose of B. For fear of C. For the good of D. On account of

Câu 24 [ID: 290998] His fear _____ flying made travel difficult.

- A. on B. of C. for D. in

Câu 25 [ID: 290999] Her fondness _____ traveling led to her career in the travel industry.

- A. on B. for C. about D. with

Câu 26 [ID: 291000] His habit _____ smoking in restaurants caused many problems in California.

- A. of B. on C. about D. with

Câu 27 [ID: 291001] Her career as a pilot evolved out of her interest _____ flying.

- A. on B. of C. with D. in

Câu 28 [ID: 291002] Her knowledge _____ climbing helped her during the competition.

- A. in B. about C. of D. with

- Câu 29 [ID: 291003] His love _____ singing developed when he was a child.
A. with B. of C. about D. on
- Câu 30 [ID: 291004] Their memories _____ traveling in Africa will stay with them forever.
A. of B. on C. for D. with
- Câu 31 [ID: 291005] The process _____ painting such a large mural is more complicated than you might think.
A. in B. of C. about D. in
- Câu 32 [ID: 291006] His reaction _____ winning the prize was quite funny.
A. about B. in C. to D. of
- Câu 33 [ID: 291007] We'll send you a reply _____ your application letter next Monday.
A. to B. for C. of D. about
- Câu 34 [ID: 291008] I'm sure we'll find a solution _____ this problem.
A. with B. of C. to D. for
- Câu 35 [ID: 291009] Do you have an answer _____ this question?
A. to B. for C. of D. about
- Câu 36 [ID: 291010] There is clearly a difference _____ your car and mine.
A. from B. between C. among D. by
- Câu 37 [ID: 291011] We don't have room _____ a grand piano?
A. towards B. for C. with D. by
- Câu 38 [ID: 291012] I'm against any form of cruelty _____ animals.
A. to B. with C. by D. of
- Câu 39 [ID: 291013] I'm sorry; I wasn't paying close attention _____ what you said.
A. on B. at C. in D. to
- Câu 40 [ID: 291014] Don't put much confidence _____ his words.
A. to B. in C. at D. on
- Câu 41 [ID: 291015] There is no need _____ a new car at the moment.
A. of B. for C. with D. to
- Câu 42 [ID: 291016] Have you had any contact _____ Sarah?
A. to B. of C. with D. on
- Câu 43 [ID: 291017] She has great interest _____ the poetry of Donne.
A. in B. to C. for D. on
- Câu 44 [ID: 291018] I have no faith _____ her capabilities.
A. in B. on C. to D. at
- Câu 45 [ID: 291019] In many cities the cost _____ living is pretty high.
A. for B. in C. of D. to

Câu 46 [ID: 291020] My new job is making great demands ____ my time.

- A. of B. in C. for D. on

Câu 47 [ID: 291021] Jane had the idea ____ starting her own business.

- A. on B. of C. about D. for

Câu 48 [ID: 291022] Workers often go on strike when their salaries don't keep pace with increases ____ the cost.

- A. in B. with C. along D. to

Câu 49 [ID: 291023] English is an example ____ a language that stresses content words within sentence.

- A. for B. to C. on D. of

Câu 50 [ID: 291024] The advantage ____ having free time is that you can do anything you want with it.

- A. of B. to C. about D. for

ĐÁP ÁN

1. C	2. A	3. C	4. B	5. A	6. A	7. C	8. C	9. C	10. A
11. B	12. D	13. C	14. C	15. A	16. B	17. D	18. D	19. D	20. A
21. C	22. D	23. B	24. B	25. B	26. A	27. D	28. C	29. B	30. A
31. B	32. C	33. A	34. C	35. A	36. B	37. B	38. A	39. D	40. B
41. B	42. C	43. A	44. A	45. C	46. C	47. B	48. A	49. D	50. A

LUYỆN TẬP 8: (ID: ET1106)

Câu 1 [ID: 291025] Once scientist fully understand the cause ____ a disease, it becomes easier for them to find a cure for it.

- A. of B. by C. with D. to

Câu 2 [ID: 291026] The children in this deprived area show a real thirst ____ learning.

- A. for B. to C. of D. about

Câu 3 [ID: 291063] It was his contribution ____ molecular biology that won him the Nobel prize.

- A. with B. of C. for D. to

Câu 4 [ID: 291120] I am standing here ____ my friends.

- A. on account for B. on behalf of C. on favor of D. on condition that

Câu 5 [ID: 291121] ____, I had a happy childhood.

- A. In the whole B. On the whole C. The whole of D. On whole

Câu 6 [ID: 291122] I can't open this door. Have you got a key ____ the other door?

- A. to B. with C. by D. of

Câu 7 [ID: 291123] I emailed Jim last week, but I still haven't received a reply ____ my message.

- A. to B. with C. by D. of

Câu 8 [ID: 291232] _____ our friendly staff, you'll find our hotel providing everything you could ever desire.

- A. In addition to B. In spite of C. In support of D. In case of

Câu 9 [ID: 291233] He is decorating the house _____ selling it.

- A. with a view of B. with a view to C. in danger of D. in danger to

Câu 10 [ID: 291234] The project failed _____ financial banking.

- A. on account of B. for want of C. by reason of D. for the purpose of

Câu 11 [ID: 291235] You can't talk to her now. She's still _____, but I will ask her to call you back.

- A. on phone B. on the phone C. in the phone D. in phone

Câu 12 [ID: 291236] To be _____ debt is to be _____ danger.

- A. in-out of B. in-in C. out of-in D. out of- out of

Câu 13 [ID: 291237] Our style of hair maybe _____ date at present.

- A. in B. on C. out of D. in of

Câu 14 [ID: 291238] There was a rise _____ the demand _____ smoke alarms that week.

- A. on/on B. on/of C. in/for D. for/in

Câu 15 [ID: 291239] Donata came across the business idea _____ accident!

- A. on B. in C. with D. by

Câu 16 [ID: 291240] _____ mistake, I took the wrong book from my desk this morning.

- A. Through B. By C. With D. In

Câu 17 [ID: 291241] The main reason _____ taking the course is to improve your language skills.

- A. on B. of C. for D. with

Câu 18 [ID: 291242] He noticed an increase _____ the curiosity of his neighbors after the burned cake incident.

- A. in B. of C. for D. on

Câu 19 [ID: 291243] Would you like to come _____ a walk with me?

- A. with B. for C. in D. of

Câu 20 [ID: 291244] Where would you like to go _____ holiday this year?

- A. in B. on C. of D. from

Câu 21 [ID: 291245] _____ my opinion, he is an excellent pianist.

- A. For B. In C. By D. On

Câu 22 [ID: 291246] Let's drive today. I think the bus drivers are _____ strike.

- A. in B. on C. by D. for

Câu 23 [ID: 291247] The washing machine is _____ again. Let's buy a new one.

A. out of order B. out of work C. out of date D. out of the question

Câu 24 [ID: 291248] The reasons _____ homelessness are many, but there is a great demand _____ a plan of action to end it.

A. for/for B. for/in C. for/on D. on/for

Câu 25 [ID: 291249] I go to cinema _____ times.

A. on B. in C. with D. at

Câu 26 [ID: 291250] These jackets are _____ fashion.

A. on B. at C. out of D. out

Câu 27 [ID: 291251] It wasn't a bad accident. The damage _____ the car wasn't serious.

A. to B. with C. of D. by

Câu 28 [ID: 291252] She recently overcome her fear _____ flying and had a holiday in South Africa.

A. of B. by C. with D. for

Câu 29 [ID: 291253] She has no faith _____ modern medicine.

A. in B. of C. by D. with

Câu 30 [ID: 291254] A large number _____ seats have been taken.

A. of B. for C. with D. by

ĐÁP ÁN

1. A	2. A	3. D	4. B	5. B	6. A	7. A	8. A	9. B	10. A
11. B	12. B	13. C	14. C	15. D	16. B	17. C	18. A	19. B	20. B
21. B	22. B	23. A	24. A	25. D	26. C	27. A	28. A	29. A	30. A

C- THI ONLINE

Truy cập ☒ ID: ET1107, ET1108.

GÓC GIẢI TRÍ

Kết thúc bài học ngày hôm nay các em có cảm thấy mệt mỏi không? Cô hy vọng là không. ☺ Tuy nhiên, nếu có chút áp lực vì hành trình của chúng ta sắp tới còn rất dài, cô sẽ tặng các em một mẫu truyện tiếng Anh nhé.

NEVER TELL A LIE

On his deathbed, a father advised his son to always speak truth. The son promised that he would never tell a lie.

One day, while going to the city through a forest, he got surrounded by some robbers.

One of them asked, "What do you have?" The boy answered, "I have fifty rupees."

They searched him but couldn't find anything. When they were about to go, the boy called out, "I am not telling a lie. See this fifty rupee note which I had hidden in my shirt."

The leader of the robbers felt pleased at the truthfulness of the boy, gave him hundred rupees as reward and went away.

Các em nhớ nhé, chúng ta không nên nói dối dù trong bất cứ hoàn cảnh nào.

KHÔNG BAO GIỜ ĐƯỢC NÓI DỐI

Trong giờ phút cuối đời của mình, người cha đã khuyên con trai ông ấy phải luôn nói thật. Người con hứa rằng anh ấy sẽ không bao giờ nói dối.

Một ngày nọ, trong khi đi đến thành phố thông qua khu rừng, cậu bé bị bao quanh bởi những tên cướp.

Một trong số chúng hỏi: "Người có cái gì?" Anh ta trả lời: "Tôi có 50 ru pi".

Họ lục soát người anh ta nhưng không tìm thấy bất kỳ thứ gì. Khi họ chuẩn bị bỏ đi, cậu bé gọi họ lại: "Tôi không nói dối. Nhìn này 50 rupi tôi giấu trong áo này".

Thủ lĩnh băng cướp cảm thấy hài lòng về tính thật thà của cậu bé, ông ta cho cậu bé 100 rupi như một phần thưởng và bỏ đi.

BÀI 2: CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ (PHRASAL VERBS)

A – LÝ THUYẾT

Trong tiết học này, các em sẽ được học về khái niệm cụm động từ, phân loại cụm động từ và các cụm động từ thường gặp.

Đây là một phần kiến thức trong phần giới từ nhưng rất quan trọng trong các đề thi tiếng Anh, chúng ta cùng tìm hiểu các em nhé!

I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA (ID: EV1043)

Động từ cơ bản

+

1 hoặc 2 giới từ

=

Cụm động từ

Nghĩa của Phrasal Verb rất khó đoán dựa vào nghĩa của động từ và giới từ tạo thành nó.

Eg: look after: chăm sóc

II. PHÂN LOẠI CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ

Có 3 loại cụm động từ:

- Cụm động từ không cần tân ngữ (intransitive)
Eg: I have to check in before 8.00.
- Cụm động từ có thể bị tách ra. Tân ngữ đứng ở giữa động từ và giới từ.
Eg: She wrote his name down in her notebook.
- Cụm động từ không bao giờ bị tách rời bởi tân ngữ.
Eg: He looked after the baby.

III. MỘT SỐ CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ THƯỜNG GẶP

1. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng A

- **abide by:** *to according to, to be faithful to: tuân theo.*
Eg: They must abide by the rules of the game.
- **abstain from:** *not to do, take: tránh làm điều gì.*
Eg: He abstained from voting in the election.
- **accede to = agree :** *đồng ý.*
Eg: He acceded to my request.
- **account for = explain :** *giải thích.*
Eg: His illness accounts for his absence.
- **accuse sb of st:** *charge (someone) with an offence or crime: buộc tội cho ai.*
Eg: He was accused of murdering his wife's lover.

- **adhere to** = stick to: dính vào, bám vào.
Eg: This tape doesn't adhere to the floor very well.
- **add to**: to increase: thêm vào, tăng thêm.
Eg: The news added to our happiness.
- **add up** = total: tính tổng.
Eg: I added up the receipts and it totaled \$135.46.
- **add up to + an amount**: amount to: tổng lên đến.
Eg: The total expenses added up to \$325.00.
- **adjust to**: to change in order to become more suitable for or adapted to: điều chỉnh cho phù hợp.
Eg: He soon adjusted to his new way of life.
- **admit sb/st to st**: allow (someone) to enter a place: nhận ai vào....
Eg: She was admitted to hospital suffering from a chest infection.
- **admire sb/st for**: respect: ngưỡng mộ ai.
Eg: I admired him for his courage and determination to see his aim achieved.
- **agree with sb on st**: have the same opinion about something: đồng ý với ai về điều gì.
Eg: He agreed with you on whether we should or shouldn't increase the salary.
- **aim at/for**: to point or direct st at; to try to hit or reach: nhắm vào, hướng vào.
Eg: He is aiming for the top of his profession.
- **answer to**: to be the same as or correspond to: trả lời, chịu trách nhiệm.
Eg: The police have found a man answering to that description.
- **appeal to sb**: be attractive or interesting: hấp dẫn ai.
Eg: The idea of camping has never appealed to me.
- **appeal to sb for/to do st**: make a serious, urgent, request: khẩn khoản yêu cầu.
Eg: Police are appealing for information about the incident.
- **apologize to sb for st**: express regret for something that one has done wrong: xin lỗi với ai về điều gì.
Eg: We apologized to him for our error.
- **apply oneself to st/doing st**: Give one's full attention to a task; work hard: chăm chú.
Eg: You will only pass your exams if you really apply yourself to your work.
- **apply for st**: to ask for (something) formally: yêu cầu (trang trọng).
Eg: He applied for financial help.
- **approve of**: agree with, be pleased with: tán thành.
Eg: You may not approve of what he did, but he's still your brother.
- **arrive at/in**: to reach: đến.
Eg: We arrive at the station as the train was leaving.
They arrived in Ha Noi at night.

- **assist (sb) in/with st:** *help: hỗ trợ.*

Eg: Two men are assisting the police in their enquiries.

- **assist at:** *be present: tham dự.*

Eg: Tomorrow, he will assist at the graduation ceremony.

- **ask after sb:** *enquire about the health: hỏi thăm sức khỏe.*

Eg: If I see him I'll tell him you were asking after him.

- **ask around:** *talk to different people in order to find out something: hỏi nhiều người để tìm kiếm cái gì đó.*

Eg: She thought the dog had been dumped there and was asking around all week if anyone had lost a dog.

- **ask for sb:** *say that one wants to speak to: nói muốn gặp/nói chuyện với ai.*

Eg: When he telephoned, he asked for you.

- **ask for st:** *demand: đòi hỏi.*

Eg: Don't be afraid to ask for advice.

- **ask sb back:** *ask sb to come back for a second interview: mời đến buổi phỏng vấn thứ 2.*

Eg: I made a mess of the interview and I wasn't asked back.

- **ask sb out:** *invite someone out on a date: mời ai đi chơi, đi hẹn hò.*

Eg: She's asked Steve out to the cinema this evening.

- **attend to:** *to listen or pay attention to: chú ý.*

Eg: Attend carefully to what the lecturer is saying!

2. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng B

- **back away:** *to move backwards: lùi lại, rút.*

Eg: She saw that he had a gun and backed away.

- **back down:** *give up one's opinion, claim: dừng việc bảo vệ quan điểm, ý kiến.*

Eg: Jane never backs down. She always wins arguments.

- **back out (of st):** *not to do something that you promised to do: nuốt lời.*

Eg: You agreed to come. You can't back out now!

- **back sb up:** *to support or encourage: ủng hộ.*

Eg: His mother backed him up on everything.

- **back up:** *to drive a vehicle backward: lùi xe lại phía sau.*

Eg: Could you back up a little so I can open this drawer?

- **bargain for:** *to expect or take into consideration: mong, dự tính.*

Eg: I didn't bargain for everyone arriving at once.

- **believe in:** *accept that (something) is true: tin tưởng.*

Eg: Do you believe in ghosts?

- **belong to:** *to be the property of: thuộc về.*
Eg: The book belongs to me.
- **bestow on/upon:** *to give (title, award...) to sb: tặng cho, ban cho.*
Eg: The Queen bestowed a knighthood on him.
- **beware of:** *to be careful of: thận trọng với.*
Eg: Beware of the dog!
- **blow out:** *to extinguish or put out (a flame...) by blowing: thổi tắt, dập tắt.*
Eg: The wind blew out the candle.
- **blow up:**
 - *To break into pieces: làm vỡ tan.*
Eg: The soldiers blew the factory up.
 - *To fill with air or a gas: thổi bóng.*
Eg: He blew up the balloon.
 - *To lose one's temper: mất kiểm soát, tức giận.*
Eg: If he says that again, I'll blow up.
 - *To enlarge (photo...): mở rộng (bức ảnh).*
 - *To scold sb: trách mắng.*
Eg: She blew me up for arriving late.
- **blame st on sb:** *declare that sb is responsible for a fault or wrong: đổ lỗi cái gì cho ai.*
Eg: Hugh blames his lack of confidence on his mother.
- **Blame sb for st:** *assign the responsibility for a bad situation to sb: đổ lỗi cho ai về điều gì.*
Eg: Hugh blames his mother for his lack of confidence.
- **break away:** *to escape: thoát khỏi.*
Eg: He grabbed her, but she managed to break away.
- **break down:**
 - *To be overcome with emotion: suy sụp, suy nhược.*
Eg: She broke down after her husband died.
 - *To stop working properly: bị hỏng.*
Eg: Our car broke down and we had to push it off the road.
 - *To fail and so come to an end: kết thúc, sụp đổ.*
Eg: The talks have broken down.
- **break in:** *interrupt when someone else is talking: ngắt lời.*
Eg: As she was talking, he suddenly broke in, saying, "That's a lie".
- **break into:** *to begin st suddenly: đột ngột bắt đầu.*
Eg: He broke into a run when he saw the police.

- **break in/into:** *to enter (a house...): đột nhập.*
Eg: Someone tried to break into the house.
- **break off:**
 - *Separate a part from a larger piece: lấy ra một phần, long ra, rời ra.*
Eg: She broke off a square of chocolate and gave it to her dog.
 - *To end or discontinue st (especially a relationship): cắt đứt quan hệ.*
 - *She returned the ring and they broke off their engagement.*
- **break out:**
 - *To start suddenly: bùng nổ.*
Eg: They're worried that war will break down:
 - *To escape (from prison, restriction...): trốn thoát (tù...).*
Eg: A prisoner has broken out.
- **break up:**
 - *Divide or break into pieces: chia nhỏ.*
Eg: The sheet of ice is breaking up.
 - *To finish or end: kết thúc.*
Eg: The meeting broke up at 4.40.
 - *(of a couple in a relationship) part company: chia tay.*
Eg: Sam and Diane broke up again. What a rocky relationship!
- **break through:** *make or force a way through (a barrier): vượt rào.*
Eg: High waves broke through the barrier beach.
- **break with:**
 - *To quarrel with and so stop being connected with: tuyệt giao.*
Eg: He broke with the Labour Party in 1968.
 - *To depart from; to cease to follow.*
Eg: He broke with tradition and married a girl of a different race.
- **bring about:** *to cause: gây ra.*
Eg: His disregard for danger brought about his death.
- **bring sb/st along:** *take someone or something with you: mang theo.*
Eg: Can I bring a friend along to the party?
- **bring sb around:** *persuade sb: thuyết phục.*
Eg: It took me ages to bring him around to my point of view.
- **bring back:**
 - *To return: mang trả lại.*
Eg: May I borrow your pen? I'll bring it back tomorrow.

- *Make someone think about something from the past: gợi nhớ lại.*

Eg: Visiting my old school brought back memories of when I was a pupil there.

• **bring down:** *to cause to fall: hạ xuống.*

Eg: They've really brought down the price of DVD players.

• **bring forward:**

- *To cause to be discussed: gây tranh cãi.*

Eg: They will consider the suggestions which you have brought forward.

- *To cause to happen earlier: làm xảy ra nhanh hơn, sớm hơn.*

Eg: They have brought it forward by one week.

• • **bring in:**

- *To introduce a new law or product: đưa ra (luật, sản phẩm).*

Eg: They will bring in a parliamentary bill.

- *To produce as profit: mang lại, thu vào lợi nhuận.*

Eg: His books are bringing in thousands of dollars.

- *Give a decision in court: tuyên án.*

Eg: They brought in a verdict of guilty.

• **bring off:** *to achieve (st attempted): đạt được.*

Eg: No one thought she'd manage to do it, but she brought it off in the end.

• **bring on:**

- *To cause st to happen: gây ra.*

Eg: I think the loud music brought my headache on.

- *To help to develop: làm phát triển.*

Eg: Her new piano teacher has really brought her on.

• **bring out:**

- *To make clear, to reveal: làm sáng tỏ.*

Eg: He brought out the weaknesses of her theory.

- *To publish: xuất bản.*

Eg: He brings a new book out every year.

• **bring round:**

- *Make someone become conscious again: làm hồi tỉnh.*

Eg: He lost consciousness after the fall, and they were unable to bring him round.

- *To persuade: thuyết phục.*

Eg: We'll bring him round to the idea.

• **bring st up:** *raise a matter for discussion: đề cập đến.*

Eg: I didn't want to bring up the fact that she was unemployed.

- **bring up sb:** *to rear or educate: nuôi nấng.*

Eg: Sam was brought up in South Carolina.

- **buck up:**

- *To hurry: nhanh lên, vội vàng.*

Eg: You'd better buck up if you want to catch the bus.

- *To cheer up: làm vui lên.*

Eg: The good news will buck her up.

- *To improve: cải thiện.*

Eg: Buck up your ideas or you'll be out of a job.

- **build up:**

- *To increase (the size, extent of): tăng kích cỡ.*

Eg: The traffic begins to build up around 5 o'clock.

- *To strengthen gradually: làm mạnh hơn.*

Eg: His father built up that grocery business from nothing.

- *To speak with great enthusiasm about sb: nói với sự nhiệt tình*

Eg: They built him up until I couldn't wait to meet him.

- **bump into:** *to meet by accident: tình cờ gặp.*

Eg: I bumped into him the other day in the street.

- **burn down:** *to destroy or be destroyed by fire: thiêu rụi.*

Eg: The children burned the house down while playing with matches.

- **burn off:** *to remove a substance using heat: loại bỏ cái gì bằng sức nóng.*

Eg: I burn off a lot of calories in the gym.

- **burn into:** *brand or imprint (something) with an image by burning: khắc sâu vào tâm trí.*

Eg: The images would be burned in her mind for as long as she was alive.

- **burn out:**

- *To become completely extinguished ; to be no longer burning: đốt cháy hết.*

Eg: The flames have burned out now.

- *Ruin one's health or become completely exhausted through overwork: kiệt sức do làm quá sức.*

Eg: Mentally ill people burn out and cease to be creative.

- **burst into/through:** *to come or go suddenly or violently: đến một cách đột ngột.*

Eg: She burst in to tears.

The gunman burst through the door.

- **butt in:** *to interrupt or interfere: ngắt lời, can thiệp.*

Eg: Don't butt in while I'm speaking.

- **buy off:** *to bribe: đút lót, mua chuộc.*

Eg: The gangster's friends bought off the police witness

- **buy out:** *to buy completely (a company's shares...): mua hết (cổ phiếu...).*

Eg: The large company expanded by buying out several smaller ones.

- **buy up:** *to buy in large quantities: mua số lượng nhiều.*

Eg: I've bought up all the houses in this street.

3. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng C

- **call at:** *(of a train, ship or coach) stop at (a specified station): đỗ, đậu ở.*

Eg: Our ship will call at seven ports during the voyage.

- **call back:** *return to a place in order to see someone or collect something: quay lại để gặp ai đó, hoặc lấy thứ gì.*

Eg: She said she'd call back later to pick up that report.

- **call sb down:** *reprimand someone: trách mắng.*

Eg: She was a good student, and she couldn't figure out why she was called down.

- **call for:**

- *To demand or require: yêu cầu, đòi hỏi.*

Eg: The report calls for an audit of endangered species.

- *To collect sb: đón ai.*

Eg: I'll call for you around seven.

- **call in:**

- *To ask to come: mời vào, mời đến.*

Eg: Call in the doctor!

- *To request the return of: thu về.*

Eg: The Board of Commissioners of Currency has called in all the old one-dollar notes.

- **call off:**

- *To cancel: hủy bỏ.*

Eg: She accepted the invitation to the party, but called off at the last minute.

- *To order (a dog...) to stop attacking sb: ra lệnh (con chó...) ngừng tấn công ai.*

Eg: He called off the dogs before they really injured their victims.

- **call on:**

- *To visit: thăm ai.*

Eg: I will call on our new neighbor tomorrow.

- *To summon or gather together: huy động, gom lại.*

Eg: Call on all one's resources.

- *To appeal to*: thỉnh cầu.

Eg: They called on God for help.

- *To ask (sb) formally to do st*: yêu cầu ai làm gì một cách trịnh trọng.

Eg: They're calling on all men and boys over the age of 14 to join the army.

• **call out**:

- *To instruct workers to come on strike*: Kêu gọi công nhân đình công.

Eg: The union has called out the electricity workers.

- *To summon or bring into operation*: huy động ai để giải quyết trường hợp khẩn cấp.

Eg: The army was called out to deal with the riot.

• **call up**:

- *Call service especially in the armed forces*: gọi nhập ngũ.

Eg: They have called up more than 20,000 reservists.

- *To telephone sb*: gọi điện cho ai.

Eg: I have a list of people to call up in the morning.

- *To bring to memory; to recall*: gọi nhớ lại, hồi tưởng.

Eg: Seeing the children playing called up memories of my own childhood.

• **calm down**: *to make or become calm*: giữ bình tĩnh.

Eg: He tried to calm her down by giving her some brandy.

• **care for**:

- *To look after sb*: chăm sóc ai.

Eg: The nurse will care for you from now on.

- *To be fond of*: quan tâm.

Eg: I don't care for flowers very much.

• **carry off**:

- *To take away by carrying*: mang đi.

Eg: She carried off the screaming child.

- *To succeed in (a difficult situation ...)*: thành công (trong tình huống khó...).

Eg: It was a difficult moment, but he carried it off well.

• **carry out**: *to accomplish or successfully finish*: tiến hành, thực hiện.

Eg: He carried out the plan successfully.

• **carry on**:

- *To continue*: tiếp tục.

Eg: They must carry on working.

- *To manage (a business...)*: điều hành.

Eg: He carries on a business as a greengrocer.

- *To behave badly*: có thái độ kì quặc, cư xử không tốt.

Eg: The children always carry on when the teacher's out of the classroom.

- *To have a love affair with*: tán tỉnh.

Eg: She's been carrying on with the milkman.

• **catch on:**

- *To become popular*: nổi tiếng.

Eg: Long dresses have really caught on.

- *To understand*: hiểu được.

Eg: He's a bit slow to catch on.

• **catch out:**

- *Put someone in a difficult situation*: làm khó ai.

Eg: The last question in the exam caught them all out.

- *Detect that someone has done something wrong or made a mistake*: bắt bẻ lỗi.

Eg: The examiner will try to catch you out, so stay calm and think carefully before you speak.

• **catch up:**

- *To come level with*: theo kịp, đuổi kịp.

Eg: We caught him up at the corner although he was walking very fast.

- *To do or finish what has not been done*: hoàn thành công việc chưa xong.

Eg: I'll not be able to catch up with my work now.

- *To take hastily*: mang đi vội vã.

Eg: I caught up my cases and dashed to the railway station but I missed the train.

• **check in:**

- *To arrive (at hotel) and sign the register*: đến khách sạn và đặt phòng.

Eg: We checked in last night.

- *To book a room for sb at hotel*: đặt phòng trước cho ai.

Eg: He checked us in at the Mandarin Hotel.

- *To hand in*: cầm.

Eg: We'll check in our luggage and go and have a meal.

• **check out:**

- *To leave (a hotel), pay one's bill*: trả phòng.

Eg: You must check out before 12 o'clock.

- *To test or examine*: kiểm tra.

Eg: I'll check out your version of the events.

- **check up on:** *to investigate to see if sb or st is reliable, true: kiểm tra độ đáng tin.*
Eg: Have you been checking up on me?
- **cheer up:** *to make or become more cheerful: làm vui lên.*
Eg: He cheered up when he saw her.
- **clean up:**
 - *To clean thoroughly: dọn sạch, (trời) quang đãng, làm sáng sủa hơn...*
Eg: She cleaned the room up after they went home.
 - *To make a huge profit: tạo lợi nhuận lớn.*
Eg: They cleaned up on their business deals.
- **clear off:**
 - *To get rid of, to pay: trả lại, loại bỏ.*
Eg: You must clear off your account before we give you any more credit.
 - *To go away, to leave: rời bỏ.*
Eg: He cleared off without saying a word.
- **climb down:**
 - *To go down or towards the bottom of (a mountain,...): xuống núi...*
Eg: It was difficult to climb down the cliff.
 - *To accept defeat; to take back what one has said: nhượng bộ.*
Eg: He eventually climbed down and accepted our decision.
- **close up:**
 - *To come or bring closer together: đến gần hơn.*
Eg: He closed up the space between the lines of print.
 - *To shut completely: đóng hoàn toàn.*
Eg: He closed up the house when he went on holiday.
- **come about:** *happen: xảy ra.*
Eg: How did that come about?
- **come across:**
 - *To meet or find by chance: tình cờ gặp.*
Eg: I came across these old photos recently.
 - *To be understood or appreciated: được thông hiểu, được đánh giá tốt.*
Eg: His speed came across well.
- **come along:**
 - *To progress: tiến triển.*
Eg: How are things coming along?
 - *Used to tell sb to hurry: dùng để nói ai nhanh lên.*
Eg: Do come along! I'm in a hurry.

- **come back:** *to return to a place: quay trở lại.*
Eg: I left work and came back home early.
- **come between:** *to separate or make unfriendly: chia rẽ.*
Eg: We shouldn't let a little thing like this come between us.
- **come by:** *to get or obtain: đạt được.*
Eg: It's unclear how he came by his wealth.
- **come down:**
 - *To decrease or become less: giảm.*
Eg: House prices have come down recently.
 - *To fall and land on the ground: rơi xuống đất.*
Eg: The rain came down heavily all day.
 - *To feel less excited after a very enjoyable experience: cảm giác ít thích thú.*
Eg: The drug had worn off and I could feel myself coming down.
- **come down on:** *to punish someone or treat someone severely: chỉ trích gay gắt.*
Eg: She came down on me like a ton of bricks.
- **come from:** *to have been born in, made in: đến từ, xuất xứ từ.*
Eg: Where did this old book come from?
- **come in:**
 - *To enter a room or building: bước vào.*
Eg: Try not to wake the whole house when you come in!
 - *Join or become involved in an enterprise: tham gia vào (doanh nghiệp..).*
Eg: I agreed to come in on the project.
 - *(of a tide) rise; flow: thủy triều dâng lên.*
Eg: The tide was coming in.
- **come into:** *to inherit: thừa hưởng.*
Eg: She'll come into all her father's money when he dies.
- **come off:**
 - *To happen (successfully): xảy ra (thành công).*
Eg: The gamble didn't come off.
 - *to finish: hoàn thành.*
Eg: He was unsuccessful at first but he came off quite well in the end.
- **come out:**
 - *To become known: lộ ra, xuất hiện.*
Eg: The truth finally came out.
 - *To be published: xuất bản.*
Eg: This newspaper comes out once a week.

- *To strike*: đình công.

Eg: The men have come out (on strike).

- *(of a photo) to be developed*: rửa ảnh.

Eg: This photograph has come out very well.

- *To be shown (in a photograph)*: xuất hiện trong ảnh.

Eg: You came out very well in the photos he took.

- *To decide*: quyết định.

Eg: He came out in favour of the death penalty.

- *To be removed*: xóa khỏi.

Eg: This dirty mark won't come out.

- *To be solved*: được giải quyết.

Eg: My calculations don't come out.

• **come round**:

- *To visit*: thăm ai.

Eg: Come round and see us soon.

- *To regain consciousness*: làm hồi tỉnh.

Eg: He won't come round for 20 minutes at least.

- *To be persuaded to accept st*: thuyết phục ai chấp nhận.

Eg: He'll come round eventually (to your way of thinking).

• **come through**: *to stay alive or survive*: sống sót.

Eg: Will he come through all right after the operation?

• **come up to**: *to reach*: đạt đến.

Eg: This piece odd work doesn't come up to your usual high standard.

• **come up with**: *to think of, to produce*: nảy ra, nghĩ ra, sản xuất ra.

Eg: He has come up with a good idea.

• **contribute to**: *to help to cause to happen*: đóng góp vào.

Eg: His gambling contributed to his downfall.

• **count on/(formal) upon**: *to rely on*: dựa vào.

Eg: I'm counting on you to persuade her.

• **cool down**:

- *To make or become less warm*: làm lạnh.

Eg: Let your food cool down a bit.

- *To make or become less excited or less emotional*: bình tĩnh lại.

Eg: He was very angry but he's cooled down a bit now.

• **cool off**: *to become less enthusiastic*: ít nhiệt tình hơn.

Eg: He used to love her very much but he has cooled off now.

- **crack up:** *to break into pieces, to come unable to continue: phá vỡ.*
Eg: If he works as hard as this all time, he'll eventually crack up.
- **cross out:** *to draw a line through: gạch.*
Eg: He crossed out all her mistakes.
- **cut across:**
- *To pass in front of: chắn ngang đường trước.*
Eg: The lorry cut across (the path of) the little car.
- *To interfere with or disagree with: can thiệp vào hoặc không đồng tình với.*
Eg: His ideas cut across my own on this subject.
- *To take a shorter route by way of: đi tắt.*
Eg: He cut across the grass so as not to be late.
- **cut back:** *to reduce considerably: giảm đáng kể.*
Eg: The government cut back on public spending.
- **cut down:**
- *To cause to fall by cutting: đốn ngã.*
Eg: He has cut down the apple tree.
- *To reduce (an amount taken...): giảm lượng thu vào.*
Eg: I haven't give up smoking but I'm cutting down.
- **cut in:** *to interrupt: ngắt lời.*
Eg: She cut in with a remark.
- **cut off:**
- *cắt (điện, nước), ngắt*
- *To interrupt or break a telephone connection: ngắt cuộc điện thoại.*
Eg: I was cut off in the middle of telephone call.
- *To separate: cắt đứt liên lạc.*
Eg: They were cut off from the rest of the army by the enemy.
- *To leave (someone) nothing in a will: không để lại gì trong di chúc.*
Eg: He cut his daughters off without a cent.
- **cut out:**
- *To break off or divide by cutting: cắt ra.*
Eg: The child cut the pictures out of the magazine.
- *To stop or put an end to: ngưng hay chấm dứt.*
Eg: Cut out all the noise!
He's cut out cigarettes - I've cut them out too.

4. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng D

- **dash off:**

- *To write hurriedly and without much care: làm nhanh, làm vội.*

Eg: I dashed off a letter or two while I was waiting.

- *To leave or move away in a hurry: rời đi nhanh chóng.*

Eg: I must dash off to the shop before it shuts.

- **deal with:**

- *To be concerned with; to discuss: bàn về cái gì, đề cập đến.*

Eg: This book deals with methods of teaching English.

- *To take action about, especially in order to solve a problem: giải quyết.*

Eg: I want to deal with this letter before doing anything else.

- **depend on/upon:**

- *To rely on: dựa vào, phụ thuộc vào.*

Eg: You can't depend on his arriving on time.

- *To be decided by: được quyết định bởi.*

Eg: Whether I come on Tuesday or not depends on the amount of work I get through before then.

❖ DIE

- **die away:** *to fade from sight or hearing: mờ dần.*

Eg: The sound died away into the distance.

- **die down:** *to lose strength or power: mất dần sức mạnh.*

Eg: I think the wind has died down a bit.

- **die off:** *to die quickly or in large numbers: chết nhanh và số lượng nhiều.*

Eg: Herds of cattle were dying off because of the drought.

- **die of illness:** *chết vì bệnh.*

Eg: My grandfather died of a heart attack.

- **die from wound:** *chết vì vết thương.*

Eg: The old man died from a car accident.

- **die out:** *become extinct: tuyệt chủng.*

Eg: Many species died out.

- **discourage from:** *to persuade against: ngăn cản.*

Eg: The rain discouraged him from going camping.

- **discriminate between:** *to make a different between: phân biệt.*

Eg: It's sometimes difficult to discriminate between real and pretended cases of need.

- **dispose of:** *to get rid of: loại bỏ.*
Eg: He disposed of the arguments against his plan in two sentences.
- **distinguish between:** *to recognize a different between: phân biệt.*
Eg: I can't distinguish between the two types- they both look the same to me.
- **do away with:** *to get rid of: loại bỏ.*
Eg: They did away with uniforms at that school years ago.
- **do down:** *to cheat or overcome in some away: lừa ai*
Eg: He enjoys doing other people down.
- **do for:**
- *To kill or cause the end of: giết, gây ra sự chấm dứt của.*
Eg: The coming of television did for the cheap cinemas.
- *To do housework for: làm việc nội trợ cho.*
Eg: Mrs. Brown comes in twice a week to do for us.
- **do out:** *to clean thoroughly: dọn sạch.*
Eg: I spent the morning doing out the living room.
- **do without:** *manage without having st: làm việc mà không có thứ gì.*
Eg: We'll just have to do without a phone.
- **draw back:** *choose not to do something that one was expected to do: rút lui.*
Eg: The government has drawn back from attempting reform.
- **draw on:**
- *To use st as a source: dùng cái gì như một nguồn, cầu đến.*
Eg: He drew on his imagination for a lot of details.
- *To pull on: lấy ra.*
Eg: He drew on his gloves.
- *To come nearer: đến gần hơn.*
Eg: Night drew on and it was soon quite dark.
- **draw out:**
- *Take money from a bank: rút tiền.*
Eg: I drew out a hundred dollars yesterday.
- *To make long or longer than necessary: kéo dài ra.*
Eg: We drew out the journey as much as we could but we still arrived early.
- *To encourage to become less shy: khuyến khích ai mạnh dạn hơn.*
Eg: He sits silently in a corner unless someone takes the trouble to draw him out.
- **draw up:**
- *To stop (car.): dừng xe.*
Eg: We drew up outside their house.

- *To arrange in an acceptable form or order: xếp thành hàng.*

Eg: They drew up the soldiers in line.

- *To move closer: lại gần.*

Eg: Draw up a chair!

• **dream up:** *to invent: phát minh.*

Eg: He's dreamed up some sort of special recipe for fish.

• **dress up:** *dress in smart or formal clothes: mặc đẹp.*

Eg: Don't dress up specially for the party - just come as you are.

• **drop by:** *to visit someone casually and without being invited: tạt qua, ghé qua.*

Eg: I'll drop by on my way home if I have time.

• **drop in:**

- *To leave st for sb: để lại cái gì cho ai.*

Eg: Just drop the book in when you finish it.

- *to arrive to visit sb: đến thăm ai.*

Eg: Do drop in if you happen to be passing!

• **drop off:**

- *To become separated or fall off: rời ra, tách ra.*

Eg: I was trying to open the door when the door-handle dropped off.

- *To fall asleep: thiêu thiêu ngủ.*

Eg: I was so tired and dropped off in front of the television.

- *To become less: trở nên ít hơn, kém hơn.*

Eg: Sales have dropped off during the last three months.

- *To take somewhere in a vehicle leave him: thả xuống (khỏi xe).*

Eg: I'll drop you off at your house.

• **drop out:** *to withdraw, especially from a course at university....: rời bỏ, ra khỏi, bỏ học.*

Eg: She's dropped out of college.

5. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng E (ID: EV1044)

• **ease off:** *to make or become less strong, less serve, less tight, less fast, etc: giảm độ mạnh, giảm đau đớn,....*

Eg: The pain has eased off.

Con đau đã dịu bớt.

• **eat into:** *to destroy or waste gradually: ăn mòn, chiếm đến.*

Eg: The school fees have eaten into our savings.

Học phí đã ăn vào tiền tiết kiệm của chúng tôi.

• **egg on:** *to urge (somebody) on (to do something: khuyến khích, cổ vũ ai làm gì.*

Eg: She egged him on to apply for a better job.

Cô ấy cổ vũ anh ứng tuyển một công việc mới.

- **elaborate on/upon:** *to discuss details of: bàn luận chi tiết.*
 Eg: The headmaster elaborated upon the idea for a new school uniform.
 Hiệu trưởng bàn bạc về ý tưởng cho một bộ đồng phục trường mới.
- **embark on/upon:** *to start or engage in: bắt đầu.*
 Eg: She embarked on a new career.
 Cô ta bắt đầu công việc mới.
- **end up:**
 - *To reach or come to an end, usually unpleasant: đi đến một tình trạng xấu nào đó.*
 Eg: I knew he would end up in jail.
 Tôi biết là cuối cùng anh ta cũng vào tù mà.
 - *To end, to finish, to do something in the end: kết thúc, làm việc gì vào phút chót.*
 Eg: He said he would not go but he ended up by going.
 Anh ta nói anh ta sẽ không đi nhưng cuối cùng lại đi.
- **enlarge on/upon:** *to speak, write etc. in more detail: nói rõ hơn, chi tiết hơn..*
 Eg: Would you like to enlarge on your original statement?
 Bạn có muốn nói rõ hơn câu của bạn không?
- **enter into:**
 - *To take part in: tham gia.*
 Eg: He entered into an agreement with the film director.
 Anh ta tham gia vào hợp đồng với một đạo diễn phim.
 - *To take part enthusiastically in: tham gia tích cực vào việc gì.*
 Eg: They entered into the Christmas party spirit.
 Họ tham gia nhiệt tình vào bữa tiệc Giáng sinh.
 - *To begin to discuss: bắt đầu thảo luận.*
 Eg: We cannot enter into the question of salaries yet.
 Chúng ta chưa thể đi sâu vào vấn đề lương được.
 - *To be part of: là một phần của.*
 Eg: The price did not enter into the discussion.
 Giá cả không được thảo luận.
- **enter on/upon:** *to begin: bắt đầu.*
 Eg: We have entered upon the new term.
 Chúng tôi vừa mới bắt đầu kì học mới.
- **enthuse over/about:** *to be enthusiastic about: hứng khởi về.*
 Eg: He is constantly enthusing about his new job.
 Anh ta liên tục hứng khởi về công việc mới.

- **even out:**

- *To become level or regular: trở nên đều đặn, thường xuyên.*

Eg: His irregular heartbeats began to even out.

Nhịp tim của anh ta bắt đầu ổn định.

- *To make smooth or equal: làm cái gì mềm và bằng.*

Eg: He raked the soil to even it out.

Anh ta cào đất để san bằng nó.

- *To make equal: làm bằng.*

Eg: If Jane would do some of Mary's typing, that would even the work out.

Nếu Jane làm giúp Mary một ít đánh máy thì công việc sẽ cân đối hơn.

- **even up: make equal: làm cân đối, cân bằng**

Eg: John did better in the Maths exam than Jim and that evened up their marks.

John làm bài toán tốt hơn Jim và đã cân bằng điểm giữa hai người.

- **explain away: get rid of (difficulties etc.) by clever explaining: loại bỏ khó khăn bằng cách giải thích.**

Eg: She tried to explain away the fact that the money was missing by saying it had been stolen.

Cô ấy đã cố giải thích sự thật tiền bị thiếu là do nó bị trộm.

- **exult in/at: to be very happy about, to rejoice at: vui vẻ, hứng khởi.**

Eg: They exulted in their victory.

Họ rất vui vì thành công của họ.

6. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng F

- **face up to: meet or accept boldly: đối diện với.**

Eg: He faced up to his difficult situation.

Anh ta đối diện với tình cảnh khó khăn.

- **fade out: (of sound, a film picture etc.) to (cause to) grow faint and disappear: nhạt dần rồi biến mất.**

Eg: The last scene of the film faded out and the lights came on.

Cảnh cuối của phim mờ dần rồi ánh sáng xuất hiện.

- **fall apart: to break into pieces: vỡ vụn, tách ra.**

Eg: My bicycle is falling apart.

Xe đạp của tôi tách ra thành nhiều bộ phận.

- **fall away: to become less in number: ít hơn.**

Eg: The crowd began to fall away.

Đám đông bắt đầu tan rã.

- **fall back on:** *to use, or to go for help, finally when everything else has been tried: sử dụng, tìm kiếm giúp đỡ, nhất là khi tất cả các thứ khác đã được sử dụng.*

Eg: Whatever happens, you have your father's money to fall back on.

Chuyện gì xảy ra thì bạn vẫn luôn có bố để dựa vào.

- **fall behind:**

- *To be slower than somebody else: chậm hơn ai.*

Eg: Hurry up! You're falling behind the others.

Nhanh lên! Bạn đang bị chậm so với mọi người.

- *To become late in regular payment, letter-writing: nộp muộn.*

Eg: Don't fall behind with the rent!

Đừng trả tiền thuê nhà muộn.

- **fall down:** *to fail: thất bại.*

Eg: He's falling down on his job.

Anh ta thất bại trong công việc.

- **fall for:**

- *To be deceived by something: bị lừa.*

Eg: I made up a story to explain why I had not been at work and he fell for it.

Tôi bịa chuyện để giải thích tại sao tôi không đi làm và anh ta tin vào điều đó.

- *To fall in love with someone: yêu ai.*

Eg: He has fallen for your sister.

Anh ta yêu chị gái tôi.

- **fall in with**

- *To join with someone for company: tham gia đi cùng ai.*

Eg: On the way home we fell in with some friends.

Trên đường về nhà chúng tôi đi cùng với lũ bạn.

- *To agree with (a plan, idea): đồng ý với ý kiến, kế hoạch.*

Eg: They fell in with our suggestion.

Họ đồng ý với gợi ý của chúng tôi.

- **fall off:** *to become smaller in number or amount: ít hơn.*

Eg: Theatre audiences often fall off during the summer.

Khán giả thường đi xem ít hơn vào mùa hè.

- **fall on/upon:** *to attack: tấn công.*

Eg: He fell on the old man and beat him.

Anh ta tấn công người đàn ông già và đánh ông.

- **fall out:** *to quarrel: cãi lộn.*
 Eg: I have fallen out with my brother.
 Tôi cãi nhau với anh trai.
- **fall through:** *to fail or come to nothing: thất bại, không đi đến đâu.*
 Eg: We had planned to go to Paris, but the plans fell through.
 Chúng tôi đã dự định đến Pari nhưng kế hoạch không thành công.
- **fall to:**
 - *To begin enthusiastically, especially eating: bắt đầu đầy hào hứng, đặc biệt là ăn uống.*
 Eg: The food was put on the table and they fell to eagerly.
 Thức ăn được bày ra trên bàn và họ xông đến tới tấp.
 - *To come as one's duty: là trách nhiệm của ai.*
 Eg: It falls to me to take care of the children.
 Mọi trách nhiệm chăm sóc lũ trẻ đổ lên tôi.
- **fan out:** *to spread out in the shape of a fan: xòe ra.*
 Eg: He fanned out the photographs in his hand.
 Anh ta xòe những tấm ảnh trên bàn tay.
- **fasten on/upon:** *to seize on or fix one's attention: chú ý tới.*
 Eg: He fastened on her last remark.
 Anh ta chú ý tới lời nhận xét cuối cùng của cô ấy.
- **fatten up:** *make or become fat: béo lên, vỗ béo.*
 Eg: They are fattening up a chicken to eat at Christmas.
 Họ đang vỗ béo con gà để ăn vào Giáng sinh.
- **fawn upon:** *to be humble or to flatter someone in a servile way: xu nịnh.*
 Eg: The courtiers fawned upon the King.
 Các triều thần xu nịnh nhà Vua.
- **feel for:**
 - *To be sympathetic with: đồng cảm với.*
 Eg: She felt for him in his sorrow.
 Cô ấy đồng cảm với nỗi buồn của anh.
 - *To try to find by feeling: sờ soạng.*
 Eg: She felt for a pencil in her handbag.
 Cô ta lục tìm cái bút chì trong túi.
- **fiddle with:** *make restless, aimless movement (nghịch ngợm, táy máy)*
 Eg: Stop fiddling with your pencil! Đừng có nghịch ngợm cái bút chì của bạn nữa.

- **fight back:** *to use (physical) violence against someone who is using (physical) violence against one (đánh lại).*
 Eg: If he hits, you fight back.
 Nếu anh ta đánh, bạn hãy đánh lại.
- **fight out:** *to fight on to a decisive end: đánh đến cùng.*
 Eg: Fight it out among yourselves which of you is to go.
 Hãy tranh đấu để xem ai trong hai bạn là người được đi tiếp.
- **figure out:** *to understand: hiểu ra.*
 Eg: I can't figure out why he said that.
 Tôi không thể hiểu tại sao anh ta nói vậy.
- **fill in:**
 - *To add or put in: điền thêm vào.*
 Eg: The teacher drew outlines of animals and the children filled them in.
 Giáo viên vẽ viền những con vật và lũ nhỏ hoàn thành chúng.
 - *To complete (forms, applications, etc.) by putting in the information required: điền đơn đăng kí.*
 Eg: You must fill in this form if you want a new passport.
 Bạn phải điền đơn này nếu bạn muốn có hộ chiếu mới.
 - *To give someone all the necessary information: đưa cho ai thông tin cần thiết.*
 Eg: I've been away – can you fill me in on what happened?
 Tôi vừa ra ngoài, bạn có thể báo lại cho tôi những gì đã xảy ra không?
 - *To occupy (time): chiếm thời gian.*
 Eg: Now that I'm not working I have a lot of spare time - I don't know how to fill it in.
 Vì tôi đang không làm việc nên tôi có nhiều thời gian rảnh – tôi không biết làm gì để lấp đầy thời gian đó.
 - *To do another person's job temporarily: làm thay ai một thời gian.*
 Eg: I'm filling in for his secretary while she's in hospital.
 Tôi đang làm thay cho thư kí của anh ta khi cô ấy ở trong bệnh viện.
- **fill out:**
 - *To (cause to) become rounder or fatter: trở nên, làm cho tròn hơn, béo hơn.*
 Eg: She used to be very thin but she has filled out a bit now.
 Cô ấy đã từng rất gầy nhưng dạo này cô béo lên chút rồi.
 - *To fill in (forms etc.): điền đơn.*
 Eg: I'm tired of filling out forms.
 Tôi đã chán ngấy việc điền mẫu đơn rồi.
- **fill up:** *to make or become completely full: làm đầy, trở nên đầy.*
 Eg: Fill up the petrol tank please.
 Đổ đầy bình xăng cho tôi.

• **find out:**

- *To discover: phát hiện ra.*

Eg: I found out what was troubling her.

Tôi đã hiểu vấn đề gì đang xảy ra với cô ta.

- *To discover the truth about someone, usually that he has done wrong: khám phá ra sự thật về ai đó, thường là việc làm sai.*

Eg: He had been stealing for years, but eventually they found him out.

Anh ta đã ăn trộm bao năm nay, nhưng cuối cùng họ đã tìm ra anh ta.

• **finish off:**

- *To complete: hoàn thành.*

Eg: He finished off the job yesterday.

Anh ta đã hoàn thành công việc vào hôm qua.

- *To use, eat etc. the last of: sử dụng cái cuối cùng.*

Eg: We've finished off the pudding.

Chúng tôi vừa ăn hết bánh pudding.

- *To kill a person: giết người.*

Eg: His last illness nearly finished him off.

Căn bệnh của anh ta suýt nữa giết chết anh ta.

• **finish up:**

- *To use, eat etc. the last of; to finish: hoàn thành.*

Eg: Finish up your meal as quickly as possible.

Ăn hết cơm nhanh lên.

- *To end: kết thúc.*

Eg: It was no surprise to me when he finished up in jail.

Việc anh ta đi tù chả làm tôi ngạc nhiên tí nào.

• **fire away:**

- *To begin to fire gun etc: nổ súng.*

Eg: "Fire away!" called the sergeant major to the young soldiers.

"Nổ súng", thượng sĩ nói với những người lính trẻ.

- *To go ahead: tiếp tục đi.*

Eg: I'm ready to start writing down what you're going to say – fire away.

Tôi sẵn sàng bắt đầu ghi chép lại những gì bạn nói.

- *To continue shooting for some time: bắt đầu nổ súng trong một thời gian.*

Eg: They fired away at the target for several minutes.

Họ bắn súng vào mục tiêu trong vài phút.

- **fit in:** *to be able to live, exit, etc. in agreement or harmony: có thể sống, tồn tại trong hòa thuận, vui vẻ.*

Eg: My holiday plans must fit in with my colleague's plans.

Kế hoạch nghỉ dưỡng của tôi phải phù hợp với kế hoạch của đồng nghiệp.

- **fix on/upon:** *to decide or to choose: chốt, quyết định.*

Eg: Have you fixed on a date for your party yet?

Bạn đã chốt ngày cho buổi tiệc chưa?

- **flag down:** *to wave at (a car etc.) in order to make it stop (vẫy xe).*

Eg: We flagged down a taxi in the High Street.

Chúng tôi vẫy xe taxi trên đường cao tốc.

- **flock to/into:** *to gather or go somewhere together in a crowd: tụ tập thành đám.*

Eg: We all flocked into the dining room.

Chúng tôi tất cả tụ tập lại ở phòng ăn.

- **flog away:** *to work very hard: làm việc vất vả.*

Eg: He flogged away at his homework.

Anh ta làm bài về nhà vất vả lắm.

- **follow up:**

- *To go further in doing something: làm tới cái gì.*

Eg: I like painting, so I decided to follow up.

Tôi thích vẽ, nên tôi quyết định sẽ theo đuổi.

- *To find out more about something: tìm hiểu thêm về cái gì.*

Eg: I heard the news about him, and decided to follow it up.

Tôi nghe tin về anh ta và quyết định theo dõi tiếp.

- **fool about/around:** *to act like a fool or playfully: hành động như một đứa ngu, hiểu động.*

Eg: Every time I see him, he seems to be fooling around.

Mỗi lần tôi thấy anh ta, anh ta đều tỏ vẻ ngu ngốc.

- **forage about:** *to search thoroughly: tìm hiểu kỹ lưỡng về.*

Eg: He foraged about in the cupboard.

Anh ta tìm kiếm trong ngăn tủ.

- **forbear from:** *to keep oneself from doing something: nhịn không làm gì.*

Eg: We must forbear from talking about it.

Chúng tôi phải nhịn không nói về chuyện đó.

- **freshen up:** *to (cause to) become less tired or untidy looking: làm tươi tỉnh, gọn gàng.*

Eg: A wash and a rest will freshen me up.

Tắm rửa và nghỉ ngơi sẽ khiến tôi tỉnh táo lại.

- **freeze up:** *to stop moving or functioning because of extreme cold:* đông cứng lại.

Eg: The cold weather has frozen up the gate – it won't open!

Trời lạnh đã đóng băng cái cổng.

- **frown on/upon:** *to disapprove of something:* bất đồng với cái gì.

Eg: My family frowns on smoking and drinking.

Gia đình tôi không tán thành chuyện thuốc lá, bia rượu.

7. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng G

- **gain on:** *to get or come closer to:* gần đến.

Eg: Drive faster – the police car is gaining on us.

Lái nhanh lên – xe cảnh sát sắp đuổi đến chúng ta rồi.

- **gang up on:** *to join or act with a person etc. against (some other person etc.):* gia nhập nhóm để chống lại ai.

Eg: The manager felt that the younger members of staff were ganging up on him.

Người quản lý cảm thấy những nhân viên mới đang tụ lại chống lại anh ta.

- **gather together:** *to come or bring together, in a group:* tụ tập lại.

Eg: The lecturer gathered his books and papers together.

Giảng viên thu thập sách và giấy lại.

- **gather up:** *to collect together by picking up:* nhặt lại.

Eg: He gathered up his books and walked out.

Anh ta nhặt sách lên và bước đi.

- **get about:**

- *(of stories, rumours, etc.) to become well known:* chuyện, tin đồn được biết đến rộng rãi.

Eg: I don't know how the story got about that she was leaving.

Tôi không biết làm kiểu gì mà câu chuyện cô ta bỏ đi đang lan rộng.

- *To be able to move or travel about, often of people who have been ill:* người bệnh có thể đi lại được.

Eg: She didn't get about much after her operation.

Cô ta không đi lại được mấy sau ca phẫu thuật.

- **get across:** *to be or make something understood:* hiểu ra, làm cho hiểu ra.

Eg: This is something which rarely get across to the general public.

Đây là thứ khá khó hiểu với dân chúng.

- **get ahead:** *to make progress; to be successful:* tiến tới, thành công.

Eg: If you want to get ahead, you must work hard.

Nếu bạn muốn thành công, bạn phải phấn đấu.

- **get along:**

- *To manage or make progress:* xoay sở, tiến bộ.

Eg: I can't get along without some help.

Tôi không thể xoay sở được nếu không có sự giúp đỡ.

- *To be friendly or on good terms: hòa thuận.*

Eg: The children just cannot get along together.

Lũ trẻ không thể hòa thuận với nhau được.

- *To move or go away: di chuyển.*

Eg: I must be getting along right now or I will miss the bus.

Tôi phải đi ngay đây nếu không sẽ bị lỡ xe buýt.

- **get around:**

- *(of stories, rumors, etc.) To become well known: được phổ biến.*

Eg: I don't know how the story got about that she was leaving.

Tôi không biết làm kiểu gì mà câu chuyện cô ta bỏ đi đang lan rộng.

- *(of people) to be active or involved in many activities: tham gia nhiều hoạt động.*

Eg: He really gets around, doesn't he?

Anh ta thực sự hoạt động rất tích cực, phải không?

- *To avoid or solve a problem: tránh hoặc giải quyết các vấn đề.*

Eg: I don't see any ways of getting around these difficulties.

Tôi không thấy có cách nào để giải quyết các khó khăn này.

- **get at:**

- *To reach (a place, thing etc.): đạt tới.*

Eg: The farm is very difficult to get at.

Rất khó để đến tới trang trại.

- *To suggest or imply something: gợi ý.*

Eg: What are you getting at?

Bạn đang gợi ý điều gì?

- *To point out (a person's faults) or make fun of (a person): chỉ lỗi sai của ai để cười nhạo.*

Eg: He's always getting at me.

Anh ta luôn bắt lỗi tôi.

- *To persuade (a person) by money, threats etc. to tell lies etc: thuyết phục ai đó bằng tiền, đe dọa, để họ nói dối.*

Eg: The witnesses have been got at.

Các nhân chứng đã bị mua chuộc

- **get away:**

- *To (be able to) leave: rời đi.*

Eg: I usually get away from the office at five.

Tôi luôn rời khỏi văn phòng lúc 5h.

- *To escape*: trốn đi.

Eg: The thieves got away in a stolen car.

Tên trộm bỏ trốn trong một chiếc xe bị trộm.

- *To take something away from a person*: lấy cái gì khỏi từ ai đó.

Eg: I must get that letter away from her before she reads what I said about her.

Tôi phải lấy lá thư đó trước khi cô ấy đọc được những gì tôi viết về cô ấy.

- *To deny something or avoid taking into consideration* (phủ nhận hoặc tránh suy nghĩ).

Eg: There is no getting away from the fact that John is not the right man for the job.

Không thể phủ nhận là John phù hợp với công việc này.

- **get away with**: *to do something bad without being punished for it*: trốn phạt.

Eg: Murder is a serious crime and one rarely gets away with it.

Giết người là tội nghiêm trọng và hiếm ai thoát khỏi hình phạt.

- **get back**: *to move away*: đi khỏi.

Eg: The policeman told the crowd to get back.

Cảnh sát nói đám đông giải tán.

- **get back at**: *to have revenge on a person*: trả thù ai.

Eg: You can laugh now, but I'll get back at you somehow.

Bạn có thể cười bây giờ, nhưng tôi sẽ trả đũa bạn.

- **get by**:

- *To manage*: xoay sở.

Eg: I can't get by on \$50 a week.

Tôi không thể sống chỉ với 50\$ một tuần.

- *To be acceptable*: chấp nhận được.

Eg: This definition isn't very good but it will properly get by.

Định nghĩa này không quá xuất sắc nhưng tạm chấp nhận được.

- **get down**:

- *To leave (a bus, a train etc.)*: xuống xe, tàu.

Eg: The platform is so slow that it is difficult to get down from the train.

Cái bệ thấp quá nên rất khó bước xuống tàu.

- *To make a person sad*: khiến ai buồn.

Eg: Working in this place really gets me down.

Làm việc ở đây thật chán.

- *To swallow (usually with difficulty or unwillingly)*: nhai khó khăn và miễn cưỡng.

Eg: I feel sick, but I'll try to get some food down.

Tôi thấy không khỏe, nhưng tôi cố nuốt ít thức ăn.

- *To write something down*: ghi chép lại.

Eg: Did you get down everything he said?

Bạn đã chép lại mọi thứ anh ta nói chứ?

• **get down to**: *to begin to work hard at something*: bắt đầu nghiêm túc làm gì.

Eg: I must get down to work tonight, as I've got exams next week.

Tôi phải nghiêm túc học hành tối nay, vì tuần sau thi rồi.

• **get in with**: *to become friendly or on good terms with a person, usually for one's own benefit*: làm thân với ai, có mục đích.

Eg: He's trying to get in with the boss in order to get a pay rise.

Anh ta cố gắng làm thân với ông chủ để được tăng lương.

• **get into**:

- *To put on (clothes)*: mặc vào.

Eg: I find it very difficult to get into these tight trousers.

Tôi thấy việc mặc quần chật này khó khăn quá.

- *To (begin to) be in particular start or behave in a particular way*: bắt đầu hành động theo kiểu nào đó.

Eg: He gets into a temper if you argue with him.

Anh ta cáu khi tôi tranh cãi với anh.

- *To begin to enjoy, understand etc*: bắt đầu tận hưởng, hiểu.

Eg: I just can't get into that book.

Tôi không thể hiểu cuốn sách đó.

• **get off**:

- *To leave (rời đi)*.

Eg: I get off at the next stop.

Tôi xuống xe ở điểm tới.

- *To take off or remove clothes, marks*: cởi quần áo, giày dép.

Eg: I can't get my boots off.

Tôi không bỏ giày ra được.

- *To (cause or help someone to) receive little or no punishment after doing wrong*: thoát phạt.

Eg: The thief's lawyer got him off with a small fine.

Người luật sư của tên trộm tha cho anh ta, chỉ phạt hình phạt nhỏ.

- *To manage not to do something that one doesn't want to do*: cố không làm cái việc mà mình không muốn.

Eg: I got off digging the garden this week by pretending to feel ill.

Tôi cố trốn việc đào vườn tuần này bằng cách giả ốm.

- *To stop talking, writing etc. about something; to change (the subject which one is talking, writing, etc. about): ngừng nói chuyện, viết về chủ đề gì, thay đổi chủ đề.*

Eg: We're rather got off the subject.

Chúng tôi muốn đổi chủ đề.

• **get off with:** *to form a close, often sexual, relationship with someone at a dance, party: cặp với ai.*

Eg: I'm hoping to get off with Mary tonight.

Tôi muốn bắt cặp với Mary tối nay.

• **get at:** *to criticize a person continually or frequently: chỉ trích ai.*

Eg: My wife is always getting on at me for not cleaning my shoes.

Vợ tôi liên tục chỉ trích tôi vì không lau giày.

• **get on:**

- *To make progress or be successful: tiến bộ, thành công.*

Eg: How are you getting on in your new job?

• Công việc mới của bạn tiến triển ra sao?

- *To work, live etc. in a friendly way: thân thiện, hòa thuận với ai.*

Eg: We get on well with him.

Chúng tôi hòa thuận với anh ta.

- *To grow old: già đi.*

Eg: Our doctor is getting on a bit now.

Bác sĩ của chúng tôi già đi.

- *To put clothes on (mặc quần áo vào).*

Eg: Go and get your coat on – we're just about to leave.

Đi lấy áo khoác mặc vào – chúng ta sắp đi rồi.

- *To leave somewhere to go somewhere else: di chuyển từ đâu đến đâu.*

Eg: Well, I must be getting on now.

Ồ, tôi phải đi bây giờ đây.

- *To continue doing something: tiếp tục làm gì.*

Eg: I must get on with my work.

Tôi phải tiếp tục công việc.

• **get on to:**

- *To make contact with a person by telephone: liên lạc bằng điện thoại.*

Eg: You must get on to the airline at once to see if your flight has been delayed.

Bạn phải liên lạc với bên hàng không để xem chuyến bay có bị hoãn không.

- *To deal with a problem: giải quyết vấn đề.*

Eg: I'll get on to the matter of your television at once.

Tôi sẽ giải quyết cái ti vi của bạn.

- **get out of:**

- *To leave (a car); to escape (from somewhere): rời xe, thoát khỏi nơi nào.*

Eg: He got out of the car.

Anh ta xuống xe.

- *To (help a person) to avoid doing something: tránh làm gì.*

Eg: I wonder how I can get out of washing these dishes.

Tôi suy nghĩ không biết làm gì để trốn được việc rửa bát đĩa.

- *To persuade or force a person to give someone something: thuyết phục, bắt ai đưa ai cái gì.*

Eg: I'll get the money out of him.

Tôi sẽ lấy tiền ra khỏi anh ta.

- *To (persuade a person to) get rid of a habit: bỏ thói quen.*

Eg: I wish I could get that child out of the habit of sucking his thumb.

Tôi ước tôi có thể giúp thằng bé bỏ thói quen mút tay.

- **get over:**

- *To recover from (an illness, disappointment, etc.): hồi phục.*

Eg: I've got over my cold now.

Tôi vừa khỏi cảm cúm rồi.

- *To no longer feel sad when thinking about a person, usually of the opposite : hết bệnh tương tư.*

Eg: It took me a long time to get over my first girl-friend.

Rất lâu để tôi có thể quên đi được bạn gái đầu tiên của đời mình.

- *To manage to make oneself or something understood: cố gắng hiểu, làm cho được hiểu.*

Eg: We must get our message over to the general public.

Chúng ta phải làm cho thông điệp của chúng ta đến được với công chúng.

- **get round:**

- *To persuade a person to do something he, she would not wish to do: thuyết phục ai làm gì, đặc biệt là những việc mà họ không muốn làm.*

Eg: She can always get round her grandfather by giving him a big smile.

Cô ấy luôn có thể thuyết phục ông bằng một nụ cười.

- *To solve a problem: giải quyết vấn đề.*

Eg: We can easily get round these few difficulties.

Chúng ta có thể dễ dàng giải quyết vấn đề này.

- **get (a)round to:** *To manage to do something; to find enough time to do something: xoay sở làm gì, có thời gian làm gì.*
 Eg: I don't know when I'll get round to painting the door.
 Tôi không biết khi nào tôi có thời gian sơn lại cái cửa.
- **get off:** *to produce something: tỏa ra.*
 Eg: That fire is giving off a lot of smoke.
 Lửa tạo ra nhiều khói.
- **get through:**
 - *To finish work: hoàn thành công việc.*
 Eg: We've got to her through a lot of work today.
 Chúng tôi nhờ cô ấy làm nhiều việc hôm nay.
 - *To make contact with another person by telephone: liên lạc với ai qua điện thoại.*
 Eg: I couldn't get through (to my mother) yesterday.
 Tôi không thể liên lạc với mẹ ngày hôm qua.
 - *To pass an examination: đỗ kì thi.*
 Eg: I'll never get through my French exam.
 Tôi sẽ không bao giờ vượt qua được kì thi tiếng Pháp.
 - *To help (a person etc.) to pass an examination: giúp ai thi đỗ.*
 Eg: He's a good teacher, but even he couldn't get her through her French exam.
 Ông ấy là một giáo viên tốt, dù ông ấy không thể giúp cho cô đỗ môn tiếng Pháp.
 - *To arrive somewhere, usually with some difficulty: đến được đâu, thường là với khó khăn.*
 Eg: The food got through to them despite the enemy's attempts to stop it.
 Thức ăn đã đến được với họ dù kẻ thù ra sức ngăn cản.
 - *To (cause to) be agreed or accepted: được đồng ý, chấp nhận.*
 Eg: The new bill will never get through.
 Hóa đơn mới sẽ không bao giờ được chấp nhận.
 - *To make oneself understood by someone: khiến ai hiểu mình.*
 Eg: I just can't seem to get through to her any more.
 Tôi chỉ là không thể làm sao để cô ấy hiểu được tôi nữa.
 - *To make someone understand. khiến ai hiểu.*
 Eg: We can't get through to him that smoking is bad for his health.
 Chúng ta không thể khiến anh ta hiểu được là hút thuốc là có hại cho sức khỏe.
- **get up:**
 - *To get out of bed: thức dậy.*
 Eg: I got up at seven o'clock.
 Tôi thức dậy lúc 7h.

- *To stand up*: đứng dậy.

Eg: Please don't get up on my account.

Đừng đứng lên bàn kê của tôi.

- *To increase (usually speed)*: tăng tốc.

Eg: The vehicle got up speed as it ran down the hill.

Phương tiện giao thông tăng tốc khi xuống dốc.

- *(of a wind) to begin to be strong, fierce or rough*: gió mạnh hơn, dữ dội hơn.

Eg: There's quite a wind getting up outside.

Gió bên ngoài đã mạnh lên rồi.

- **give away**:

- *To give, spend, present etc. (something) to someone*: đưa, dành, tặng cái gì cho ai.

Eg: I'm going to give all money away.

Chúng tôi chuẩn bị cho hết tiền đi.

- *To cause or allow (information, one's plans) to become known usually accidentally*: để lộ thông tin.

Eg: He gave away our hiding-place.

Anh ta làm lộ ra khu ẩn náu của chúng ta.

- **give in**:

- *To stop fighting and admit that one has been defeated*: nhận thua.

Eg: The only way to win a war is to keep fighting and never think about giving in to the enemy.

Cách duy nhất để thắng một trận chiến là kiên trì đánh đến cùng và không bao giờ nghĩ đến việc đầu hàng đối thủ.

- *To hand, bring or present something to someone*: đưa, dành, tặng cái gì cho ai.

Eg: Do you have to give in your book at the end of lesson?

Bạn có phải trả lại sách vào cuối buổi học không?

- **give out**:

- *To give something usually to several people*: phát ra.

Eg: The mayor is giving out the school prizes this year.

Thị trưởng đang phát quà cho trường học năm này.

- *To come to an end or be used up*: sử dụng hết.

Eg: My patience/money gave out.

Sự kiên nhẫn/tiền của tôi cạn kiệt rồi.

- *To send out or produce something*: tỏa ra.

Eg: The fire burned fiercely, giving out a lot of heat.

Lửa cháy dữ dội, tỏa rất nhiều nhiệt.

- *To make something known: công khai.*

Eg: It was given out that there would be another wage freeze.

Đã có tin là sẽ chậm lương.

- **give over:** *to give a person, thing etc. to someone: đưa người, vật cho ai.*

Eg: He gave his prisoners the jewels over to the police.

Anh ta đưa cho cảnh sát trang sức qua người quản ngục.

- **give up:**

- *to stop doing something or trying to do something: ngưng việc gì.*

Eg: I can't understand this problem. I think I'll give up.

Tôi không thể hiểu vấn đề này. Tôi nghĩ tôi sẽ từ bỏ.

- *To devote (one's life, time etc.) to doing something: cống hiến thời gian, cuộc đời để làm gì.*

Eg: I have given up so much of my time to this job that I won't stop now.

Tôi đã dành quá nhiều thời gian của tôi cho công việc này đến nỗi bây giờ tôi không dừng lại được.

- **go about:**

- *(of rumours) to be passed from one person to another: tin đồn truyền từ người này sang người khác.*

Eg: There's a story going about that you are in debt.

Có tin đồn là bạn đang nợ.

- *To begin to work at (a job, problem): bắt đầu xử lý một công việc, vấn đề.*

Eg: I don't know the best way to go about the job.

Tôi không biết cách tốt nhất để giải quyết vấn đề.

- **go after:**

- *To try to get or win something: cố lấy/thắng được thứ gì.*

Eg: He's going after that prize/job.

Anh ta đang cố thắng giải/công việc đó.

- *To follow or chase (a person etc): theo sát ai.*

Eg: Go after him and apologize!

Đi theo và xin lỗi anh ta ngay!

- **go ahead:** *to start to do something: tiếp tục làm.*

Eg: I warned him not to touch it but he went ahead and did it.

Tôi cảnh báo anh ta không chạm vào nhưng anh ta cứ tiếp tục và cuối cùng đã chạm vào.

- **go along:**

- *To go (to a meeting, party): đi tiệc, họp.*

Eg: I will go along to the meeting with you.

Tôi sẽ đi họp với bạn.

- *To be in the process of doing something*: đang diễn ra.

Eg: I never check my work after I've finished it. I prefer to do the check as I go along.
 Tôi không bao giờ kiểm tra công việc sau khi hoàn thành. Tôi thích vừa làm vừa kiểm tra song song hơn.

- **go back on**: *to fail to do something one has promised to do*: thất hứa.

Eg: I never go back on my promises.
 Tôi không bao giờ thất hứa.

- **go by**:

- *To base an opinion or a judgement on something*: dựa theo ý kiến và đánh giá về cái gì.

Eg: We can't go by what he says.
 Chúng ta không thể dựa theo những gì anh ta nói.

- *To be guided by something*: được hướng dẫn bởi.

Eg: When I'm not sure what to do, I always go by the instructions you gave me.
 Khi tôi không chắc nên làm gì, tôi luôn nghe theo những chỉ dẫn của bạn.

- **go down**:

- *(of food) to be swallowed*: được nuốt xuống.

Eg: Yoghurt goes down easily.
 Sữa chua dễ nuốt.

- *To become smaller*: nhỏ lại.

Eg: The swelling on my arm has gone down a bit.
 Vết sưng ở tay tôi đã nhỏ lại một chút.

- *To become less pleasant, or less desirable*: ít thú vị hơn.

Eg: This part of town has gone down in the last twenty years.
 Phần này của thị trấn đã không còn tuyệt vời như 20 năm trước.

- **go down with**: *to catch (a disease)*: mắc bệnh.

Eg: He has gone down with flu.
 Anh ta bị cảm cúm.

- **go for**:

- *To attack physically or in words*: tấn công bằng vũ lực hay lời nói.

Eg: The two dogs went for each other as soon as they met.
 Hai con chó tấn công nhau ngay khi gặp.

- *To be attracted by*: bị thu hút bởi.

Eg: I go for redheads in short skirt.
 Tôi bị thu hút bởi cô gái tóc đỏ trong bộ váy ngắn.

• **go in for:**

- *To take part in: tham gia.*

Eg: I'm not going for the 1,000 meters race.

Tôi định không tham gia đường đua 1000m.

- *To do something as a hobby, job, habit; to study something at university: làm một việc gì thành thói quen, đi học ở đại học.*

Eg: My sons goes in for medicine.

Con trai tôi học được.

• **go into:**

- *To make careful study of something in detail: nghiên cứu kỹ lưỡng.*

Eg: We'll need to go into this plan in more detail before we make any decision.

Chúng ta cần nghiên cứu kỹ kế hoạch này trước khi quyết định.

- *To discuss or describe something in detail: bàn luận hoặc miêu tả chi tiết.*

Eg: I don't want to go into the problems at the moment as there isn't any time before my next appointment.

Tôi không muốn bàn bạc về vấn đề lúc này vì tôi không có thời gian trước buổi gặp tiếp theo.

• **go off:**

- *To fire, to explode: nổ.*

Eg: The little boy was injured when the rifle/firework went off in his hand.

Cậu bé bị thương khi súng/ pháo hoa nổ trong tay cậu.

- *(often in a bad sense) To leave: rời đi.*

Eg: He has gone off yesterday.

Anh ta đã đi hôm qua rồi.

- *To begin to dislike someone or something once liked: bắt đầu chán cái gì mà trước đây mình thích.*

Eg: I've gone off Shakespeare.

Tôi chán ngấy Shakespear rồi.

- *To take place and be successful: diễn ra, thành công.*

Eg: Did the party go off all right last night?

Buổi tiệc hôm qua thành công chứ?

- *(of an alarm) to ring, make a noise: đồng hồ reo.*

Eg: The thieves ran away as soon as the alarm went off.

Những tên trộm bỏ trốn ngay khi chuông báo kêu.

• **go on:**

- *To continue going, to go as far as (a place): tiếp tục, đi đến cùng.*

Eg: There's no room in this hotel. Let's go on to the next town.

Không còn phòng trong khách sạn nữa. Hãy đi đến thị trấn tiếp theo.

- *To continue doing something*: tiếp tục việc đang dở.
 Eg: Go on with what you are doing.
 Cứ tiếp tục việc mà bạn đang làm đi.
- *To happen*: xảy ra.
 Eg: What is going on here?
 Chuyện gì đang diễn ra vậy?
- *To pass by*: trôi qua.
 Eg: Things will get better as time goes on.
 Mọi thứ sẽ tốt đẹp hơn khi thời gian trôi qua.
- *To behave, especially badly*: cư xử tồi tệ.
 Eg: If you go on like that much longer, someone will slap your face.
 Nếu bạn cứ cư xử như vậy thêm nữa thì sẽ có người cho bạn ăn vạ.
- **go on at**: *to speak to someone in an angry or criticize way, usually for some time (chỉ trích ai)*.
 Eg: Her mother went on at her for coming home late after the dance.
 Mẹ cô ấy chỉ trích cô vì về nhà muộn sau bữa tiệc.
- **go out**:
 - *To go to meetings, parties*: đi họp, đi tiệc.
 Eg: We don't go out as much as we did when we were younger.
 Chúng tôi không đi chơi nhiều như ngày còn trẻ.
 - *No longer to be part of something because one has been beaten*: không còn là một phần trong đó vì đã bị đánh bại.
 Eg: The local team went out in the first round.
 Đội nhà đã thua ngay từ vòng đầu.
- **go over**:
 - *To study or look at something carefully*: học kĩ.
 Eg: I want to go over the work you have done before you do any more.
 Tôi muốn bạn học kĩ lại những gì đã làm trước khi chuyển sang cái khác.
 - *To repeat (a story); to practice (part of a play, music etc.)*: lặp lại câu chuyện, luyện tập kịch, nhạc.
 Eg: Some of you haven't understood this lesson, so I'll go over the whole thing again.
 Một vài người các bạn không hiểu bài học, nên tôi sẽ ôn lại lần nữa.
- *To list, discuss or consider*: liệt kê, thảo luận, xem xét.
 Eg: I have no intention of going over all your faults.
 Tôi không có ý định nhìn vào những sai lầm của bạn.
- **go through**:
 - *To make a close study or examination of something; to research for something in something*: nghiên cứu kĩ cái gì.
 Eg: The treasurer went through the society's accounts.
 Quỹ đã thông qua bản kê xã hội.

- *To suffer: chịu đựng.*

Eg: You have no idea what I went through to get this finished in time.

Bạn không biết tôi đã phải trải qua những gì để hoàn thành nó đúng thời hạn đâu.

- *To do or complete: hoàn thành.*

Eg: You have to go through certain formalities before you can emigrate.

Bạn phải hoàn thành một số thủ tục trước khi nhập cư.

- *To be agreed to or completed: được đồng ý, hoàn thiện.*

Eg: After long hours of negotiation, the deal went through.

Sau tranh luận hàng giờ, hợp đồng được thông qua.

- **go through with:** *to do something or finish doing something: hoàn thành cái gì.*

Eg: I'm going to go through with this in spite of what you say.

Tôi sẽ làm xong cái này dù bạn có nói gì đi chăng nữa.

- **go under:** *to be ruined: bị phá hủy.*

Eg: He has no idea how to run a shop. His business is bound to go under eventually.

Anh ta không biết cách điều khiển một cửa hàng. Doanh nghiệp của anh ta cuối cùng cũng sẽ bị phá hủy.

- **go without:** *to manage without something: xoay sở mà không có gì.*

Eg: If you can't afford a new dress, you'll have to go without one.

Nếu bạn không đủ tiền mua váy mới, thì hãy thôi đi.

- **go up:**

- *To increase in size, value: tăng giá, cỡ.*

Eg: The temperature has gone up. – Nhiệt độ tăng lên.

- *To be built: được xây.*

Eg: There are office blocks going up all over town.

Có những tòa văn phòng đang được xây lên khắp thị trấn.

- **grab at:** *seize or take: vồ lấy.*

Eg: He grabbed at the chance to leave.

Anh ta vồ lấy cơ hội để bỏ đi.

- **grate on/upon:** *to irritate or annoy someone: nhai lại, làm phiền ai.*

Eg: His voice really grates on me.

Giọng nói của anh ta làm phiền tôi.

- **grow into:** *to become big enough to wear: đủ lớn để mặc vừa quần áo.*

Eg: These shoes are a little too big for him, but he'll grow into them.

Đôi giày bé quá so với anh ta nhưng anh ta rồi sẽ lớn và mặc vừa thôi.

- **grow on/upon:** *to gradually become liked by someone: dần dần được thích.*

Eg: I didn't like the painting at first, but it has grown on me.

Ban đầu tôi không thích tranh đó, nhưng về sau lại thích.

- **grow out of:**

- *To become too big to wear: lớn quá không mặc vừa.*

Eg: He has grown out of that coat.

Anh ta lớn quá không vừa áo khoác đó.

- *To stop doing something as one grows older and becomes an adult: dừng làm gì vì ai đó đã trưởng thành rồi.*

Eg: He'll eventually grow out of sucking his thumbs.

Cuối cùng thì nó cũng thôi mút tay.

8. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng H

- **hand down:** *to pass on (a precious object, a belief, a tradition) from one generation to the next: truyền lại.*

Eg: These customs have been handed down from father to son since the Middle ages.

Những phong tục đã được truyền lại từ đời cha đến đời con từ thời kì trung đại.

- **hand in:**

- *To give or bring something to a person, place etc: nộp lại.*

Eg: The teacher told the children to hand in their exercise-books.

Cô giáo bảo lũ trẻ nộp vở bài tập.

- *To give or bring something to a person, place: đưa cái gì cho ai, đến đâu.*

Eg: I'll hand letter in to his office as I go past tonight.

Tôi sẽ nộp thư đến văn phòng khi tôi qua đó.

- **hand on:** *to give something to someone: đưa gì cho ai.*

Eg: When you have finished reading these notes, hand them on to the person after you on the list.

Khi bạn đọc xong những ghi chú này, đưa nó cho người đứng sau bạn trong danh sách.

- **hand out:** *to give a number of things by hands to several people: phân phát.*

Eg: The teacher handed out the books to all pupils.

Giáo viên phát sách cho học sinh.

- **hang back:** *to hesitate or be unwilling to do something: lưỡng lự không làm gì.*

Eg: The soldiers all hung back when the sergeant asked for volunteers for the mission.

Các bộ đội đều lưỡng lự khi người trung sĩ yêu cầu tình nguyện cho sứ mệnh này.

• **hang about/around:**

- *To stand around doing nothing: đi quanh không làm gì.*

Eg: I don't like to see all these youths hanging about.

Tôi không muốn nhìn những người trẻ đi lại không làm gì.

- *To be close to a person frequently: gần gũi ai.*

Eg: I don't want you hanging about my daughter.

Tôi không muốn cậu gần gũi con gái tôi.

• **hang on:**

- *To wait: chờ.*

Eg: Will you hang on a minute? – I'm not quite ready.

Bạn chờ chút được không? – Tôi chưa sẵn sàng.

- *To hold something: giữ vật gì.*

Eg: Hang on to that rope.

Nắm lấy sợi dây.

• **hang out:**

- *To live: sống.*

Eg: Where does he hang out nowadays?

Bạn sống ở đâu?

- *To hang on a rope outside to dry: phơi.*

Eg: I'll go and hang out the washing.

Tôi sẽ đi phơi quần áo.

• **hang up:**

- *To hang something on something: treo cái gì lên đâu.*

Eg: Hang up your coat in the cupboard.

Treo áo khoác của bạn lên tủ.

- *To put the receiver back after a telephone conversation: gác máy.*

Eg: I tried to talk to her, but she hang up on me.

Tôi cố gắng nói chuyện với cô ấy, nhưng cô ấy đã gác máy.

• **have on:**

- *To wear: mặc.*

Eg: That's a nice suit you have on.

Bạn mặc bộ đồ thật đẹp.

- *To fool someone: lừa ai.*

Eg: You're having me on. That's not really true, is it?

Bạn đang lừa tôi. Điều đó không đúng, phải không?

- *To be busy with something*: *Bận rộn làm gì.*

Eg: Have you anything on this afternoon?

Bạn có bận gì chiều nay không?

- **have up**: *make a person appear in court to answer some charge* (tố cáo ai)

Eg: He was had up for drunken driving.

Anh ta bị tố cáo vì tội lái xe khi say.

- **head off**:

- *To make a person, animal change his, its direction of movement by getting in front of him, it: chặn đầu.*

Eg: One group of soldiers rode across the valley to head the bandits off.

Một nhóm bộ đội đi qua thung lũng để chặn bọn cướp lại.

- *To go in some direction*: *đi theo hướng nào.*

Eg: He headed off towards the river.

Anh ta đi đến dòng sông.

- **hear about/from/of**: *to know someone or something; to receive news about or from someone or something*: *nghe tin về ai.*

Eg: Have you heard from your sister?

Bạn nghe tin gì về chị của bạn chưa?

- **help out**: *to help a person usually for a short time because the person is in some difficulty*: *giúp đỡ trong thời gian ngắn.*

Eg: I don't mind helping out in the shop time to time, but not every day.

Tôi không ngại làm ở cửa hàng trong chốc lát, nhưng không phải ngày nào cũng thế.

- **hit back**:

- *To hit someone by whom one has been hit*: *đánh trả.*

Eg: He hit me, so I hit him back.

Anh ta đánh tôi, tôi đánh trả.

- *To criticize or attack in words*: *chỉ trích.*

Eg: He hit back at those sneered at his plan.

Anh ta chỉ trích những ai chế nhạo kế hoạch của anh.

- **hit on/upon**: *to find an answer by chance*: *tình cờ tìm ra lời giải.*

Eg: We've hit on the solution at last.

Chúng ta vừa tìm ra lời giải vào phút chót.

- **hitch up**: *to pull up or raise something with a sudden short pull*: *kéo lên.*

Eg: He hitched up his trousers.

Anh ta xốc quần lên.

• **hold back:**

- *To refuse to tell someone something: từ chối nói cho ai cái gì.*

Eg: The police were convinced the man was holding something back.

Cảnh sát tin là người đàn ông đang giấu chuyện gì đó.

- *To prevent something from happening, being seen, usually with some effort: ngăn cản việc gì.*

Eg: The little girl succeeded in holding back her tears.

Cô gái nhỏ thành công không để nước mắt rơi.

- *To prevent a person from making progress or to make his progress slower: ngăn cản ai tiến bộ.*

Eg: I meant to finish cleaning the house but the children have held me back all day.

Tôi định lau nhà nhưng lũ trẻ khiến tôi không làm gì được cả ngày.

• **hold on:**

- *To keep a grip on something: nắm lấy thứ gì.*

Eg: She held on to me to stop herself slipping.

Cô ta nắm lấy tôi để ngăn mình khỏi ngã.

- *To stop or wait: dừng/chờ đợi.*

Eg: Hold on! I'm not quite ready yet.

Từ từ! Tôi chưa xong.

• **hold up: to stop or slow progress of something: ngăn cản không cho diễn ra.**

Eg: I'm sorry I'm late. I got held up at the office.

Tôi xin lỗi vì đến trễ. Tôi bị mắc kẹt ở văn phòng.

• **hold with: to approve of something: đồng ý.**

Eg: He doesn't hold with smoking.

Anh ta không đồng ý việc hút thuốc.

• **hunt down: to search for someone or something until found: tìm kiếm cho đến khi tìm ra.**

Eg: The police hunted down the escaped prisoner.

Cảnh sát tìm cho ra tên tù nhân trốn trại.

• **hunt for: to search for: tìm kiếm.**

Eg: I've been hunting for that shoe all morning.

Tôi đi tìm cái giày cả sáng.

9. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng I

• **ice over/up: to become covered with ice: bị phủ tuyết.**

Eg: The garden pond iced over during the night.

Ao vườn bị tuyết phủ cả đêm.

• **identify with: to feel sympathy for someone because he appears to have the same problem: đồng cảm vì chung cảnh ngộ.**

Eg: When reading a novel, we very often identify with the main character in it. –

Khi đọc tiểu thuyết, chúng ta thường đồng cảm với nhân vật chính.

- **idle away:** *to spend time doing nothing: ăn không ngồi rồi.*

Eg: He is just idling the hours away.

Anh ta chỉ có ăn không ngồi rồi.

- **impinge on:**

- *To interfere with a person's freedom, rights: can thiệp đến tự do, quyền lợi,...*

Eg: The shade from the tree impinged on the adjoining garden.

Bóng cây đổ vào khu vườn.

- *To come into contact with or make an impression on a person's mind: tạo liên hệ hoặc gây ấn tượng đến trí nhớ của ai.*

Eg: The sound impinged upon her ears.

Âm thanh tác động vào tai cô ấy.

- **impress on/upon:** *to stress something or someone: tạo ấn tượng lên.*

Eg: I must impress upon you the need for silence.

Tôi phải cho bạn thấy sự cần thiết của im lặng.

- **improve on/upon:** *to produce something which is better, more useful etc. than something else: cải thiện.*

Eg: I think I can improve on that suggestion.

Tôi nghĩ tôi có thể cải thiện gợi ý đó.

- **indulge in:** *to allow oneself to do something or to express an emotion not because one should but one wishes to: cho phép bản thân làm gì, thể hiện cảm xúc gì không phải gì họ nên mà là họ muốn.*

Eg: He tends to indulge in pessimism.

Anh ta có xu hướng thể hiện sự bi quan.

- **inform against/on:** *to tell facts to the police about a criminal: báo cho cảnh sát.*

Eg: He informed against his fellow thieves.

Anh ta báo cảnh sát về bọn đồng phạm.

- **inquire about:** *to ask for information about something: yêu cầu thông tin về.*

Eg: They inquired about trains to London.

Họ hỏi thông tin chuyến tàu đến Luân Đôn.

- **inquire after:** *to ask for information about the state of (a person's health): hỏi thăm tình hình sức khỏe.*

Eg: He inquired after her mother.

Anh ta hỏi thăm sức khỏe của mẹ cô ấy.

- **inquire for:**

- *To ask to see or talk to a person: yêu cầu gặp ai.*

Eg: Someone rang up inquiring for you, but you were out.

Ai đó gọi điện đòi gặp bạn, nhưng bạn đã ra ngoài.

- *To ask for goods in a shop: hỏi mua hàng.*

Eg: Several people have been inquiring for the new catalogue.

Vài người hỏi về quyển danh mục mới.

• **inquire into:** *to try to discover the facts of: tìm kiếm sự thật về.*

Eg: The police are inquiring into the matter.

Cảnh sát hỏi về vấn đề.

• **interfere with:** *to prevent, stop or slow down the progress of something: ngăn cản, làm chậm quá trình diễn ra.*

Eg: He doesn't let anything interfere with his game of golf on Saturday mornings.

Anh ta không cho phép bất cứ điều gì ảnh hưởng đến trận golf vào các sáng thứ bảy.

• **iron out:**

- *To get rid of (creases) by ironing: là phẳng.*

Eg: I shall have to iron out the creases in this dress.

Tôi sẽ là những nếp nhăn ở chiếc váy này.

- *To get rid of difficulties so that progress becomes easier: loại bỏ khó khăn.*

Eg: A few difficulties remain but I think we can iron them all out.

Một vài khó khăn còn tồn tại nhưng tôi nghĩ chúng ta có thể giải quyết được hết.

10. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng J

• **jack up:** *to raise a motor car and keep it supported, with a jack: nâng ô tô lên.*

Eg: You need to jack up the car before you try to remove the wheel.

Bạn phải nâng ô tô lên trước khi tháo bánh xe.

• **jam on:** *to put (brakes etc.) on with force and haste: bóp phanh xe.*

Eg: When the dog ran in front of his car, he jammed on his brakes and skidded.

Khi con chó chạy qua trước xe, anh ta phanh xe và trượt đi.

• **jazz up:** *make something more lively or interesting: làm tươi mới, sống động.*

Eg: The party is boring, let's try and jazz it up a bit.

Bữa tiệc nhàm chán quá, hãy thử làm sống động hơn.

• **join in:** *to take part in: tham gia.*

Eg: We're playing a game. Do join in!

Chúng tôi đang chơi game. Cùng đến chơi đi!

• **join up:** *to become a member of an armed force: gia nhập quân đội.*

Eg: He joined up in 1940.

Anh ta nhập ngũ năm 1940.

• **jolly along:** *to keep someone in a good temper in order to gain his goodwill or co-operation: phỉnh nịnh ai, động viên ai.*

Eg: He might help you if you jolly him along a bit.

Anh ta có thể giúp bạn nếu bạn nịnh anh ta chút xíu.

- **jump at:** *to take or accept eagerly: nhận lấy trong háo hức.*

Eg: He jumped at the chance to go to Germany for a fortnight.

Anh ta vội lấy cơ hội đến Đức trong 2 tuần.

- **jump on:**

- *To make a sudden attack on: tấn công đột ngột.*

Eg: He was waiting round the corner and jumped on me in the dark.

Anh ta đang chờ ở góc và nhảy ra tấn công tôi trong đêm.

- *To criticize unfairly: chỉ trích.*

Eg: She's always jumping on me for my bad spelling.

Cô ấy luôn chỉ trích tôi lỗi chính tả.

11. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng K (ID: EV1045)

- **keep away:** *make st remain at a distance: tránh xa.*

Eg: Keep away! It's dangerous!

Tránh xa ra! Nguy hiểm đó!

- **keep back:**

- *Not to allow to move forward: giữ lại.*

Eg: She kept the child back on the edge of the crowd.

Cô ta giữ đứa trẻ lại ngoài rìa đám đông.

- *Not to tell or make known: giữ lại không nói*

Eg: He's keeping the truth back for some reason.

Anh ta đang giữ lại không nói câu chuyện thật vì lý do nào đó.

- *Not to give or pay out: giữ lại, không trả.*

Eg: Will they keep it back every week?

Họ sẽ giữ nó lại mỗi tuần à?

- **keep down:**

- *To control or put a limit on: kiểm soát, hạn chế.*

Eg: They are taking steps to keep down the rabbit population.

Họ đang nói về những biện pháp để kiểm soát dân số thỏ.

- *Not to allow to rise up: không cho phép ngoi lên.*

Eg: Keep down! They're firing at us!

Đừng ngoi lên! Chúng đang bắn vào chúng ta!

- **keep in:** *not to allow to go or come out: giữ trong nhà, không cho ra ngoài.*

Eg: He's not well so his mother has kept him in until he's better.

Anh ta không được khỏe nên mẹ anh ta giữ anh ta trong nhà cho đến khi anh ta khỏe hơn.

- **keep in with:** *to remain friendly with: thân thiện với.*

Eg: It's a good idea to keep in with the police in case you need their help one day.

Thân thiện với cảnh sát bởi có lúc cần đến họ là một ý hay.

- **keep off:**

- *To stay away: tránh xa, không xảy đến.*

Eg: There are notices everywhere warning people to keep off.

Có thông báo khắp nơi cảnh báo mọi người tránh xa.

- *To prevent from getting to or on to st: ngăn (ai, cái gì) đến.*

Eg: This umbrella isn't pretty, but it keeps off the rain.

Cây dù này không đẹp nhưng nó ngăn được mưa.

- **keep on:**

- *To continue doing st: tiếp tục.*

Eg: She kept on until it was finished.

Cô ấy tiếp tục cho đến khi nó hoàn tất.

- *To continue to employ or use: thuê tiếp, giữ lại để dùng.*

Eg: We kept on the housekeeper after grandfather died.

Chúng tôi giữ lại bà nội trợ sau khi ông nội mất.

- **keep out:** *Not to allow to enter: ngăn không cho vào.*

Eg: This coat keeps out the wind.

Cái áo khoác này không cho gió vào.

- **keep up:**

- *To continue, or cause to remain: duy trì, giữ vững.*

Eg: I enjoy our friendship and try to keep it up.

Tôi thích tình bạn của chúng ta và cố duy trì nó.

- *To remain in good condition: bảo quản tốt.*

Eg: He found it difficult to keep up the garden.

Anh ta thấy thật khó để bảo quản tốt khu vườn.

- **keep up with:** *to move fast enough not to be left behind by.*

Eg: Don't run- I can't keep up with you.

Đừng chạy, tôi không thể bắt kịp anh.

- **kick around:**

- *To treat badly or bully: đối xử thô bạo.*

Eg: The bigger boys are always kicking him round.

Những thằng bé to lớn luôn đối xử thô bạo với cậu to.

- *To be lying etc without being used or dealt with: không được dòm ngó đến.*

Eg: That letter has been kicking around for weeks and no one has answered it yet.

Bức thư đó đã không được dòm ngó nhiều tuần và chưa một ai trả lời nó.

• **kick up:** *to cause or start off: gây nên.*

Eg: He kicked up a fuss about the mess in the garden.

Anh ta làm nhặng xị cả lên về đồng hỗn độn trong vườn.

• **kill off:** *to destroy completely: tiêu diệt sạch.*

Eg: So many deer have been shot that the species has almost been killed off.

Quá nhiều nai đã bị bắn đến nỗi loài này hầu như bị tiêu diệt sạch.

• **knock down:**

- *To cause to fall by striking: đánh ngã, đụng ngã.*

Eg: He was so angry with the man that knocked him down.

Anh ta nổi nóng với gã đàn ông đến nỗi anh ta đánh ngã hắn.

- *To reduce the price: giảm giá.*

Eg: She bought a coat that had been knocked down to half-price.

Cô ta mua một chiếc áo khoác đã được giảm còn nửa giá.

- *To sell at an auction: bán hàng tại cuộc đấu giá.*

Eg: The clock was finally knocked down to a dealer for \$1000.

Cái đồng hồ cuối cùng được bán cho một người lái buôn với giá 1000 đô la.

• **knock over:** *to cause to fall from an upright position: làm đổ, làm ngã.*

Eg: The dog knocked over a chair as it rushed past.

Con chó làm đổ một cái ghế khi nó chạy xộc qua.

• **knock up:**

- *To put together or make hurriedly: làm vội vàng.*

Eg: He knocked it up in two hours.

Anh ta làm vội nó trong 2 giờ.

- *To awaken by knocking: gõ cửa đánh thức.*

Eg: Will he knock up the whole family?

Anh ta sẽ gõ cửa đánh thức cả gia đình chứ?

- *To exhaust or make someone very tired: làm kiệt sức, mệt nhoài.*

Eg: Don't work so hard or you'll knock yourself up!

Đừng làm việc quá nhọc nếu không anh sẽ tự làm mình kiệt sức đấy.

12. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng L

• **lack for:** *not to have enough: thiếu thốn.*

Eg: In any cases, they don't lack for money.

Dù ở tình huống nào họ cũng không thiếu tiền.

- **laught at:** *to regards st or sb as humorous: cười nhạo.*

Eg: Everyone will laugh at me if I wear that dress!

Mọi người sẽ cười nhạo tôi nếu tôi mặc cái váy đó!

- **lay on:** *to provide: cung cấp.*

Eg: The dinner was laid on by the firm.

Bữa tối được công ty cung cấp.

- **lay off:**

- *To dismiss temporarily: tạm cho thôi việc.*

Eg: Because of the shortage of orders, the firm has laid him off last week.

Vì thiếu đơn đặt hàng nên hãng đã cho anh ta tạm nghỉ tuần rồi.

- *To stop doing st: ngưng làm gì.*

Eg: I told him to lay off following me or he's be sorry!

Tôi bảo anh ta ngưng việc theo sau tôi nếu không anh ta sẽ hối hận!

- *To leave alone and not annoy, attack, mention...: để yên không quấy rầy đến, không nói đến.*

Eg: Lay off the subject of money while he's here.

Đừng nói đến vấn đề tiền bạc khi anh ta đang ở đây.

- **lay out:**

- *To arrange over a wide area: bố trí.*

Eg: He was the architect who laid out the public gardens.

Anh ta là kiến trúc sư đã bố trí những vườn hoa công cộng.

- *To spread so as to easily seen: trải rộng ra.*

Eg: He laid out the contents of the box on the table.

Anh ta trải những thứ chứa trong hộp ra bàn.

- *To knock unconscious: đánh bất tỉnh.*

Eg: The branch struck him on the head and laid him out.

Nhánh cây đánh anh ta vào đầu và làm anh ta bất tỉnh.

- *To spend (money): tiêu (tiền).*

Eg: They laid out a lot of money on their daughter's wedding.

Họ tiêu nhiều tiền cho đám cưới của con gái.

- **lead on:**

- *to deceive by causing to have false hopes: lừa gạt.*

Eg: She led us on to believe that we would be paid for our work.

Cô ta lừa chúng tôi tin rằng chúng tôi được trả tiền cho công việc.

- *To go forward first: tiến lên trước.*

Eg: Lead on, then!

Tiến lên trước đi!

- **lean on:**

- *To use as a support: tựa vào.*

Eg: The lame man leaned on a stick.

Người đàn ông què tựa vào chiếc gậy.

- *To use force to persuade sb to do st: thuyết phục nhẹ*

Eg: I'll have to lean on her a bit. I don't think she's working hard enough.

Tôi sẽ phải thuyết phục cô ta một chút. Tôi không nghĩ là cô ta làm việc đủ chăm chỉ.

- **let down:**

- *To lower: hạ thấp xuống, xem nhẹ.*

Eg: She let down the blind.

Cô ta coi thường người mù.

- *To disappoint: làm thất vọng.*

Eg: You must give a film show at the party. You can't let the children down.

Anh phải cho chiếu phim tại buổi tiệc. Anh không thể làm bọn trẻ thất vọng.

- *To make flat by allowing the air to escape: làm xì.*

Eg: When he came back, he found some children had let his car tyres down.

Khi anh ta trở lại, anh ta thấy một số đứa trẻ đã làm xì lốp xe hơi.

- *To make longer: kéo dài.*

Eg: She had to let down the child's skirt.

Cô ta phải nối dài chiếc váy của đứa trẻ.

- **leave out: not to include or put in: bỏ sót.**

Eg: You've left out a word in that sentence.

Bạn đã bỏ sót một từ trong câu đó.

- **lie down: to take a flat or horizontal position: nằm xuống.**

Eg: I've just washed my hair and I can't get it to lie down.

Tôi vừa gội đầu xong và tôi không thể làm cho tóc rũ xuống.

- **light on: to find by chance: tình cờ tìm thấy.**

Eg: While wandering round the town, we lit on a very cheap restaurant.

Trong lúc đang đi lang thang quanh thành phố, chúng tôi tình cờ tìm thấy một nhà hàng rất rẻ.

- **light up:**

- *To begin to give out light: bật sáng.*

Eg: As we watched, the streetlights lit up.

Khi chúng tôi theo dõi thì đèn đường bật sáng.

- *To make, become full of light*: tỏa sáng, chiếu sáng.

Eg: The powerful searchlight lit up the building.

Ngọn đèn pha mạnh chiếu sáng cả tòa nhà.

- *To make or become happy*: tươi lên, làm rạng ngời.

Eg: Her face lit up when she saw him.

Khuôn mặt cô ta ngời sáng khi gặp anh ấy.

• **live on**:

- *To keep oneself alive by eating*: sống bằng.

Eg: He lives on fish and potatoes.

Anh ta sống bằng cá và khoai tây.

- *To be supported (financially) by*: được hỗ trợ tài chính.

Eg: He lives on \$50 a week.

Anh ta được hỗ trợ 50 đô la một tuần.

• **look after**: *to attend to or take care of*: trông nom, chăm sóc.

Eg: She is paid to look after the children.

Cô ta được trả tiền để trông nom bọn trẻ.

• **look down on**: *to think of (st or sb) as being inferior*: coi thường.

Eg: She has always looked down on us for not having a car.

Cô ta luôn coi thường chúng tôi vì không có xe hơi.

• **look for**:

- *To search for*: tìm kiếm.

Eg: She lost her handbag and wasted ten minutes looking for it.

Cô ta mất túi xách và phí mất 10 phút tìm kiếm nó.

- *To expect*: trông đợi.

Eg: He is always looking for praise.

Anh ta luôn trông đợi lời khen.

• **look forward to**: *to wait with pleasure for (st which is going to happen)*: trông ngóng.

Eg: I am looking forward to seeing you.

Tôi mong được gặp bạn.

• **look in on**: *to visit briefly and without invitation*: ghé thăm.

Eg: I decided to look in on Paul on my way home.

Tôi quyết định ghé thăm Paul trên đường về nhà.

• **look into**: *to inspect or investigate closely*: tìm hiểu, điều tra kỹ.

Eg: I shall look into the possibility of buying a house.

Tôi sẽ tìm hiểu kỹ khả năng mua một căn nhà.

- **look out:**

- *To watch: dõi theo.*

Eg: She was looking out for him and saw him long before he saw her.

Cô ta dõi theo anh ấy và nhìn anh thật lâu trước khi anh trông thấy cô.

- *To find by searching or choose: tìm chọn.*

Eg: I've looked out a couple of books I think might be useful to you.

Tôi tìm đôi ba quyển sách mà tôi nghĩ có thể hữu ích cho anh.

- **look up to: to respect: tôn trọng.**

Eg: He has always looked up to his father.

Anh ta luôn tôn trọng cha mình.

- **look up:**

- *To improve or become better: cải thiện.*

Eg: Things have been looking up lately and most of my worries have disappeared.

Gần đây mọi việc đã cải thiện và phần lớn những âu lo của tôi đã biến mất.

- *To pay a visit to (a person): thăm viếng.*

Eg: I hadn't seen them for months so I thought it was time I looked them up.

Tôi đã nhiều tháng không gặp họ nên tôi nghĩ đã đến lúc thăm viếng họ.

- *To search for in a book of reference: tra cứu.*

Eg: You should look the word up in a dictionary.

Bạn nên tra cứu từ đó trong từ điển.

- *To consult (a reference book): tham khảo (sách).*

Eg: I looked up the encyclopedia and it doesn't mention him.

Tôi tham khảo một cuốn bách khoa toàn thư và nó không đề cập đến ông ta.

13. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng M

- **make for:**

- *To go towards: đi đến.*

Eg: We're making for Glasgow, via York.

Chúng tôi đi đến Glasgow, qua York.

- *To have as a result, to cause: gây ra.*

Eg: All these arguments make for bad feeling among the people involved.

Tất cả những tranh cãi này gây ra cảm nghĩ xấu giữa những người dính dáng.

- **make off: to go away, especially hurriedly or secretly: cuốn gói, chuồn mất.**

Eg: They made off in the middle of the night.

Họ chuồn mất vào giữa đêm.

• **make out:**

- *To see, hear or understand: nghe, hiểu hay thấy.*

Eg: Can you make out what he's trying to say?

Bạn có thể hiểu điều anh ta đang nói không?

- *To make it seem (that): làm cho có vẻ là.*

Eg: He made out that he was earning a huge amount of money.

Anh ta làm ra vẻ là anh ta đang kiếm được một món tiền lớn.

- *To write or fill in: viết, điền vào.*

Eg: He made it out yesterday.

Anh ta viết ra nó ngày hôm qua.

- *To manage or succeed: xoay xở được hay thành công.*

Eg: We'll make out, despite all these problems.

Chúng tôi sẽ thành công bất kể những vấn đề này.

• **make up:**

- *To invent: sáng tạo, dựng nên.*

Eg: He made up the whole story. It's all lies.

Anh ta dựng nên toàn bộ câu chuyện. Tất cả là lời dối trá.

- *To put together: gom lại.*

Eg: I'll make up a parcel and send it to you.

Tôi sẽ gom lại thành một kiện hàng và gửi nó cho anh.

- *To compose or be part of: cấu thành, tạo thành.*

Eg: Ten poems make up the entire book.

Mười bài thơ cấu thành đủ quyển sách.

- *to become friends again: hòa giải.*

Eg: They've finally made up their disagreement.

Cuối cùng thì họ cũng hòa giải những bất đồng.

- *To apply cosmetics to the face: trang điểm.*

Eg: I don't like to see women making up in public.

Tôi không thích nhìn phụ nữ trang điểm ở nơi công cộng.

• **make up for: to supply a reward, substitute...: đền bù**

Eg: This will make up for all the occasions when you've lost.

Điều này sẽ đền bù cho tất cả các dịp mà anh đã bỏ lỡ.

• **match up: to be similar in some way: tương hợp.**

Eg: These two pieces of material don't match up very well.

Hai mảnh vải này không tương hợp nhau lắm.

- **move out:** *to leave a house: dời đi.*

Eg: She has to move out before the new tenants arrive.

Cô ta phải dời đi trước khi những người thuê nhà mới đến.

14. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng P

- **pack up:**

- *To put into containers in order to take somewhere else: đóng kiện để đưa đi nơi khác.*

Eg: She spent the weekend packing up the contents of her house.

Cô ta dùng dịp cuối tuần để đóng kiện những thứ trong nhà mình.

- *To stop working or operating: ngừng chạy, thôi hoạt động.*

Eg: We'd only gone 5km when the engine packed up.

Chúng tôi chỉ mới đi 5km khi động cơ ngừng chạy.

- **pass away:** *to die: chết, qua đời.*

Eg: Her grandmother passed away last night.

Bà của cô ấy qua đời tối hôm qua.

- **pass by:**

- *To go past: đi ngang qua.*

Eg: I was passing by when the bride arrived at the church.

Tôi đi ngang qua khi cô dâu đến nhà thờ.

- *To ignore of: bỏ qua, lơ đi.*

Eg: They passed him by when the new jobs were given out.

Họ lơ anh ta khi những công việc mới được phân chia.

- **pass on:**

- *To give to someone else: chuyển lại.*

Eg: I passed on his message to Mrs Brown.

Tôi chuyển lại lời nhắn của anh cho ông Brown.

- *To die: qua đời.*

Eg: I am sorry to tell you that your mother passed on yesterday.

Tôi lấy làm tiếc nói với anh rằng mẹ đã qua đời hôm qua.

- **pass over:** *to ignore or overwork: bỏ qua, không chú ý tới.*

Eg: We'll pass over that remark.

Chúng tôi sẽ bỏ qua nhận xét đó.

- **pass out:**

- *To faint: ngất, bất tỉnh.*

Eg: I feel as though I'm going to pass out.

Tôi cảm thấy như thể tôi sắp ngất.

- *To leave or graduate from a college*: tốt nghiệp.

- *To give to several different people*: phân phát.

Eg: The teacher passed out the books to her class.

Cô giáo phân phát sách cho lớp.

• **pass up**: *not to accept*: khước từ.

Eg: He passed up the offer of a good job in America to come here.

Anh ta khước từ đề nghị về một việc làm tốt ở Mỹ để đến đây.

• **pay back**:

- *to give back to someone st that one has borrowed*: trả lại.

Eg: I'll pay you \$5 back tomorrow.

Tôi sẽ trả lại bạn 5 đô vào ngày mai.

- *To punish, have revenge on*: trả đũa.

Eg: I'll pay you back for that.

Tôi sẽ trả đũa anh điều đó.

• **pay off**:

- *To pay in full and discharge (workers)*: trả hết lương và cho nghỉ việc.

Eg: Hundreds of steel-workers have been paid off.

Hàng trăm công nhân thép đã được trả hết lương rồi cho thôi việc.

- *To have good results*: mang lại kết quả.

Eg: His hard work paid off.

Việc lao động chăm chỉ của anh ta đã mang lại kết quả.

• **pay out**:

- *To spent or give (money)*: trả tiền (hóa đơn, nợ).

Eg: I'm not willing to pay out large sums of money to repair an old car like this.

Tôi không sẵn sàng trả những món tiền lớn cho một chiếc xe hơi cũ như thế này.

- *To cause or allow to become slack*: làm chùng (dây thừng).

• **Pick out**:

- *To choose or select*: chọn ra.

Eg: She picked out one dress that she particularly liked.

Cô ta chọn ra một cái váy mà cô thích vô cùng.

- *To see or recognize (sb, st) in a crowd*: nhận ra, phân biệt ra trong đám đông

Eg: He must be among those people getting of the train, but I can pick him out.

Anh ta chắc hẳn có trong số những người xuống xe lửa đó, nhưng tôi không thể nhận ra anh ta.

- *To play (a piece of music), without music in front of one: chơi nhạc mò (không biết nhạc).*

Eg: I don't really play the piano, but I can pick out a tune on one with one finger.

Tôi không thật sự biết chơi piano, nhưng tôi có thể đánh mò một khúc nhạc bằng một ngón tay.

• **pick up:**

- *To learn gradually, without formal teaching : học nhặt nhạnh, không có sự giảng dạy chính thức.*

Eg: I never studied Italian. I just picked it up when I was in Italy.

Tôi chưa hề học tiếng Ý. Tôi chỉ học nhặt nhạnh khi tôi ở Ý.

- *To let sb into a car, train...to take him somewhere: đón ai.*

Eg: I picked him up at the station and drove him home.

Tôi đón anh ta tại trạm và lái xe trở anh ta về nhà.

- *To get st by chance: vớ được, nhặt được tình cờ.*

Eg: I picked up a real bargain at the shops today.

Tôi vớ được một món thật hời tại cửa hàng ngày hôm nay.

- *To stand up: đứng lên.*

Eg: He fell over and picked himself up again.

Anh ta té ngã và tự đứng lên.

- *To collect st from somewhere: lấy vật gì từ nơi nào đó.*

Eg: I ordered some meat from the butcher. I'll pick it up on my way home.

Tôi đặt một ít thịt của người bán thịt. Tôi sẽ lấy trên đường về nhà.

- *To find, to catch: tìm thấy, bắt.*

Eg: We lost his trail but picked it up again later.

Chúng tôi mất dấu anh ta nhưng sau đó lại tìm thấy.

- *To recover (health): bình phục.*

Eg: He has been very ill, but he's picking up again now.

Anh ta bệnh rất nặng nhưng bây giờ anh đang bình phục trở lại.

• **play down:** *to try to make st appear less important: cố xem nhẹ.*

Eg: He played down the fact that he had failed the exam.

Anh ta cố xem nhẹ sự việc là anh ta đã thi rớt.

• **play on:** *to make use of (someone's feeling, fears...): lợi dụng.*

Eg: He played on my sympathy until I lent him \$50.

Anh ta lợi dụng sự cảm thông của tôi cho đến khi tôi cho anh ta mượn 50 đôla.

• **play up:**

- *To be troublesome or disobedient: không vâng lời, gây phiền phức.*

Eg: The children are playing up today.

Hôm nay bọn trẻ không vâng lời.

- (with "to") to flatter or pretend to admire sb for one's own advantage: xu nịnh.

Eg: He's always playing up to the manager.

Anh ta luôn xu nịnh giám đốc.

• **pile up:** to make or become a pile; to accumulate: chất đống, dồn lại.

Eg: He piled up the earth at the end of the garden.

Anh ta dồn đống đất ở cuối vườn.

• **pitch in:** to (begin to) deal with, do st: bắt tay vào việc.

Eg: If everyone pitches in, we'll soon get the job done.

Nếu mọi người bắt tay vào việc thì chúng ta sẽ sớm làm xong công việc.

• **plead with:** to make an urgent request: van nài, nài nỉ.

Eg: He pled with me not to go.

Anh ta nài nỉ tôi đừng đi.

• **point out:** to indicate or draw attention to: vạch ra, chỉ ra.

Eg: He pointed out his house to her.

Anh ta chỉ căn nhà của mình cho cô ta.

• **prey on:** to attack as prey: săn mồi.

Eg: Hawks prey on smaller birds.

Diều hâu luôn rình những con chim nhỏ hơn.

• **put aside:**

- To abandon (work...) temporarily: tạm gác (công việc..).

Eg: She put aside her needlework.

Cô ta tạm gác việc may vá lại.

- To save or preserve for the future: dành dụm.

Eg: He tried to put aside a little money each month.

Anh ta cố dành dụm ít tiền mỗi tháng.

• **put back:** to return st to its proper place: trả lại.

Eg: Did you put my keys back?

Anh có trả chìa khóa về chỗ cũ không?

• **put down:**

- To lower (one's hand...): hạ xuống.

Eg: The teacher asked the pupil to put his hand down.

Thầy giáo yêu cầu học sinh đó hạ tay xuống.

- To place on the floor or other surface, out of one's hand: bỏ xuống, khỏi tầm tay.

Eg: Put that knife down immediately!

Bỏ con dao xuống ngay lập tức!

- *To humiliate or snub: làm bẽ mặt.*

Eg: She's always putting her husband down.

Cô ta luôn làm bẽ mặt chồng mình.

- *To kill (an animal) painlessly when it is old or very ill: giết, giải thoát.*

Eg: The dog is getting deaf and blind so we had it put down.

Con chó bị điếc và mù do đó chúng tôi giải thoát cho nó.

• **put in:**

- *To insert or install: lắp đặt.*

Eg: We're having a new bath put in.

Chúng tôi đang cho lắp đặt một bồn tắm mới.

- *To do (a certain amount of work.): thực hiện.*

Eg: He put in an hour's piano practice today.

Anh ta thực hiện một giờ tập piano hôm nay.

• **put off:**

- *To switch off (a light...): tắt (đèn....).*

Eg: Please put the light off!

Xin hãy tắt đèn!

- *To delay, to postpone: trì hoãn.*

Eg: He put off his departure till Tuesday.

Anh ta trì hoãn chuyến đi đến thứ Ba.

- *To cancel an arranged meeting with a person: hủy bỏ cuộc hẹn.*

Eg: I had to put the Browns off because I had flu.

Tôi phải hủy bỏ cuộc hẹn với gia đình Brown vì tôi bị cúm.

- *To cause a person to feel disgust or dislike: làm ai khó chịu.*

Ex: The cheese looked nice but the smell put me off.

Phô mai trông ngon nhưng mùi của nó làm tôi khó chịu.

• **put on:**

- *To switch on (a light...): bật (đèn....).*

Eg: Put the light on!

Bật đèn lên!

- *To dress oneself in: mặc vào, mang vào.*

Eg: Which shoes are you going to put on?

Anh ta sắp mang đôi giày nào.

- *To add or increase: tăng thêm.*

Eg: The car put on speed.

Xe hơi tăng tốc độ.

- *To present or produce (a play...): trình diễn (kịch).*

Eg: They're putting on "Hamlet" next week.

Họ sẽ trình diễn "Hamlet" vào tuần tới.

- *To make a false show of, to feign: làm bộ, làm ra vẻ.*

Eg: She said she felt ill, but she was just putting on.

Cô ta nói là cô cảm thấy bệnh nhưng cô ta đang làm bộ.

• **put out:**

- *To extend (a hand): chìa tay ra.*

Eg: He put out his hand to steady her.

Anh ta chìa tay ra để giữ chặt cô ấy.

- *(of plants) to produce (shoots, leaves,...): đâm chồi nảy lộc.*

- *To extinguish (a fire, light): dập tắt (lửa).*

Eg: The fire brigade soon put out the fire.

Đội cứu hỏa sớm dập tắt lửa.

- *To issue: phát ra.*

Eg: They put out a distress call.

Họ phát ra lời kêu gọi thương tâm.

- *To cause bother or trouble to: gây khó dễ, phiền phức.*

Eg: Don't put yourself out for my sake!

Vì tôi anh đừng tự gây phiền phức!

- *To annoy: bực bội.*

Eg: I was put out by his decision.

Tôi bực bội với quyết định của anh ấy.

- *To strain or dislocate (a joint in the body): làm trật (khớp).*

Eg: He put his shoulder out trying to move the piano.

Anh ta làm trật vai khi cố dịch chuyển cây đàn piano.

• **put through**

- *To arrange (a deal, agreement...): thu xếp (một giao dịch, hợp đồng...).*

Eg: Has he managed to put that deal through?

Anh ta đã xoay xò thu xếp xong vụ giao dịch đó chưa?

- *To connect by telephone: nối máy điện thoại.*

Eg: Could you put me through to the manager?

Anh có thể nối máy cho tôi với giám đốc không?

- **put up:**

- *To build, to erect: xây dựng nên.*

Eg: They're putting up some new houses.

Họ đang xây lên một số nhà mới.

- *To raise (a hand): giơ tay lên.*

- *To fix (a notice...) on a wall: dán thông báo lên tường.*

Eg: He put the poster up.

Anh ta dán áp phích lên.

- *To increase (a price...): tăng giá.*

Eg: They're putting up the fees again.

Họ sắp sửa tăng học phí nữa.

- *To offer or show (resistance...): thể hiện (sự kháng cự...).*

Eg: He's putting up a brave fight.

Anh ta thể hiện một cuộc chiến đấu dũng cảm.

- *To provide (money) for a purpose: cung cấp(tiền) cho một mục đích.*

Eg: He promised to put up the money for the scheme.

Anh ta hứa cung cấp tiền cho kế hoạch.

- *To provide a bed...for (a person) in one's home: cho trọ lại.*

Eg: Can you put us up next Thursday night?

Anh có thể cho chúng tôi trọ lại tối thứ Năm tới không?

- **put up with: to bear patiently; to tolerate: chịu đựng.**

Eg: I cannot put up with all this noise.

Tôi không thể chịu đựng nổi tất cả sự ồn ào này.

- **puzzle over/about: to think long and carefully about or try to solve...: bối rối, khó xử.**

Eg: I puzzled over the letter for hours.

Tôi bối rối về bức thư suốt nhiều giờ.

15. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng Q

- **quarrel with: to disagree with st: bất đồng với.**

Eg: I wouldn't quarrel with your analysis of the situation.

Tôi không bất đồng với cách phân tích tình hình của anh.

- **queue up: to form, or stand in, a queue: xếp thành hàng.**

Eg: People are queuing up for tickets for the concert.

Người ta đang xếp hàng mua vé buổi hòa nhạc.

16. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng R

- **read on:** *to continue to read; to read further: đọc tiếp.*

Eg: He paused for a few moments, and then read on.

Anh ta tạm dừng chốc lát và đọc tiếp.

- **read out:** *to read st aloud: đọc to*

Eg: Read out the answers to the questions.

Đọc to lời đáp cho câu hỏi này.

- **reckon on:** *to depend on or expect: trông đợi vào.*

Eg: I was reckoning on meeting him tonight.

Tôi đang trông đợi vào cuộc gặp gỡ anh ta tối nay.

- **rely on:**

- *To depend on or need : dựa vào, cậy vào.*

Eg: The people on the island relied on the supplies that were brought from the mainland.

Những người trên đảo dựa vào nguồn cung cấp được mang từ đất liền.

- *To trust sb to do st: tin tưởng.*

Eg: We can't rely on him coming in time.

Chúng tôi không thể tin anh sẽ đến kịp giờ.

- **rent out:** *to allow sb to use a house in exchange for money: cho thuê.*

Eg: I own a cottage in the country which I rent out to tourists.

Tôi làm chủ một nhà riêng ở miền quê mà tôi cho khách du lịch thuê.

- **ring off:** *to end a telephone call: cúp máy.*

Eg: She said "No, thank you" and rang off hurriedly.

Cô ấy nói "Không, cảm ơn" và cúp máy vội vã.

- **ring out:** *to make a loud clear sound: vang lên.*

Eg: A shot rang out.

Một phát súng vang lên.

- **round on:** *to attack (usually in words); to turn on: vặn lại.*

Eg: He rounded on her, demanding to know where she had been.

Anh ta vặn lại cô ấy, đòi biết cô ta đã ở đâu.

- **round up:** *to collect together: gom lại, dồn lại.*

Eg: The farmer rounded up the sheep.

Người nông dân dồn cừ lại.

- **run across:** *to meet: gặp tình cờ.*

Eg: I ran across an old friend.

Tôi tình cờ gặp một người bạn cũ.

- **run away:**

- *To escape: thoát khỏi, trốn thoát.*

Eg: He ran away from prison.

Anh ta trốn khỏi nhà tù.

- *To steal: đánh cắp.*

Eg: He ran away with all her money.

Anh ta đánh cắp tiền của cô ta.

- *To go too fast to be controlled: vượt khỏi tầm kiểm soát.*

Eg: The horse ran away with him.

Con ngựa lồng lên với anh ta.

- **run down:**

- *(of a clock, battery ...) to finish working: (đồng hồ, pin...) chết, hết.*

Eg: My watch has run down. It needs rewinding.

Đồng hồ của tôi đã chết. Nó cần được lên dây lại.

- *(of a vehicle or driver) to knock down: đụng xe.*

Eg: He ran down a pedestrian.

Anh ta đụng ngã khách bộ hành.

- *To speak badly of: bôi nhọ, gièm pha.*

Eg: He is always running me down.

Anh ra luôn bôi nhọ tôi.

- **run in:**

- *To get (a new engine) working properly: (động cơ) chạy tốt.*

Eg: The car is still running in.

Chiếc xe hơi vẫn chạy tốt.

- *To arrest: bắt giữ.*

Eg: The policeman ran him in for dangerous driving

Cảnh sát bắt giữ anh ta vì lái xe ẩu.

- **run into:**

- *To meet by chance: tình cờ gặp.*

Eg: I ran into her in the street.

Tôi tình cờ gặp cô ta trên đường.

- *To crash into or collide with: đụng vào.*

Eg: The car ran into a lamp-post.

Chiếc xe hơi đụng vào cột đèn.

- **run out:**

- *(of a supply) to come to an end; to finish: cạn kiệt.*

Eg: The food has run out.

Thực phẩm đã cạn hết.

- (with "of") to have no more: hết, không còn nữa.

Eg: We've run out of money.

Chúng ta đã hết tiền.

- To leave or abandon sb: rời bỏ ai.

Eg: His wife ran out him.

Vợ anh ta đã bỏ anh ta.

• **run up:**

- To hoist (a flag): kéo cờ lên.

Eg: They ran up the school flag.

Họ kéo cờ của trường lên.

- To make quickly or roughly: làm vội, làm dôi.

Eg: I can run up a dress in a couple of hours.

Tôi có thể làm dôi một chiếc váy trong vài giờ.

- To make (money) increase; to accumulate: chất đống (tiền).

Eg: He ran up an enormous bill.

Anh ta dồn đống thành một hóa đơn khổng lồ.

17. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng S

• **save on:** to stop or prevent the wasting of st: tiết kiệm.

Eg: Cooking all the vegetable in one pit would save on gas.

Nấu tất cả rau trong một cái nồi sẽ tiết kiệm ga.

• **save up:** to save: dành dụm.

Eg: He's been saving up for a new bike.

Anh ta đang dành dụm mua một chiếc xe đạp mới.

• **see about:** to attend to or deal with: lo liệu, đảm đương.

Eg: Will you see about putting the children to bed?

Bạn sẽ lo liệu việc đưa mấy đứa trẻ đi ngủ chứ?

• **see off:**

- To accompany sb to the airport, railway station...: tiễn ai.

Eg: He saw me off at the station.

Anh ta tiễn tôi tại sân bay.

- To chase away: rượt đuổi chạy khỏi.

Eg: There were some children stealing my apples but my dog soon saw them off.

Có một số đứa trẻ trộm táo của tôi nhưng con chó sớm rượt đuổi chúng.

• **see through:** to give support to (a person, plan...) until the end is reached: hỗ trợ.

Eg: She had a lot of difficulties, but her family saw her through.

Cô ta gặp rất nhiều khó khăn nhưng gia đình cô ta hỗ trợ đến cùng.

- **see to:** *to attend to, to deal with:* chăm sóc, lo liệu.
Eg: I must see to the baby.
Tôi phải chăm sóc đứa bé.
- **sell off:** *to sell quickly and cheaply:* bán tổng bán tháo.
Eg: They are selling off their old stock.
Họ đang bán tổng bán tháo hàng cũ trong kho.
- **sell out:**
 - *To sell all of one's stock or supply of st:* bán hết sạch.
Eg: We have sold out our entire stock.
Chúng tôi đã bán hết toàn bộ kho.
 - *To be all sold:* được bán hết sạch.
Eg: The second-hand records sold out within minutes of the sale starting.
Những đĩa hát dùng rồi i được bán hết sạch trong vòng vài phút bắt đầu bán.
 - *(usually with "to") to join or assist (an enemy):* bán rẻ, phản bội
Eg: The newspaper published evidence that an important politician had sold out to the enemy.
Tờ báo công bố bằng chứng một chính khách quan trọng đã bán rẻ cho kẻ thù.
- **Send for:** *to ask sb to come, or order (goods) to be delivered:* nhắn ai đến, đặt mua.
Eg: She was very ill and her son was sent for.
Bà ta bệnh rất nặng và con bà được nhắn đến.
I've sent for some meat from the butcher's.
Tôi đặt mua một ít thịt ở hàng thịt.
- **send off:**
 - *To dispatch (by post):* gửi đi qua bưu điện.
Eg: Have you sent off that letter yet?
Bạn đã gửi bức thư đó đi chưa?
 - *To accompany sb to a place:* tiễn đưa.
Eg: A great crowd gathered at the station to send the football team off.
Một đám đông tụ tập tại nhà ga để tiễn đội bóng đó.
- **set aside:**
 - *To keep st for a special use or purpose:* giữ riêng ra.
Eg: He set aside some cash for use at the weekend.
Anh ta giữ riêng ra một số tiền để dùng vào cuối tuần.
 - *To reject:* bác bỏ
Eg: I warned them not to do it, but my objections were set aside.
Tôi cảnh cáo họ đừng thực hiện nó, nhưng những chống đối của tôi bị bác bỏ.

• **set back:**

- *To delay the progress of: làm chậm tiến trình.*

Eg: His illness set him back a bit at school.

Căn bệnh của anh ta làm chậm việc học ở trường một ít.

- *To cause a person a lot of expense: làm tốn kém.*

Eg: The new carpet must have set you back a few hundred dollars.

Tấm thảm mới làm anh ta tốn thêm vài trăm đô la.

- *(sometimes with "from") to put st at a slight distance from st: đặt cách xa.*

Eg: The house was set back from the road and partly hidden by trees.

Căn nhà được xây hơi xa con đường và bị cây cối che phủ một phần.

• **set down:**

- *(of a bus....) to stop and let (passengers) out: cho hành khách xuống.*

Eg: The bus set us down beside the post office.

Xe buýt cho chúng tôi xuống bên ngoài bưu điện.

- *To write: viết ra*

Eg: He tried to write his essay but found it difficult to set his thoughts down.

Anh ta cố gắng làm bài luận nhưng anh ta thấy khó viết ra những suy nghĩ của mình.

• **set off:**

- *(sometimes with "on") to start a journey: khởi hành.*

Eg: We set off to go to the beach.

Chúng tôi khởi hành đến bãi biển.

- *To cause to start doing st: làm cho bắt đầu.*

Eg: She had almost stopped crying, but his harsh words set her off again.

Cô ta hầu như nín khóc, nhưng những lời nói tàn nhẫn của anh ta lại làm cô ta khóc.

- *To make st : làm cái gì (đẹp hơn).*

Eg: The frame sets off the picture well.

Cái khung làm cho bức tranh đẹp thêm.

- *To explode (bombs...) or ignite (fireworks....): châm ngòi pháo hoa.*

Eg: You should let your father set off all the fireworks.

Anh nên để cho cha mình châm pháo hoa.

• **set out:**

- *To start a journey: khởi hành.*

Eg: He set out to explore the countryside.

Anh ta khởi hành khám phá miền quê.

- *To intend: dự định.*

Eg: I didn't set out to prove him wrong.

Tôi không có ý định chứng tỏ anh ta sai.

- *To exhibit, display or explain: trưng bày, giải thích.*

Eg: The goods are set out in the shop window.

Hàng hóa được trưng bày trong tủ kính cửa hàng.

• **set up:**

- *To establish: thành lập, tổ chức.*

Eg: When was the organization set up?

Khi nào tổ chức được tổ chức?

- *To start working in a business: gây dựng.*

Eg: He set himself up as a bookseller.

Anh ta tự gây dựng thành một người bán sách.

- *To arrange or construct: bố trí, xây dựng.*

Eg: He set up the apparatus for the experiment.

Anh ta bố trí thiết bị cho thí nghiệm.

- *To improve the health or spirits of (a person): cải thiện sức khỏe hay tinh thần.*

Eg: The holiday has really set us up again.

Ngày nghỉ đã thật sự cải thiện sức khỏe của chúng tôi.

• **show up:**

- *To make (faults...) obvious: làm lộ ra.*

Eg: This kind of light really shows up the places where I've mended this coat.

Loại đèn này thật sự làm lộ ra những chỗ tôi đã vá chiếc áo khoác này lại.

- *To stand out clearly: hiện rõ,*

Eg: The scratches showed up badly on the photograph.

Những vết xước hiện rõ trên bức ảnh.

- *To appear or arrive: xuất hiện, đến.*

Eg: I waited for hours, but she never showed up.

Tôi đã chờ nhiều giờ nhưng cô ta không hề xuất hiện.

• **speak for: to give an opinion on behalf of sb: nói thay ai.**

Eg: I myself don't have any objections to your suggestions, but I can't speak for Liz.

Tự tôi không có sự phản đối nào về đề xuất của anh, nhưng tôi không thể nói thay cho Liz.

• **speak out: to say boldly what one thinks: nói toạc ra.**

Eg: I don't like to make a fuss, but I feel the time has come to speak out.

Tôi không thích gây âm ỉ nhưng tôi cảm thấy đã đến thời điểm nói toạc ra.

- **speak up:** *to speak loudly*: nói lớn lên.

Eg: Speak up! I can't hear you!

Nói to lên! Tôi không thể nghe được!

- **speed up:**

- *to increase speed*: tăng tốc.

Eg: The car speeded up as it left the town

Chiếc xe hơi tăng tốc khi nó rời thành phố.

- *To quicken the rate of*: tăng nhanh, gia tăng.

Eg: We are trying to speed up production.

Chúng tôi đang cố gắng gia tăng sản xuất.

- **spread out:**

- *To extend or stretch out*: trải rộng.

Eg: The fields spread out in front of him.

Các cánh đồng trải rộng ra phía trước anh ta.

- *To distribute over a wide area or period of time*: kéo dài thời gian, trải trên vùng rộng.

Eg: She spread the leaflets out on the table.

Cô ta trải những tờ quảng cáo trên bàn.

- *To scatter and go in different directions*: tủa đi nhiều hướng.

Eg: They spread out when they entered the field and began to search the ground.

Họ tủa đi khi vào đến cánh đồng và bắt đầu tìm kiếm khu đất.

- **stand by:**

- *To watch (st happening) without doing anything*: đứng yên nhìn.

Eg: I couldn't just stand by while he was hitting the child.

Tôi không thể chỉ đứng yên nhìn anh ta đánh đứa trẻ.

- *To be ready to act*: sẵn sàng hành động.

Eg: The police are standing by in case of trouble.

Cảnh sát đang sẵn sàng hành động nếu có rắc rối.

- *To support or maintain*: ủng hộ, bênh vực.

Eg: She stood by him throughout his trial.

Cô ta ủng hộ anh ta suốt vụ án.

- **stand down:** *to withdraw (from a contest)*: rút khỏi (cuộc thi).

Eg: Two of the candidates have stood down.

Hai ứng viên đã rút khỏi.

- **stand for:**

- *To be a candidate for election*: ra ứng cử.

Eg: He stood for Parliament.

Anh ta ra ứng cử quốc hội.

- *To be an abbreviation for*: viết tắt cho.

Eg: HQ stands for Headquarters.

HQ là viết tắt cho Tổng hành dinh.

- *To represent*: đại diện.

Eg: I hate commercialism and all it stands for.

Tôi chán óc thương mại và tất cả thứ nó đại diện.

- *To tolerate*: tha thứ.

Eg: I won't stand for her rudeness.

Tôi sẽ không tha thứ sự thô lỗ của cô ta.

• **stand in for**: *to take another person's place, job... for a time*: thế chỗ ai.

Eg: Could you stand in for me as chairman of the meeting?

Bạn có thể thế chỗ tôi làm chủ tịch cuộc họp không?

• **stand out**:

- *To be noticeable because exceptional*: nổi bật.

Eg: They were all pretty, but she stood out among them.

Tất cả họ đều xinh đẹp nhưng cô ta lại nổi bật trong số họ.

- *To go on resisting or to refuse to yield*: kiên cường kháng cự, từ chối đầu hàng.

Eg: The garrison stood out as long as possible.

Đơn vị đồn trú kháng cự càng lâu càng tốt.

• **start up**: *to begin or begin working*: khởi động.

Eg: The machine suddenly started up.

Máy đột nhiên khởi động.

• **stay up**: *not to go to bed*: thức

Eg: The children wanted to stay up and watch TV.

Bọn trẻ muốn thức và xem TV.

• **switch on, off**: *to put or turn on/off (an electric current/light...)*: tắt, bật.

Eg: He switched on the light.

Anh ta bật đèn.

18. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng T

• **take after**: *to be like in appearance or character*: giống.

Eg: She takes after her father.

Cô ta giống cha mình.

• **take back**:

- *To make sb remember or think about st*: gợi nhớ.

Eg: Meeting my old friends took me back to my childhood.

Gặp lại bạn cũ gợi tôi nhớ lại thời ấu thơ.

- *To admit that what has been said is not true; to retract: rút lại (ý kiến).*

Eg: Take back what you said about my sister!

Rút lại điều anh đã nói về em gái tôi!

• **take in:**

- *To include: bao gồm.*

Eg: Greater London takes in the country of Middlesex.

Greater London bao gồm Middlesex.

- *To give sb shelter: cho ai tá túc.*

Eg: He had nowhere to go, so I took him in.

Anh ta không biết đi đâu nên tôi cho anh ta tá túc.

- *To understand and remember: hiểu và nhớ.*

Eg: I didn't take in what he said.

Tôi không hiểu và nhớ những gì anh ta nói

- *To make (clothes) smaller: thu nhỏ (quần áo).*

Eg: I lost weight, so I had to take all my clothes in.

Tôi sụt cân nhiều do đó tôi phải thu nhỏ tất cả quần áo của mình.

- *To deceive or cheat: lừa gạt.*

Eg: He took me in with his story.

Anh ta lừa gạt tôi bằng câu chuyện của mình.

• **take off:**

- *To remove(clothes...): cởi ra, tháo ra.*

Eg: He took off his coat.

Anh ta cởi áo khoác.

- *(of a aircraft) to leave the ground: máy bay cất cánh*

Eg: The plane took off for Rome.

Máy bay cất cánh bay đến Rome.

- *Not to work during (a period of time): nghỉ làm một thời gian.*

Eg: I'm taking tomorroee morning off.

Tôi sẽ nghỉ buổi sáng mai.

- *To imitate sb (often unkindly): nhại giễu.*

Eg: He used to take off his teacher to make his friends laugh.

Anh ta thường nhại thầy giáo để làm bạn bè cười.

• **take on:**

- *To agree to do; to undertake: đảm nhận.*

Eg: He took on the job.

Anh ta đảm nhận công việc.

- *To begin to employ: thu nhận(vào làm).*

Eg: They are taking on eighty more men at the factory.

Họ đang nhận vào 80 người nữa tại nhà máy.

- *(with "at") to challenge sb to a game: thách đấu với ai.*

Eg: I'll take you on at tennis.

Tôi sẽ thách đấu chơi quần vợt với anh.

- *To get; to assume: nhận được.*

Eg: When we learnt all about the poet, we took on a new lesson.

Khi chúng tôi học xong tất cả bài thơ đó, chúng tôi nhận được một bài học mới.

- *to allow (passengers) to get on or in: đón hành khách lên xe.*

Eg: The bus only stops here to take on passengers.

Xe buýt chỉ dừng tại đây để đón thêm khách.

- *To be upset: giận dữ.*

Eg: Don't take on so!

Đừng có giận dữ như vậy!

• **take over:**

- *To take control of: tiếp quản.*

Eg: He has taken the business over.

Anh ta đã tiếp quản công việc kinh doanh.

- *(often with "from") to do st after sb stops doing it: tiếp tục (làm thay ai).*

Eg: He drove as far as Paris, then I took over from him.

Anh ra lái xe đến Paris, sau đó tôi tiếp tục nhận tay lái từ anh ta.

• **take up:**

- *To use or occupy (space, time...): chiếm (chỗ, thời gian).*

Eg: I won't take up much of your time

Tôi sẽ không chiếm nhiều thời gian của anh đâu.

- *To begin doing, playing: bắt đầu chơi.*

Eg: He has taken up teaching.

Anh ta bắt đầu việc dạy.

- *To shorten (clothes): thu ngắn (quần áo).*

Eg: My skirts were too long, so I had them taken up.

Những chiếc váy của tôi dài quá nên tôi nhờ thu ngắn chúng lại.

- *To lift or raise; to pick up: nhặt lên.*

Eg: He took up the book.

Anh ta nhặt quyển sách lên.

- **take up with:** *to become friendly with: kết thân với.*

Eg: She has taken up with some strange people.

Cô ta kết thân với một số người lạ.

- **think of:**

- *To remember ; to keep in one's mind: nghĩ đến, ghi nhớ.*

Eg: He has a lot of things to think of before he leaves.

Anh ta có rất nhiều việc để nhớ trước khi rời đi.

- *To be willing to do: sẵn lòng làm gì.*

Eg: I would never think of being rude to her.

Tôi không bao giờ sẵn lòng thô lỗ với cô ta.

- *To have a particular idea; to suggest: có ý tưởng hay.*

Eg: That's a brilliant idea. I wonder why no-one thought of it before.

Đó là một ý tưởng hay. Tôi ngạc nhiên tại sao không ai có thể nghĩ ra ý tưởng này trước đó.

- **think up:** *to invent; to devise: sáng tạo ra.*

Eg: He thought up a new process.

Anh ta sáng tạo ra một quy trình mới.

- **throw away:**

- *To get rid of: vứt bỏ*

Eg: He always throws away his old clothes.

Anh ta luôn vứt bỏ quần áo cũ.

- *To lose through lack of care, concern...: bỏ phí.*

Eg: Don't throw your chance of promotion away by being careless.

Đừng bỏ phí cơ hội thăng chức của bạn do sự bất cẩn.

- **throw off:**

- *To get rid of: dứt bỏ.*

Eg: She finally managed to throw off her cold.

Cô ta cuối cùng cũng đã dứt bỏ được bệnh cảm lạnh.

- *To take off very quickly: cời đồ vội.*

Eg: He threw off his coat and sat down.

Anh ta cời vội áo khoác và ngồi xuống.

- **throw out:**

- *To get rid of by throwing or by force: ném đi, đuổi ra.*

Eg: He was thrown out of the meeting.

Anh ta bị đuổi ra khỏi buổi họp.

- *To say st casually or as an offer: văng ra.*

Eg: He threw out a remark.

Anh ta văng ra một nhận xét.

- *To cause to become inaccurate: làm sai lệch.*

Eg: This new factor has thrown out all my previous calculations.

Yếu tố mới này làm sai lệch tất cả những tính toán trước đây của tôi.

- *To cause to stick out: chìa ra.*

Eg: He threw out his chest and sang.

Anh ta uốn ngực ra và hát.

• **throw up:**

- *To vomit: ói.*

Eg: She had too much to eat and threw up on the way home.

Cô ta ăn quá nhiều và ói trên đường về nhà.

- *To give up, to abandon: từ bỏ.*

Eg: He threw up his job.

Anh ta từ bỏ công việc.

- *To build hurriedly: xây dựng vội.*

Eg: They threw up a temporary building.

Họ dựng vội một toàn nhà tạm bợ.

• **total up: to add up: tổng cộng.**

Eg: He totaled up the amount he had sold at the end of the week.

Anh ta tổng cộng số tiền anh ta đã bán vào cuối tuần.

• **try on: To put on (clothes...) to see if they fit: mặc thử (quần áo).**

Eg: She tried on a new hat.

Cô ta thử chiếc mũ mới.

• **try out: to test st by using it: dùng thử.**

Eg: He tried out the bicycle.

Anh ta chạy thử chiếc xe đạp.

• **turn away: to move or send away: quay đi, đuổi đi.**

Eg: He turn away in disgust.

Anh ta bực tức quay đi.

• **turn back: to go back in the opposite direction: quay lại, làm trở lại.**

Eg: He got tired and turned back.

Anh ta mệt và quay trở lại.

• **turn off:**

- To cause (water, electricity....) to stop flowing: tắt (điện, nước).

Eg: I've turned off the water/the gas.

Tôi tắt nước/ga.

- To cause st to stop working by switching it off: tắt (công tắc, vòi...).

Eg: He turned off the oven.

Tôi vặn tắt vòi nước.

- To create feelings of dislike, repulsion, disgust...in sb: gây khó chịu.

Eg: People with loud voices turn me off.

Những người có giọng nói to làm tôi khó chịu.

• **turn on:**

- To start the operation or flow of something (water, electricity...): mở (điện, nước).

Eg: I've turned on the water.

Tôi vừa mở nước.

- To cause st to work by switching it on: mở (công tắc, vòi...).

Eg: He turned on the radio.

Anh ta bật đài.

- To create feeling of excitement, pleasure...in sb: làm hưng phấn.

Eg: Music really turns me on.

Âm nhạc thực sự làm tôi hưng phấn.

- To attack: tấn công.

Eg: The dog turned on him.

Con chó tấn công anh ta.

• **turn out:**

- To send away; to make sb leave: đuổi đi.

Eg: His parents threatened to turn him out if he got into trouble with the police.

Bố mẹ anh ta dọa đuổi anh ta đi nếu anh ta còn có chuyện phiền phức với cảnh sát.

- To make or produce: sản xuất, làm ra.

Eg: The factory turns out 10 finished articles an hour.

Nhà máy sản xuất ra 10 món hàng trong một giờ.

- To empty or clear: dọn sạch.

Eg: I turned out the cupboard.

Tôi dọn sạch tủ bát.

- To happen or prove to be: hóa ra là.

Eg: It turned out that he was right.

Hóa ra là anh ta đúng.

- **turn over:**

- *to think about: cân nhắc.*

Eg: She turned it over in her mind.

Cô ta cân nhắc nó trong đầu.

- *(often with "to") to give st up to: giao nộp.*

Eg: He turned the money over to the police.

Anh ta nộp tiền cho cảnh sát.

- **turn up:**

- *To appear or arrive: đến, xuất hiện.*

Eg: He turned up at our house.

Anh ta xuất hiện ở nhà chúng tôi.

- *To be found: được tìm thấy.*

Eg: Don't worry! It'll turn up again.

Đừng lo lắng! Nó sẽ được tìm thấy thôi.

- *To increase (the level of noise, light...): tăng (âm lượng, ánh sáng).*

Eg: Turn up the volume on the radio.

Tăng âm thanh của radio.

- *To fold up and sew: khâu lại.*

Eg: To turn up a hem.

Khâu lại một đường viền.

- *To discover : khám phá(sự thật).*

Eg: The police have apparently turned up some new evidence.

Cảnh sát hiển nhiên đã khám phá ra bằng chứng mới nào đó.

19. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng U

- **urge on:** *to drive or try to persuade (a person) to go on or forwards: thúc giục.*

Eg: He tried to urge the donkey on.

Anh ta thúc con lừa đi tiếp.

20. Cụm động từ bắt đầu bằng W

- **wake up:**

- *To wake: thức giấc*

Eg: I have to leave early in the morning and I'm afraid that I won't wake up in time.

Tôi phải đi sớm vào buổi sáng nên tôi e rằng tôi sẽ không thức giấc kịp giờ.

- *(often with "to") become aware of: tỉnh ngộ.*

Eg: It's time you woke up to the fact that your wife is being unfaithful.

Đến lúc anh phải tỉnh ngộ trước sự thật là vợ anh không chung thủy.

- **walk away with:** *to win (a prize) easily: thắng dễ dàng.*
 Eg: Of course you'll win. You'll walk away with all the prizes.
 Dĩ nhiên anh sẽ thắng. Anh sẽ đoạt tất cả các giải dễ dàng.
- **warm up:** *to make or become moderately warm: làm ấm lên.*
 Eg: Your feet will soon warm up once you get indoors.
 Đôi bàn chân của anh sẽ sớm ấm lên khi anh đi vào nhà.
- **watch out:** *to be careful of- coi chừng.*
 Eg: Watch out! The police is coming.
 Coi chừng! Cảnh sát đang đến!
- **weigh up:** *to calculate or assess: cân nhắc, đắn đo.*
 Eg: He weighed up his chance of success.
 Anh ta cân nhắc cơ hội thành công.
- **wipe out:**
 - *To clean the inside of st with a cloth: lau sạch.*
 Eg: Could you wipe out the washhand basin?
 Anh có thể lau sạch bồn rửa tay không?
 - *To remove; to get rid of: loại bỏ, xóa sạch.*
 Eg: You must try to wipe out the memory of these terrible events.
 Anh phải cố xóa sạch ký ức của những sự kiện kinh khủng này.
 - *To destroyed completely: tàn sát toàn bộ.*
 Eg: They wiped out the whole regiment in one battle.
 Họ tàn sát toàn bộ trung đoàn trong cuộc giao chiến.
- **work out:**
 - *To solve or calculate correctly: tính toán ra hay giải ra.*
 Eg: I can't work out how many should be left.
 Tôi không thể tính ra nên để lại bao nhiêu.
 - *To cause to happen successfully: diễn ra thành công.*
 Eg: Don't worry! It will all work out in the end.
 Đừng lo! Tất cả cuối cùng cũng sẽ diễn ra thành công.
- **write down:** *to record in writing: viết ra.*
 Eg: She wrote down every word he said.
 Cô ta viết ra mọi lời anh ta nói.

B - LUYỆN TẬP**LUYỆN TẬP 1: (ID: ET1109)**

Câu 1 [ID: 291906] Children depend _____ adults for food and shelter.

- A. in B. on C. of D. to

Câu 2 [ID: 291907] I don't know why John insists on blaming all his troubles _____ me.

- A. for B. on C. in D. of

Câu 3 [ID: 291908] I accused him _____ stealing my scooter.

- A. of B. on C. about D. for

Câu 4 [ID: 291909] I think the treasurer strongly approves _____ our new system.

- A. with B. by C. for D. of

Câu 5 [ID: 291910] Can you account _____ all the money you've spent since you arrived?

- A. of B. with C. for D. on

Câu 6 [ID: 291911] Since it's important, would you attend _____ that matter right away?

- A. of B. with C. to D. for

Câu 7 [ID: 291912] Beware _____ pickpockets!

- A. of B. with C. about D. for

Câu 8 [ID: 291913] If you don't see what you want in our window, ask _____ it.

- A. about B. to C. for D. with

Câu 9 [ID: 291914] I believed _____ what he said.

- A. in B. at C. on D. of

Câu 10 [ID: 291916] The car finally broke _____ after it had run for 10 years.

- A. in B. up C. down D. into

Câu 11 [ID: 291917] I don't care _____ whether he approves or disapproves

- A. about B. with C. of D. for

Câu 12 [ID: 291918] The mud adhered _____ my shoes.

- A. for B. with C. to D. in

Câu 13 [ID: 291920] The government has just _____ a new law making it illegal for shops to sell cigarettes to children under sixteen.

- A. brought in B. brought back
C. brought on D. brought out

Câu 14 [ID: 291921] How did the robbers manage to _____ without anyone seeing them?

- A. break off B. break up C. break away D. break into

Câu 15 [ID: 291923] A sip of brandy will _____ him _____.

- A. bring ..up B. bring ..around C. bring ..round D. bring ..on

Câu 16 [ID: 291924] We shall have to _____ this matter _____ at the next meeting.

- A. bring ...up B. break...up C. bring...in D. break...in

Câu 17 [ID: 291925] They have carried _____ four first prizes.

- A. on B. off C. out D. with

Câu 18 [ID: 291926] My family is the most important thing in my life. I won't let my work _____ me and my family.

- A. come back B. come round
C. come over D. come between

Câu 19 [ID: 291928] The real problem is how we are going to dispose _____ the waste.

- A. of B. to C. with D. on

Câu 20 [ID: 291930] They should _____ with these silly regulations.

- A. come up B. do away C. break D. come

Câu 21 [ID: 291931] The final questions went on and on and _____ out the meeting for another hour.

- A. broke B. drew C. died D. brought

Câu 22 [ID: 291932] I used to be a member of the tennis club but I never found the time to play so I _____ out after a while.

- A. dropped B. brought C. broke D. drew

Câu 23 [ID: 291934] We decided to _____ from the main party and form a new party of our own called the "Lunatic Party".

- A. break off B. break out
C. break into D. break away

Câu 24 [ID: 291935] I hope I can _____ Tom from leaving.

- A. dispose B. distinguish
C. discourage D. discriminate

Câu 25 [ID: 291937] A new magazine has just _____ out.

- A. come B. broken C. died D. dropped

Câu 26 [ID: 291938] I love to dress _____ for a party.

- A. out B. in C. up D. on

Câu 27 [ID: 291939] Please dream _____ a solution for this problem.

- A. in B. on C. with D. up

Câu 28 [ID: 291941] I will see if I can dash _____ a cherry pie before dinner.

- A. off B. with C. out D. through

Câu 29 [ID: 291942] You will have to _____ on the time it takes you to get ready in the morning.

- A. depend B. believe C. cut down D. come

- Câu 30 [ID: 291943] When Bill was sick, Ann tried to cheer him _____ by reading to him.
A. up B. down C. back D. in
- Câu 31 [ID: 291946] Tom was slow to catch _____, but gradually he began to understand.
A. in B. on C. away D. out
- Câu 32 [ID: 291947] Come _____, children! Get your coats on or you'll be late for school.
A. over B. to C. across D. along
- Câu 33 [ID: 291948] Please come _____ and see us some time. You're always welcome.
A. across B. round C. about D. between
- Câu 34 [ID: 291949] He filled in the necessary forms and _____ for the job.
A. appeal B. asked C. requested D. applied
- Câu 35 [ID: 291950] They had never come _____ such a beautiful little village before.
A. at B. across C. off D. long
- Câu 36 [ID: 291951] When the tenants failed to pay their bills, the authorities decided to cut _____ the gas supply to the flats.
A. out B. down C. off D. across
- Câu 37 [ID: 291952] He _____ all his money, then closed the account.
A. drew back B. drew out C. brought out D. brought in
- Câu 38 [ID: 291953] At the meeting, someone brought _____ the subject of pre-school education.
A. in B. on C. up D. out
- Câu 39 [ID: 291954] In their latest attack, terrorists have attempted to blow _____ the bridge.
A. up B. over C. through D. down
- Câu 40 [ID: 291955] There are many conservation efforts have been carried _____ to save endangered species.
A. out B. for C. with D. out
- Câu 41 [ID: 291956] The Second World War _____ in 1939.
A. brought about B. drew up C. broke out D. came out
- Câu 42 [ID: 291957] We'll call _____ you at 5 o'clock.
A. out B. up C. for D. down
- Câu 43 [ID: 291958] These flowers only come _____ at night.
A. out B. in C. on D. along
- Câu 44 [ID: 291959] There was a fire, and the old factory was burned _____.
A. into B. down C. off D. to
- Câu 45 [ID: 291960] He dropped _____ the hospital to visit his aunt.
A. with B. out C. by D. off

Câu 46 [ID: 291961] The student crossed _____ so many words that the essay was difficult to read.

- A. in B. out C. off D. in

Câu 47 [ID: 291962] How did this situation come _____?

- A. in B. back C. about D. with

Câu 48 [ID: 291963] She's incredibly creative. She's always coming _____ excellent ideas.

- A. up with B. down to C. round D. from

Câu 49 [ID: 291964] He broke _____ a run fast and we just couldn't catch _____ him.

- A. into-on B. in-on
C. in-up with D. into-up with

Câu 50 [ID: 291965] I do wish you wouldn't _____ in, Charles. I'm trying to talk to your father.

- A. butt B. come C. believe D. call

ĐÁP ÁN

1. B	2. B	3. A	4. D	5. C	6. C	7. A	8. C	9. A	10. C
11. D	12. C	13. A	14. D	15. C	16. A	17. B	18. D	19. A	20. B
21. B	22. A	23. D	24. C	25. A	26. C	27. D	28. A	29. C	30. A
31. B	32. D	33. B	34. D	35. B	36. C	37. B	38. C	39. A	40. D
41. C	42. C	43. A	44. B	45. C	46. B	47. C	48. A	49. D	50. A

LUYỆN TẬP 2: (ID: ET1110)

Câu 1 [ID: 291966] I don't agree _____ you at all about that.

- A. to B. on C. with D. towards

Câu 2 [ID: 291967] Because of a heavy downpour, the proposed open-air concert had to be _____

- A. called off B. called in
C. called on D. called back

Câu 3 [ID: 291968] I wonder who first _____ the idea of wearing seatbelts in cars.

- A. came away B. came back C. came up with D. came on

Câu 4 [ID: 291969] Please add some more hot water _____ my tea!

- A. to B. up C. up to D. into

Câu 5 [ID: 291970] Please _____! Make yourself at home.

- A. break in B. check in C. come in D. bring in

Câu 6 [ID: 291971] I wish you wouldn't _____ while I am talking.

- A. cut across B. cut out C. cut down D. cut in

A. bring ...up
C. admit ...to
B. catch ...up
D. admire...for

A. done out B. done away with C. drawn back D. drawn out

A. of B. out C. from D. away

A. on. B. at C. for D. in

A. on B. for C. of D. at

A. from B. to C. for D. with

A. at B. for C. to D. of

A. in B. with C. to D. at

A. to B. by C. of D. A&C are correct

A. bring out B. bring on C. bring up D. bring down

A. came by B. came in C. came about D. came into

A. broke into B. broke down
C. broke up D. broke away

A. dropping out B. dropping in on
C. breaking into D. breaking up

A. butt off B. butt in C. butt into D. butt out

A. cut/in B. cut/out C. break/up D. break/to

Câu 22 [ID: 291987] After his mother died, he was _____ by his grandmother.

- A. brought up B. broken up
C. brought out D. broken out

Câu 23 [ID: 291988] She started the course two months ago but dropped _____ after only a month.

- A. in B. by C. out D. off

Câu 24 [ID: 291989] I'd hope it will _____ soon. Otherwise, we won't be able to have our picnic.

- A. clear up B. clear off C. cross out D. clear out

Câu 25 [ID: 291990] I've tried to _____ the number of cigarettes I smoke but it's far too difficult, I'm afraid.

- A. cut off B. cut in C. cut down on D. cut across

Câu 26 [ID: 291991] It was while I was clearing out the attic that I _____ some old photos of my sister's wedding.

- A. came back B. came in
C. came round D. came across

Câu 27 [ID: 291992] Last week, I bumped _____ an old college friend I hadn't seen in years.

- A. into B. out C. off D. at

Câu 28 [ID: 291993] I'll deal _____ decimals in the next lesson.

- A. off B. with C. in D. on

Câu 29 [ID: 291994] The dinosaurs died _____ millions of years ago.

- A. away B. of C. out D. from

Câu 30 [ID: 291995] We had a plan to finish the work together, but they _____.

- A. backed up B. backed out
C. broke in D. broke down

ĐÁP ÁN

1. C	2. A	3. C	4. A	5. C	6. D	7. B	8. B	9. A	10. C
11. B	12. A	13. B	14. D	15. A	16. A	17. D	18. B	19. B	20. B
21. B	22. A	23. C	24. A	25. C	26. D	27. A	28. B	29. C	30. B

LUYỆN TẬP 3: (ID: ET1111)

Câu 1 [ID: 292195] Take the bus number 7 and get _____ at Forest Road.

- A. up B. to C. off D. outside

Câu 2 [ID: 292196] If you want to join this club, you must _____ this application form.

- A. go up B. go over C. do up D. fill in

Câu 3 [ID: 292197] The bomb _____ when he rang the bell.

- A. went over B. went on C. went out D. went off

Câu 4 [ID: 292198] He _____ about his new car all the time.

- A. goes over B. goes on C. goes out D. goes off

Câu 5 [ID: 292199] Do you think you could _____ this work with me some time, Peter?

- A. go over B. go on C. go out D. go off

Câu 6 [ID: 292200] We have permission to _____ with the plan.

- A. go ahead B. go over C. go on at D. go under

Câu 7 [ID: 292201] I see the price of bread has _____ again.

- A. gone up B. hung on C. grated on D. fallen out

Câu 8 [ID: 292202] There was a power cut and all the lights _____.

- A. went up B. ironed out
C. went out D. went ahead

Câu 9 [ID: 292203] My father still hasn't really _____ the death of my mother.

- A. gone along B. gone by C. gone back on D. got over

Câu 10 [ID: 292204] Bill seems unhappy in his job because he doesn't get _____ his boss.

- A. round B. out of C. on well with D. off

Câu 11 [ID: 292205] My father gave _____ smoking two years ago.

- A. in B. away C. up D. out

Câu 12 [ID: 292206] Billy hasn't been working; he won't _____ his examinations.

- A. get off B. get through C. fall to D. face up to

Câu 13 [ID: 292207] If you really want to lose weight, you need to _____ eating desserts.

- A. give away B. give up C. go for D. go into

Câu 14 [ID: 292208] It's time I got _____ thinking about that essay.

- A. down to B. in C. on at D. back at

Câu 15 [ID: 292209] They've fixed _____ Paris for their honeymoon.

- A. at B. on C. in D. for

Câu 16 [ID: 292210] Most of his clothes were handed _____ to him by his older brother.

- A. down B. at C. behind D. for

Câu 17 [ID: 292211] I tried to get my point _____, but nobody seemed to care.

- A. across B. through C. ahead D. on

Câu 18 [ID: 292212] I cannot go _____ with his suggestion.

- A. through B. along C. back D. for

Câu 19 [ID: 292213] There's a lot of stock missing. I wonder how he will try to _____ that away.

- A. ease B. even C. eat D. explain

Câu 20 [ID: 292214] I find that I have too much work. It's _____ into my spare time and I don't stand for that.

- A. easing B. eating C. evening D. ending

Câu 21 [ID: 292215] Before we _____ upon a new project, I think we should completely finish the present one.

- A. end B. eat C. embark D. explain

Câu 22 [ID: 292216] Well it may have been Harry who was responsible for the stupid mistake but it must be said that Simon and Tony were _____ him on the whole way.

- A. eagling B. egging C. enabling D. erecting

Câu 23 [ID: 292217] I think we need a few more details. Could you _____ upon what you have just said?

- A. egg B. eat C. even D. enlarge

Câu 24 [ID: 292218] He leaned back, exulting _____ the success of his plan.

- A. on B. at C. for D. with

Câu 25 [ID: 292219] Thieves jacked _____ the car and stole the wheels.

- A. up B. down C. forward D. to

Câu 26 [ID: 292220] I was getting disheartened writing my first novel, but my husband jollied me _____ to finish it.

- A. up B. along C. in D. through

Câu 27 [ID: 292221] In a TV interview she hit _____ at her critics.

- A. back B. down C. forward D. to

Câu 28 [ID: 292222] I'm surprised you _____ that trick.

- A. fell for B. fell down C. fell back on D. fell behind

Câu 29 [ID: 292223] We still have a long way to go before we _____ all the current financial difficulties.

- A. iron out B. deal to C. improve on D. fall for

Câu 30 [ID: 292224] She had to face _____ the fact that she would never walk again.

- A. to B. with C. up to D. up with

Câu 31 [ID: 292225] Please _____ these papers.

- A. hand out B. hand on
C. hand off D. hand down

Câu 32 [ID: 292226] Have you hung the washing _____?

- A. in B. out C. down D. at

Câu 33 [ID: 292227] After I _____ I remembered what I'd wanted to say.

- A. hung on B. hung out
C. hung up D. hung around

- Câu 34 [ID: 292228] Do you think that mixed-ability classes hold _____ the better students?
A. at B. up C. back D. behind
- Câu 35 [ID: 292229] I called the station to inquire _____ train times.
A. at B. about C. down D. back
- Câu 36 [ID: 292230] The decision was _____ by environmental groups.
A. jumped on B. jumped at C. jumped into D. jumped for
- Câu 37 [ID: 292231] Her words impressed themselves _____ my memory.
A. at B. in C. by D. on
- Câu 38 [ID: 292232] Let's not enter _____ details at this stage.
A. for B. during C. onto D. into
- Câu 39 [ID: 292233] He tried to even _____ the distribution of work among his employees.
A. out B. into C. for D. about
- Câu 40 [ID: 292234] He was fiddling _____ his keys while he talked to me.
A. at B. up C. with D. behind
- Câu 41 [ID: 292235] The article enthused _____ the benefits that the new system would bring.
A. for B. at C. over D. with
- Câu 42 [ID: 292236] With his partner away, all the work now _____ to him.
A. fell B. went C. gave D. hit
- Câu 43 [ID: 292237] There was no one when I opened the door; someone must be _____.
A. having me on B. having me in
C. giving me up D. giving me in
- Câu 44 [ID: 292238] He was _____ for manslaughter.
A. had on B. had up C. hung up D. hung out
- Câu 45 [ID: 292239] I haven't heard anything _____ her for months.
A. at B. for C. from D. to
- Câu 46 [ID: 292240] When I bought the house, my sister _____ with a loan.
A. helped me out B. had me on C. gave me up D. fell for me
- Câu 47 [ID: 292241] At first the show seemed kind of weird, but it _____ us.
A. grew into B. grew up
C. grew on D. grew out of
- Câu 48 [ID: 292242] If the sea or wind _____, it increases in strength and becomes violent.
A. gets in B. gets up C. gets through D. gets by
- Câu 49 [ID: 292243] I was sure she knew the answer but for some reason she hung _____.
A. back B. down C. in D. for

Câu 12 [ID: 292679] There was a big hole in the road which _____ the traffic.

- A. entered into B. held up C. faded out D. fanned out

Câu 13 [ID: 292680] There is no food left. Someone must have finished it _____.

- A. out B. up C. of D. along

Câu 14 [ID: 292681] She should have been here but she's gone _____ flu.

- A. through with B. down with C. back on D. over to

Câu 15 [ID: 292682] Sarah desperately wanted to be an actress, so when they offered her a part in the play, she _____ it.

- A. burst into B. jumped at C. went in for D. grew into

Câu 16 [ID: 292683] I didn't want to do it, but the other boys egged me on.

"egged me on" means _____.

- A. threw eggs at me B. called my names C. encouraged me D. forced me

Câu 17 [ID: 292684] They're not trustworthy. I don't think we should _____ into any agreement with them.

- A. ease B. eat C. even D. enter

Câu 18 [ID: 292685] Although I was supposed to be the guest, he had mislaid his wallet and I _____ up paying for the meal.

- A. eased B. ate C. embarked D. ended

Câu 19 [ID: 292686] They _____ out all the obvious problems at the first committee meeting.

- A. ironed B. got rid C. got D. handed

Câu 20 [ID: 292687] He _____ up the folk tune.

- A. jams B. jazzes C. jumps D. joins

Câu 21 [ID: 292688] I can't wait for the river to _____ so we can do some ice fishing.

- A. ice over B. ice in C. ice on D. ice under

Câu 22 [ID: 292689] They _____ the days away, talking and watching television.

- A. idled B. idealized C. spent D. wasted

Câu 23 [ID: 292690] He never allowed his work to impinge _____ his private life.

- A. up B. on C. in D. through

Câu 24 [ID: 292691] We've certainly improved _____ last year's figures.

- A. up B. on C. in D. through

Câu 25 [ID: 292692] The deal _____ when we failed to agree on a price.

- A. fell away B. fell apart C. faded out D. fell behind

Câu 26 [ID: 292693] I really felt _____ her when her husband died.

- A. forward B. downward C. with D. for

Câu 27 [ID: 292694] She spent an hour trying to install the software, but John finally _____ it out.

- A. felt B. told C. understood D. figured

Câu 28 [ID: 292695] The flowers _____ a fragrant perfume.

- A. gave in B. gave off C. gave over D. gave up

Câu 29 [ID: 292696] I _____ my weekend to help him paint his apartment.

- A. gave in B. gave up C. gave over D. gave off

Câu 30 [ID: 292697] He never _____ back on his word.

- A. goes B. tells C. leaves D. gives

ĐÁP ÁN

1. D	2. B	3. B	4. B	5. C	6. C	7. B	8. D	9. B	10. C
11. B	12. B	13. B	14. B	15. B	16. C	17. D	18. D	19. A	20. B
21. A	22. A	23. B	24. B	25. B	26. D	27. D	28. B	29. B	30. A

LUYỆN TẬP 5: (ID: ET1113)

Câu 1 [ID: 293334] I haven't time to speak to him now, you'll have to put him _____.

- A. off B. back C. aside D. away

Câu 2 [ID: 293335] The job offer was too good for him to turn _____.

- A. down B. on C. off D. away

Câu 3 [ID: 293336] The doctor advised me not to take _____ so much work in future.

- A. back B. over C. after D. on

Câu 4 [ID: 293337] The police have warned tourists to look _____ for pickpockets in the town centre.

- A. out B. up C. down D. forward

Câu 5 [ID: 293338] Their aim is to _____ up a new political party.

- A. look B. stand C. set D. show

Câu 6 [ID: 293339] We expected him at eight but he finally _____ at midnight.

- A. came from B. turned out C. turned in D. came off

Câu 7 [ID: 293340] If you want to have a pet, you must be ready to look _____ it for several years.

- A. at B. for C. after D. over

Câu 8 [ID: 293341] I can put _____ with most things but I cannot stand noisy children.

- A. on B. up C. off D. aside

Câu 9 [ID: 293342] My uncle took _____ golf when he retired from work.

- A. on B. after C. up D. over

Câu 10 [ID: 293343] Mrs Brown always _____ out in a crowd because she wore a large hat.

- A. found B. looked C. stood D. brought

Câu 11 [ID: 293344] All the plans have been put _____ for the time being.

- A. aside B. down C. on D. up

Câu 12 [ID: 293345] Although the team was both mentally and physically exhausted, they _____ on walking.

- A. stopped B. kept C. took D. put

Câu 13 [ID: 293346] Before the plane _____ off, the flight attendant told everyone to fasten their seat belts and put their chairs in an upright position.

- A. woke B. brought C. kept D. took

Câu 14 [ID: 293347] Do you think it's possible to _____ on nothing but fruit and vegetables?

- A. eat B. live C. enjoy D. make

Câu 15 [ID: 293348] The child was _____ by a lorry in the main street.

- A. knocked down B. knocked up C. run across D. run out

Câu 16 [ID: 293349] We're having terrible weather. Just can't put _____ it for much longer.

- A. up B. on C. away D. up with

Câu 17 [ID: 293350] It's very cold in here. Do you mind if I put _____ the heating?

- A. down B. away C. off D. on

Câu 18 [ID: 293351] There's a rumor that the National Bank is going to take _____ the company I work for.

- A. on B. off C. over D. after

Câu 19 [ID: 293352] She _____ her father; everyone says how alike they are!

- A. takes after B. takes off C. takes on D. takes over

Câu 20 [ID: 293353] Paul, do you think you could _____ me _____ for the night? It's a bit too late to go home now.

- A. put/through B. keep/up C. put/up D. keep/out

Câu 21 [ID: 293354] The doctor asked me to _____ my shirt.

- A. put off B. take off C. keep off D. go off

Câu 22 [ID: 293355] Who will _____ your child while you go out to work?

- A. look for B. look up C. look after D. look at

Câu 23 [ID: 293356] Please _____ the light, it's getting dark here.

- A. turn off B. turn over C. turn back D. turn on

Câu 24 [ID: 293357] It's cold outside, _____ your coat.

- A. put on B. put off C. put out D. put in

Câu 40 [ID: 293373] They've _____ a new tower where that old building used to be.

- A. put up B. put down C. put on D. put off

Câu 41 [ID: 293374] The explosion has caused us a lot of problems. It has probably set us _____ by a year or more.

- A. in B. up C. aside D. back

Câu 42 [ID: 293375] There is no smoking in this building. Please _____ it _____!

- A. make/out B. put/out C. turn/out D. look/out

Câu 43 [ID: 293376] We worked _____ how much of our salaries we would have to save each year.

- A. out B. for C. up D. down

Câu 44 [ID: 293377] How many people do you expect to _____ at the meeting tonight?

- A. put up B. show up C. look up D. break up

Câu 45 [ID: 293378] There are some pens here. Why don't you _____ one or two?

- A. pick out B. look out C. put out D. turn out

Câu 46 [ID: 293379] Those three letters are an abbreviation. They _____ for something.

- A. look B. work C. stand D. make

Câu 47 [ID: 293380] I don't see how you can _____ with such bad working conditions.

- A. catch up B. put up C. quarrel D. break

Câu 48 [ID: 293381] The truth turned _____ to be stranger than we had expected.

- A. back B. off C. on D. out

Câu 49 [ID: 293382] I've bought a new dress but I haven't _____ it on.

- A. take B. keep C. try D. urge

Câu 50 [ID: 293383] Everyone in the class was so clever that I couldn't _____ up with them.

- A. put B. come C. keep D. break

ĐÁP ÁN

1. A	2. A	3. D	4. A	5. C	6. B	7. C	8. B	9. C	10. C
11. A	12. B	13. D	14. B	15. A	16. D	17. D	18. C	19. A	20. C
21. B	22. C	23. D	24. A	25. C	26. C	27. B	28. A	29. B	30. B
31. B	32. B	33. A	34. A	35. B	36. D	37. C	38. D	39. D	40. A
41. D	42. B	43. A	44. B	45. A	46. C	47. B	48. D	49. C	50. C

LUYỆN TẬP 6: (ID: ET1114)

Câu 1 [ID: 293457] I must go _____ a diet. I put _____ a lot of weight while I was on vacation.

- A. through/off B. on/off C. through/on D. on/on

Câu 16 [ID: 293472] She leans _____ her husband for advice.

- A. in B. at C. on D. from

Câu 17 [ID: 293473] We can't hear you at the back. Perhaps you could _____ up a bit?

- A. speak B. seize C. put D. throw

Câu 18 [ID: 293474] I couldn't afford to buy it but my parents _____ up the money for me.

- A. cheer B. put C. took D. throw

Câu 19 [ID: 293475] Your report is very clear and easy to understand. You _____ out everything really clearly.

- A. put B. set C. make D. find

Câu 20 [ID: 293476] We've heard that Janet is sick so Harry is _____ by to replace her

- A. passing B. getting C. breaking D. standing

Câu 21 [ID: 293477] I'd like that washing - machine but I'd like to _____ it out before I buy it.

- A. put B. keep C. try D. break

Câu 22 [ID: 293478] There's a lot of work to do, so _____ in.

- A. take B. go C. call D. pitch

Câu 23 [ID: 293479] The bus stopped at the end of the road to _____ up passengers.

- A. take B. pick C. show D. light

Câu 24 [ID: 293480] How can you put _____ your brother? He's talkative and unreliable.

- A. up B. on C. up with D. down

Câu 25 [ID: 293481] They turned _____ my suggestion, which made me upset.

- A. down B. back C. off D. out

Câu 26 [ID: 293482] The only teacher I ever look _____ at school is Mr White-side, the English teacher.

- A. after B. up to C. for D. up

Câu 27 [ID: 293483] My grandfather _____ away last month. He was 90 years old.

- A. broke B. turned C. ran D. passed

Câu 28 [ID: 293484] We'd better _____ if we want to get there in time.

- A. turn down B. speed up C. take up D. put down

Câu 29 [ID: 293485] Please remember to _____ the lights before you leave the room.

- A. go out B. set off C. get out D. switch off

Câu 30 [ID: 293486] Whole villages have been _____ by the floods.

- A. turned down B. wiped out C. urged on D. lit up

ĐÁP ÁN

1. D	2. B	3. A	4. C	5. D	6. A	7. A	8. B	9. A	10. B
11. D	12. B	13. C	14. D	15. C	16. C	17. A	18. B	19. B	20. D
21. C	22. D	23. B	24. C	25. A	26. B	27. D	28. B	29. D	30. B

C- THI ONLINE

Truy cập ☒ID: ET1115, ET1116, ET1117.

GÓC GIẢI TRÍ

Các em ơi, sau khi học xong một bài học dài như thế này, các em có thấy căng thẳng không? Chúng ta cùng giải trí bằng các câu đố tiếng Anh sau nhé :

1. A woman shoots her husband.

Then she holds him under water for over 5 minutes.

Finally, she hangs him.

But 5 minutes later they both go out together and enjoy a wonderful dinner together.

How can this be?

2. Only one color, but not one size,
Stuck at the bottom, yet easily flies.

Present in sun, but not in rain,

Doing no harm, and feeling no pain.

What is it?

3. I never was, am always to be,

No one ever saw me, nor ever will

And yet I am the confidence of all

To live and breathe on this terrestrial ball?

1. Một người phụ nữ bắn chồng.

Sau đó, cô giữ anh dưới nước trong hơn 5 phút.

Cuối cùng, cô ấy treo cổ anh ta.

Nhưng 5 phút sau, cả hai cùng đi chơi cùng nhau và cùng nhau thưởng thức bữa tối tuyệt vời.

Làm thế nào điều này có thể?

2. Chỉ có một màu, nhưng không phải là một kích thước,

Bị mắc kẹt ở đáy, nhưng vẫn dễ bay.

Hiện diện trong ánh nắng mặt trời, nhưng không phải trong mưa,

Không gây hại, và không cảm thấy đau.

Nó là gì?

3. Tôi chưa bao giờ là quá khứ, luôn luôn tiếp diễn

Không ai nhìn thấy tôi, cũng không bao giờ

Và tôi là sự tự tin của tất cả

Để sống và hít thở trên quả đất này?

Đáp án:

1. The woman was a photographer. She shot the picture of her husband, developed it, hang it up to dry

2. A shadow

3. I'm tomorrow

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 6: CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN

A – LÝ THUYẾT

Trong tiết học này, các em sẽ được học về 3 loại câu điều kiện cơ bản: câu điều kiện loại 1, câu điều kiện loại 2 và câu điều kiện loại 3; ngoài ra còn có câu điều kiện loại 0, câu điều kiện trộn. Bên cạnh đó, các em sẽ được học về đảo ngữ trong câu điều kiện, một số câu điều kiện ẩn.

Đây là dạng bài quan trọng trong các đề thi tiếng Anh, chúng ta cùng tìm hiểu các em nhé!

I. CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN LOẠI 1 (ID: EV1046)

Câu điều kiện loại 1 dùng để diễn tả một điều có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai

➤ Cấu trúc

If clause,	Main clause
Simple present	Simple future

Eg: If he runs, he will get there on time.

The cat will scratch you if you pull her tail.

➤ Dạng đặc biệt, biến thể:

If clause,	Main clause	Use	Example
Simple present	May/might	Khả năng	If the fog gets thicker, the plane may be diverted.
	Can/may	Cho phép	If you finish your homework, you can go out.
	Must/should	Khuyến bảo	If you want to lose weight, you must eat less bread.
Present continuous	Simple future	Nhấn mạnh hành động đang diễn ra ở hiện tại	If you are looking for Peter, you will find him upstairs.
Present Perfect	Simple future May/might	Nhấn mạnh hành động đã kết thúc/ hoàn thành trước một hành động khác	If you have finished, you may go out.

- Câu điều kiện loại 0: dùng để diễn đạt những sự thật tổng quan, những dữ kiện khoa học luôn luôn xảy ra với một điều kiện nhất định.

If clause,	Main clause
Simple present	Simple present

Eg: If you heat ice, it turns into water.

If there is a shortage of any product, prices of that product go up.

If he comes, call me. = Call me if he comes.

II. CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN LOẠI 2

Câu điều kiện loại 2 dùng để diễn tả một điều không có thật ở hiện tại.

If clause,	Main clause
Simple past (be → were)	Would + inf

Eg: Fact: I don't have a map (HT) → If I had a map, I would lend it to you.

If someone tried to blackmail me, I'd call the police.

If I were you, I'd plant around the house (I'm not you).

If I lived near my office, I'd be in time for work. (I don't live near my office)

➤ Lưu ý:

- Chúng ta có thể thay "would" bằng "could, should, may, might....."
- If I lived near my office, I'd be in time for work.

= If I were to live near my office, I'd be in time for work.

- Đảo ngữ trong câu điều kiện loại 2:

Eg: - If I lived near my office, I'd be in time for work.

= Were I to live near my office, I'd be in time for work.

- If I were you, I'd plant around the house. (= You had better/should plant around the house).

= Were I you, I'd plant around the house .

= If I were in your shoes, I'd plant around the house.

III. CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN LOẠI 3

Câu điều kiện loại 3 dùng để diễn tả một điều không có thật ở quá khứ.

If clause,	Main clause
Past perfect,	would/could/might/should + have + P2

Eg: Fact: He helped me (QK), I won the prize.

→ If he hadn't helped me, I wouldn't have won the prize.

If we had found him earlier, we might have saved him.

If I had worked harder last year, I could have passed the exam.

Lưu ý:

1. Đảo ngữ câu điều kiện loại 3:

- If you had obeyed orders, the disaster wouldn't have happened.

→ Had you obeyed orders, the disaster wouldn't have happened.

- If he hadn't helped me, I couldn't pass the exam.

→ Had he not helped me, I couldn't pass the exam.

2. Câu điều kiện trộn

If clause,	Main clause	Example
Past Perfect (III)	Would + inf (II) (Thường có trạng từ chỉ thời gian: now,)	If I had caught that plane last night, I would be dead now. If he had taken my advice, he would be rich now
Simple Past (II)	would/could/might/ should + have + P2 (III)	If I knew she was short of money, I should have lent her more. If I knew my mother was coming to see me, I'd have prepared more food

Một số ví dụ:

1. If I _____ the bus this afternoon, I will get a taxi instead.

A. miss B. will miss C. missed D. had missed

2. Pam broke her arm in the accident. It _____ much worse if she hadn't been wearing her seat belt.

A. will be B. would have been C. was D. were

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. Đáp án A

Mệnh đề chính chia ở thì tương lai đơn "will get", nên đây là câu điều kiện loại 1 diễn tả một điều có thể xảy ra trong tương lai hoặc hiện tại. Do đó, động từ ở mệnh đề if chia ở thì hiện tại đơn.

Dịch: Nếu tôi lỡ chuyến xe buýt chiều nay, tôi sẽ bắt taxi.

2. Đáp án B

Câu thứ nhất là một tình huống thực tế ở trong quá khứ nên ta dùng câu điều kiện loại 3 để nói về một điều trái ngược với sự thật trong quá khứ.

Dịch: Pam bị gãy tay trong vụ tai nạn. Sẽ tồi tệ hơn rất nhiều nếu cô ấy đã không thắt dây an toàn.

Để làm được dạng bài này, các em cần xác định được đó là loại câu điều kiện nào để chia đúng thì của động từ bằng cách dựa vào thì của động từ trong mệnh đề còn lại. Ngoài ra, các em có thể dựa vào tình huống đề bài cho sẵn để xác định loại câu điều kiện phù hợp.

MỘT SỐ CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN ẨN (ID: EV1047)

1. OTHERWISE: NẾU KHÔNG THÌ (II, III)

My farther pays the fee, otherwise I wouldn't be here. (II)

(Bố tôi đóng học phí cho tôi, nếu không tôi sẽ không ở đây)

= If my father didn't pay the fee, I wouldn't be here.

My teacher helped me. Otherwise, I wouldn't have passed the exam. (III)

2. WITHOUT

If it were not for the Sun, life on Earth wouldn't exit. (II)

→ Without the Sun, life on Earth wouldn't exit. (II)

If it hadn't been for his help, I wouldn't have passed the exam.

→ Without his help, I wouldn't have passed the exam.

3. Đảo ngữ của IF IT WEREN'T FOR = WERE IT NOT FOR (II)

Were not for the Sun, life on Earth wouldn't exit (II).

4. Đảo ngữ của IF HADN'T BEEN FOR = HAD IT NOT BEEN FOR (III)

Had it not been for his help, I wouldn't have passed the exam.

5. BUT FOR = WITHOUT

But for the Sun, life on Earth wouldn't exit. (II)

But for his help, I wouldn't have passed the exam. (III)

6. UNLESS + CLAUSE = IF NOT = Trừ khi, nếu không

Don't call me unless you need help. (I)

= If you don't need help, don't call me.

7. PROVIDED THAT/SUPPOSING THAT = if (I, II) = Nếu như, cho rằng là.

Provided that it is sunny, shall we go out.

8. AS LONG AS/SO LONG AS: miễn là, với điều kiện là

I'll lend you some money as long as you pay me back by Friday.

Tôi sẽ cho bạn vay tiền, với điều kiện là bạn trả tôi trước thứ sáu.

9. EVEN IF: ngay cả nếu

Even if you give me money, I won't come to that party.

Ngay cả nếu bạn cho tôi tiền, tôi cũng không đi dự bữa tiệc đó đâu.

You must go even if you are ready.

Cậu phải đi ngay cả nếu cậu chưa sẵn sàng.

10. ONLY IF: chỉ nếu

I will let you go out only if you have finished your homework.

11. WHETHER....OR NOT = IF....OR = liệu... hay không

You must go whether you are ready or not.

Cậu phải đi dù cho cậu có sẵn sàng hay chưa.

12. WONDER IF: phân vân liệu...

I wonder if he loves me (or not).

13. IF ONLY = I WISH + CLAUSE = giá mà

I wish I were a millionaire

14. OR/OR ELSE = nếu không thì...

Hurry up! Or/Or else you'll be late for school.

= Hurry up! If you don't hurry, you'll be late for school.

15. IN CASE + CLAUSE: phòng khi

IN CASE OF + NOUN: trong trường hợp

Bring umbrella in case it rains

In case of emergency, call 115.

B – LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1: (ID: ET1118)

Câu 1 [ID: 212787] _____ have enough apples, she'll make an apple pie this afternoon.

- A. Should she B. If she C. Will she D. Unless she

Câu 2 [ID: 212788] If you _____ to me, you wouldn't have got so much trouble.

- A. listened B. would listen
C. had listened D. Would have listened

Câu 3 [ID: 212791] If you don't know how to spell a word, you _____ look it up in the dictionary.

- A. must B. will C. should D. ought

Câu 4 [ID: 212792] If the sun _____, we _____ for a walk.

- A. shines/will go B. shone/will go
C. shone/would go D. had shone/would go

Câu 5 [ID: 212794] The campfire _____ if it _____ last night.

- A. wouldn't be cancelled/hadn't rained
- B. wouldn't have been cancelled/hadn't rained
- C. would have been cancelled/hadn't rained
- D. will be cancelled/rains

Câu 6 [ID: 212796] But for our parents, we _____ successful in life.

- A. will never be
- B. would never be
- C. wouldn't have be
- D. would have never been

Câu 7 [ID: 212797] If I _____ my wallet at home this morning, I _____ money for lunch now.

- A. leave/will have
- B. didn't leave/would have
- C. hadn't left/would have
- D. hadn't left/would have had

Câu 8 [ID: 212798] It is too bad, Lam isn't here. If he _____ here, he _____ what to do.

- A. were/would know
- B. is/will know
- C. had been/would have known
- D. was/would know

Câu 9 [ID: 212799] If we _____ the plans carefully, we would not have had so many serious mistakes.

- A. study
- B. had studied
- C. studied
- D. were studying

Câu 10 [ID: 212800] I will never talk to you again _____ you apologize me _____ your being rude.

- A. if/for
- B. unless/for
- C. or/of
- D. whether/or

Câu 11 [ID: 212801] _____ you work harder, you will be sacked.

- A. Whether
- B. If
- C. However
- D. Unless

Câu 12 [ID: 212802] I think you should stop smoking.

- A. If I am you, I will stop smoking.
- B. If I were you, I will stop smoking.
- C. If I were you, I would stop smoking.
- D. If I had been you, I would stop smoking.

Câu 13 [ID: 212803] If you take the ice out of the fridge, it _____.

- A. vaporizes
- B. melts
- C. heats
- D. disappears

Câu 14 [ID: 212804] We should do something to protect water from being polluted _____ we will have nothing to drink in the future.

- A. if
- B. whether
- C. or
- D. unless

Câu 15 [ID: 212805] Let's knock on their door to see _____ home.

- A. if they're
- B. unless they're
- C. whether they were
- D. if they were

Câu 16 [ID: 212806] Unless we _____ more snow, we can't go skiing.

- A. will have B. have C. have had D. had

Câu 17 [ID: 212807] You'll fail the exam _____ you start revising.

- A. if B. until C. when D. unless

Câu 18 [ID: 212808] Unless you wash the car, you _____ not drive it at the weekend.

- A. would B. could C. have to D. may

Câu 19 [ID: 212809] If Peter _____ his car before the drive, he _____ the problem of out of petrol.

- A. checked/will not get B. had checked/would not have got
C. checks/will not have got D. would be checking/will not have got

Câu 20 [ID: 212810] He stepped on the mine, and it exploded.

- A. If he doesn't step on the mine, it doesn't explode.
B. If he doesn't step on the mine, it won't explode.
C. If he didn't step on the mine, it wouldn't explode.
D. If he hadn't stepped on the mine, it wouldn't have exploded.

Câu 21 [ID: 212812] In my experiments, the liquid is cooled to 32°F. It always freezes.

- A. If you cool the liquid to 32 degrees, it froze.
B. If you cooled the liquid to 32 degrees, it would freeze.
C. If you cool the liquid to 32 degrees, it will freeze.
D. If you had cooled the liquid to 32 degrees, it would have frozen.

Câu 22 [ID: 212813] It may rain this afternoon. I hope it doesn't because I don't want the match to be cancelled.

- A. If it rains, the match is cancelled.
B. If it rains, the match will be cancelled.
C. If it rained, the match would be cancelled.
D. If it had rained, the match would have been cancelled.

Câu 23 [ID: 212814] Unfortunately, I don't know Philosophy, so I can't answer your question.

- A. If I know Philosophy, I can answer your question.
B. If I know Philosophy, I will be able to answer your question.
C. If I knew Philosophy, I would be able to answer your question.
D. If I had known Philosophy, I would have been able to answer your question.

Câu 24 [ID: 212815] _____ there are some more ideas, we can end the meeting now.

- A. If B. As if C. Unless D. In case

- Câu 25 [ID: 212816] If he ___ with us now, he ___ the beauty of nature of the National Park.
A. is/can enjoy B. was/will enjoy
C. has been/would enjoy D. were/could enjoy
- Câu 26 [ID: 212817] If they had searched more carefully, they _____ the watch sooner.
A. will find B. would find C. found D. would have found
- Câu 27 [ID: 212818] If I had got up early, I _____ to have breakfast now.
A. have B. I had C. would have D. would have had
- Câu 28 [ID: 212819] I cannot buy a new computer _____ I save enough money.
A. if B. even if C. unless D. as if
- Câu 29 [ID: 212821] Most people you meet will be polite to you _____.
A. if you are polite to them B. if you will be polite to them
C. unless you are polite to them D. if you were polite to them
- Câu 30 [ID: 212822] If you do so, it _____ the matter worse.
A. makes only B. would only make
C. will only make D. had only made
- Câu 31 [ID: 212823] You _____ English fluently unless you practice it every day.
A. will speak B. will not speak C. can speak D. did not speak
- Câu 32 [ID: 212824] Hurry up _____ you will miss the bus and be late for school.
A. if B. and C. or D. as
- Câu 33 [ID: 212825] You will get a good seat if you _____ first.
A. come B. came C. have come D. will come
- Câu 34 [ID: 212826] Sam will not graduate _____.
A. if he passed all the tests B. if he did not pass all the tests.
C. unless he passes all the tests D. B & C
- Câu 35 [ID: 212827] If I had time, I would go with you.
A. I am free and surely go with you. B. I am too busy to go with you.
C. I will go with you because I have time. D. I am free enough to go with you.
- Câu 36 [ID: 212828] If Margaret hadn't been wearing a seat belt, she _____ injured.
A. has been B. would has been C. would be D. would have been
- Câu 37 [ID: 212829] If I _____ the rain yesterday, I _____ ill.
A. had not caught/would have been
B. had not caught/would have not been
C. have not caught/were not
D. have not caught/would have been

Câu 38 [ID: 212830] He looked frightened as if he _____ a ghost.

- A. sees B. is seeing C. has seen D. had seen

Câu 39 [ID: 212831] What _____ if there _____ a serious nuclear accident?

- A. will happen/was B. happens/were
C. would happen/were D. would happen/had been

One of the four underlined parts marked A, B, C, D in each sentence is not correct in standard English. Identify them.

Câu 40 [ID: 212832] If Lucia had been here now, she would find out the truth about her uncle's accident.

- A. had been B. would find out C. about D. uncle's

Câu 41 [ID: 212833] If a student takes a course on Computer Science, it will take him four years doing the course.

- A. if B. takes a course C. take D. doing

Câu 42 [ID: 212834] Unless it did not rain, Peter would pay us a visit.

- A. Unless B. did not rain C. would pay D. a visit

Câu 43 [ID: 212835] If had I known you were in financial difficulty, I would have helped you.

- A. had I known B. were C. in D. would have helped you

Câu 44 [ID: 212836] If I had knew the time when the match started, I would have told you.

- A. If B. had knew C. when D. would have told you

Câu 45 [ID: 212837] If she had finished the work, she can go home.

- A. had finished B. the work C. go D. home

Câu 46 [ID: 212838] If I had spoken more confident at the interview, they would have offered me the job.

- A. had spoken B. confident
C. would have offered D. the

Câu 47 [ID: 212839] Had I known Alice's address, I would write to her.

- A. Had I known B. Alice's C. would write D. to her

Câu 48 [ID: 212840] If I had realized that the traffic lights were red, I would stop.

- A. had realized B. that C. traffic lights D. would stop

Câu 49 [ID: 212841] If had you sent the application form to that company, you would have been offered a job.

- A. had you sent B. to that company C. would D. have been offered

Câu 50 [ID: 534172] I _____ telephone her if I knew her number.

A. would

B. have to

C. will

D. shall

ĐÁP ÁN

1. A	2. C	3. C	4. A	5. B	6. D	7. C	8. A	9. B	10. B
11. D	12. C	13. B	14. C	15. A	16. B	17. D	18. D	19. B	20. D
21. C	22. B	23. C	24. C	25. D	26. D	27. C	28. C	29. A	30. C
31. B	32. C	33. A	34. C	35. B	36. D	37. B	38. D	39. C	40. A
41. D	42. A	43. A	44. B	45. A	46. B	47. C	48. D	49. A	50. A

LUYỆN TẬP 2: (ID: ET1119)

Câu 1 [ID: 212842] If you pass your examination we _____ a celebration.

A. have

B. will have

C. would have had

D. would have

Câu 2 [ID: 212843] If I had time, I _____ to the beach with you this weekend.

A. will go

B. will have gone

C. would go

D. would have gone

Câu 3 [ID: 212844] If she _____ late again, she'll lose her job.

A. came

B. comes

C. had come

D. come

Câu 4 [ID: 212845] If I had enough money, _____ that house.

A. I am buy

B. I could buy

C. I can buy

D. I will buy

Câu 5 [ID: 212846] If you had told me earlier, I _____ it to you.

A. would give

B. will give

C. would have given

D. gave

Câu 6 [ID: 212847] If it _____, I will come to see you.

A. didn't rain

B. doesn't rain

C. don't rain

D. not rain

Câu 7 [ID: 212848] I _____ to work if I had a car.

A. drove

B. will drive

C. would drive

D. would have driven

Câu 8 [ID: 212849] If he _____ to me, he wouldn't have failed in the exams.

A. had listened

B. has listened

C. Listens

D. listened

Câu 9 [ID: 212850] Had he come earlier, he _____ her.

A. would meet

B. would have met

C. might meet

D. will meet

Câu 10 [ID: 212851] If I were you, I _____ a new car.

A. buy

B. will buy

C. would buy

D. bought

Câu 11 [ID: 212852] If there were no gravity, everything _____.

A. would float

B. floated

C. would be floating

D. will float

Câu 12 [ID: 212853] You _____ if you take a map.

A. will get lost

B. would get lost

C. won't get lost

D. would have got lost

Câu 13 [ID: 212854] We would save thousands of lives if we _____ out the remedy for the flu.

- A. had not found B. found C. find D. will find

Câu 14 [ID: 212855] If I _____ ten years younger, I would do yoga everyday.

- A. are B. were C. have been D. am

Câu 15 [ID: 212856] Unless you go now, you _____ late for school.

- A. will be B. would have been C. would be D. are

Câu 16 [ID: 212857] If we _____ in a town, life would be better.

- A. had lived B. lived C. would live D. live

Câu 17 [ID: 212858] We _____ you if we have time.

- A. would phone B. had phoned C. phoned D. will phone

Câu 18 [ID: 212859] If I won the lottery, I _____ you half the money.

- A. had given B. gave C. will give D. would give

Câu 19 [ID: 212860] It _____ be a pity if she married Fred.

- A. can B. would C. may D. will

Câu 20 [ID: 212861] If I'm free on Saturday, I _____ to the mountains.

- A. went B. could go C. to go D. can go

Câu 21 [ID: 212862] If I can sing well, I _____ a singer soon.

- A. will be B. is C. would be D. were

Câu 22 [ID: 212863] I know I'll feel better if I _____ smoking.

- A. stopped B. will stop C. stop D. had stopped

Câu 23 [ID: 212864] If I _____ you, I would help him.

- A. had been B. were C. am D. will be

Câu 24 [ID: 212865] I could understand him if he _____ more slowly.

- A. speaks B. spoke C. would speak D. had spoken

Câu 25 [ID: 212866] The kitchen will look better if we _____ red curtains.

- A. had B. had had C. would have D. have

Câu 26 [ID: 212867] If I knew his address, I _____ round and see him.

- A. go B. will go C. would go D. went

Câu 27 [ID: 212868] It _____ quicker if you use a computer.

- A. would be B. will be C. been D. were

Câu 28 [ID: 212869] "Will you come to the party tomorrow?" - "I will if I _____ no visitors"

- A. had B. will have C. have D. am having

Câu 29 [ID: 212870] If it _____ too cold, we could go on a picnic.

- A. wouldn't be B. isn't C. weren't D. hadn't been

Câu 30 [ID: 212871] If they didn't live so far away, I _____ them every week.

- A. will visit B. visited C. visit D. would visit.

Câu 31 [ID: 212872] Unless we _____ throwing garbage into the river, it will be polluted.

- A. won't stop B. stop C. will stop D. don't stop

Câu 32 [ID: 212873] She is too weak; she can't sit up and talk to you.

- A. If she isn't too weak, she can sit up and talk to you.
B. If she weren't too weak, she could sit up and talk to you.
C. If she hadn't been too weak, she could sit up and talk to you.
D. If she wasn't too weak, she can sit up and talk to you.

Câu 33 [ID: 212874] I don't have enough money with me now; otherwise I will buy that coat.

- A. If I had enough money with me now, I wouldn't buy that coat.
B. If I had enough money with me now, I would buy that coat.
C. If I didn't have enough money with me now, I would buy that coat.
D. If I didn't have enough money with me now, I wouldn't buy that coat.

Câu 34 [ID: 212875] If I had known you would come, _____.

- A. I would wait for you B. I would have waited for you
C. I will wait for you D. I would not have waited for you

Câu 35 [ID: 212876] I wish I _____ a trip to London last year.

- A. took B. will take C. take D. had taken

Câu 36 [ID: 212877] She wishes she _____ a lot of money now.

- A. will have B. had C. had had D. has

Câu 37 [ID: 212878] The weather was terrible. I wish it _____ warmer.

- A. has been B. was C. were D. had been

Câu 38 [ID: 212879] I'd rather you _____ in here.

- A. don't smoke B. won't smoke
C. didn't smoke D. not smoked

Câu 39 [ID: 212880] He talked as if he _____ where she was.

- A. were knowing B. had known C. knew D. would know

Câu 40 [ID: 212881] "My boss made me work overtime again". "If I were you, I _____ my job."

- A. would quit B. will quit C. must quit D. quit

Câu 41 [ID: 212882] "Thanks for your help."

"_____ want more information, call again tomorrow."

- A. were you B. had you to C. might you D. should you

Câu 42 [ID: 212883] "Remember the day I drove you to the airport?"

"If you hadn't _____ me, I would have been late."

- A. take B. taking C. took D. taken

Câu 43 [ID: 212884] "Sally finally got here from Chicago."

"If she had come earlier, we _____ taken her to the play."

- A. would be B. would have C. had have D. would had

Câu 44 [ID: 212885] "I don't know whether to take that mathematics course or not."

"If _____ you, I'd take it".

- A. I am B. I will be C. I had been you D. I were

Câu 45 [ID: 212886] "My car broke down when I was leaving Detroit and I had to take the bus."

"_____ we would have picked you up."

- A. Had we known B. If we have known
C. We had known D. If we did know

Câu 46 [ID: 212887] "It's beginning to rain."

"_____ we won't be able to finish the ball game."

- A. If it stops B. Should it stop
C. Unless it stops D. If it didn't stop

Câu 47 [ID: 212888] "Did you need help with your math last night?"

"If I had, I _____ you."

- A. would call B. called
C. would have called D. will call

Câu 48 [ID: 212889] "I'd really like some lunch but I have so much work to do."

"_____ what you want and I can get it for you."

- A. Tell me B. If you would say me
C. You will tell to me D. If you tell me

Câu 49 [ID: 212890] "John went to the hospital alone."

"If _____, I would have gone with him."

- A. had he told me B. he had told me
C. he has told me D. he would tell me

Câu 50 [ID: 212891] If someone _____ into the store, smile and say, "May I help you?"

- A. comes B. came C. would come D. could come

ĐÁP ÁN

1. B	2. C	3. B	4. B	5. C	6. B	7. C	8. A	9. B	10. C
11. A	12. C	13. B	14. B	15. A	16. B	17. D	18. D	19. B	20. D
21. A	22. C	23. B	24. B	25. D	26. C	27. B	28. C	29. C	30. D
31. B	32. B	33. B	34. B	35. D	36. B	37. D	38. C	39. B	40. A
41. D	42. D	43. B	44. D	45. A	46. C	47. C	48. A	49. B	50. A

LUYỆN TẬP 3: (ID: ET1120)

Câu 1 [ID: 213152] I would have visited you before if there _____ quite a lot of people in your house.

- A. hadn't B. hadn't been C. wouldn't be D. wasn't

Câu 2 [ID: 213153] If you had caught the bus, you _____ late for work.

- A. wouldn't have been B. would have been
C. wouldn't be D. would be

Câu 3 [ID: 213154] If I _____, I would express my feelings.

- A. were asked B. would ask C. had been asked D. asked

Câu 4 [ID: 213155] If _____ as I told her, she would have succeeded.

- A. she has done B. she had done C. she does D. she did

Câu 5 [ID: 213156] Will you be angry if I _____ your pocket dictionary?

- A. stole B. have stolen C. were to steal D. steal

Câu 6 [ID: 213157] You made a mistake by telling her a lie. It _____ better if you _____ to her.

- A. would have been/hadn't lied B. would be/didn't lie
C. will be/don't lie D. would be/hadn't lied

Câu 7 [ID: 213158] John would be taking a great risk if he _____ his money in that business.

- A. would invest B. invested C. had invested D. invests

Câu 8 [ID: 213159] She wouldn't have given them all that money if we _____ her to.

- A. wouldn't advise B. won't advise
C. hadn't advised D. didn't advise

Câu 9 [ID: 213160] If the tree hadn't been so high, he _____ it up to take his kite down.

- A. could have climbed B. climb
C. is climbing D. climbed

Câu 10 [ID: 213161] If the wall weren't so high, he _____ it up to take his ball down.

- A. climbed B. could climb C. is climbing D. climb

Câu 11 [ID: 213162] If I _____ her phone number, I _____ her last night.

- A. had known/could have phoned B. knew/would have phoned
C. know/can phone D. knew/could phone

Câu 12 [ID: 213163] If he _____ the truth, the police wouldn't arrest him.

- A. tells B. told C. had told D. would tell

Câu 13 [ID: 213164] If you press that button what _____?

- A. would happen B. would have happened
C. will happen D. happen

Câu 14 [ID: 213165] She says if she _____ that the traffic lights were red she _____.

- A. had realized/would stop B. realized/could have stopped
C. has realized/stopped D. had realized/would have stopped

Câu 15 [ID: 213166] I am very thin. I think, if I _____ smoking, I might get fat.

- A. stop B. had stopped C. will stop D. stopped

Câu 16 [ID: 213167] If I _____ that yesterday, I _____ them now.

- A. had discovered/would inform B. had discovered/would have informed
C. had discovered/could inform D. discovered/can inform

Câu 17 [ID: 213168] If you _____ to the course regularly, they _____ a certificate last year.

- A. go/gave B. go/give
C. had gone/would have given D. went/would give

Câu 18 [ID: 213169] I think he is not at home. If he _____ in, he _____ the phone.

- A. was/answered B. were/would answer
C. were/would have answered D. had been/would have answered

Câu 19 [ID: 213170] If I _____ in London now, I could visit British Museum.

- A. were B. had been C. have been D. would be

Câu 20 [ID: 213171] If Columbus _____ money from Queen Isabella, he _____ across the Atlantic.

- A. do not receive/could not sail
B. had not received/might not have sailed
C. did not receive/might not have sailed
D. would not receive/might not sail

Câu 21 [ID: 213172] If you didn't wear shabby clothes, you _____ more good-looking.

- A. will be B. would be C. would have been D. can be

Câu 22 [ID: 213173] If your hair _____ grey now, what _____ you _____?

- A. went/would/do B. goes/would/do
C. had gone/would/do D. had gone/would have/done

Câu 23 [ID: 213174] If you _____ be someone, who _____ you _____?

- A. could/would/have been B. could/would/be
C. can/will/be D. are able to/will/be

Câu 24 [ID: 213175] If I _____ an Angel, I would try to make happy all the children.

- A. am B. have been C. were D. had been

Câu 25 [ID: 213176] John would be taking a great risk if he _____ his money in that business.

- A. would invest B. invested C. had invested D. invests

Câu 26 [ID: 213177] It _____ if nobody had reminded them.

- A. would have be forgot B. would have been forgot
C. would have forget D. would have been forget

Câu 27 [ID: 213178] The car _____ if somebody takes it there.

- A. will be repaired B. would be repaired
C. will been repaired D. is repair

Câu 28 [ID: 213179] You _____ to prison if you did that.

- A. would be send B. would have been sent
C. would be sent D. were sent

Câu 29 [ID: 213180] You would study Italian if it _____ here.

- A. was teaching B. were taught C. would be taught D. is taught

Câu 30 [ID: 213181] It _____ if nobody reminded them

- A. was forgotten B. would be forget
C. would be forgotten D. would forgot

Câu 31 [ID: 213182] The magazine _____ by more people if it had better articles.

- A. would be reading B. would read C. would be read D. been read

Câu 32 [ID: 213183] The joke would not be funny if it _____ into French.

- A. were translated B. is translated C. was be translated D. translated

Câu 33 [ID: 213184] A doctor _____ if somebody falls ill.

- A. will be cold for B. will be called for
C. will call for D. would be call for

Câu 34 [ID: 213185] Would she go if she _____?

- A. were invited B. was be invited C. have been invited D. be invited

Câu 35 [ID: 213186] He _____ the death penalty if he were found guilty.

- A. would be given B. would be gave
C. would given D. were given

Câu 36 [ID: 213187] Who would have won the World War II if the nuclear bomb _____ by the Nazis first?

- A. had be produced B. had produced
C. had been produced D. would be produced

Câu 37 [ID: 213188] The room _____ if it is not empty.

- A. couldn't be repainted B. cannot be repainted
C. could be repainted D. can be repainted

Câu 38 [ID: 213189] He _____ the death penalty if he had been found guilty.

- A. would has given B. would has been given
C. would have given D. would have been given

Câu 39 [ID: 213190] The cars _____ if we had not done such a huge advertising campaign.

- A. would not have been bought B. would not have be bought
C. would have been bought D. would not had been bought

Câu 40 [ID: 213191] If I were a better conversationalist, _____ to parties more often?

- A. I would be invited B. I would have been invited
C. would I be invited D. would I have been invited

Câu 41 [ID: 213192] Kevin never seems to get tired. I wish I _____ his energy.

- A. can have B. have had C. had D. would have

Câu 42 [ID: 213193] If I _____ him yesterday, I would have to come back tomorrow.

- A. didn't meet B. have met C. met D. hadn't met

Câu 43 [ID: 213194] If she _____ the truth, I think she'd never want to see you again.

- A. would know B. knows C. will know D. knew

Câu 44 [ID: 213195] I would never have believed _____ it with my own eyes.

- A. if I didn't see B. if I hadn't seen
C. if I haven't seen D. if I wouldn't have seen

Câu 45 [ID: 213196] I wish I had remembered your number. Otherwise, I _____ you.

- A. phoned B. would phone
C. would have phoned D. will have phone

Câu 46 [ID: 213197] Such typing mistakes _____ avoided if you had been more careful.

- A. can have been B. would be C. might have been D. should be

Câu 47 [ID: 213198] Carol was late for work this morning. But for the traffic jam, she _____ half an hour earlier.

- A. could come B. could have come C. had come D. can have come

Câu 48 [ID: 213199] Don't worry _____ home late tonight.

- A. when I'll be B. if I'll be C. unless I'll be D. if I'm

Câu 49 [ID: 213200] I _____ one of my special desserts for dinner, if you like.

- A. make B. will make C. am going to make D. am making

Câu 50 [ID: 213201] When you _____ Bob, tell him he still owes me some money.

- A. see B. are going to see C. will see D. are seeing

ĐÁP ÁN

1. B	2. A	3. A	4. B	5. D	6. A	7. B	8. C	9. A	10. B
11. A	12. B	13. C	14. D	15. D	16. C	17. C	18. B	19. A	20. B
21. B	22. A	23. B	24. C	25. B	26. B	27. A	28. C	29. B	30. C
31. C	32. A	33. B	34. A	35. A	36. C	37. B	38. D	39. A	40. C
41. C	42. D	43. D	44. B	45. C	46. C	47. B	48. D	49. B	50. A

LUYỆN TẬP 4: (ID: ET1121)

Câu 1 [ID: 213235] If I _____ a lot of money now, I _____ a new car.

- A. have/will buy B. have/would buy
C. had/will buy D. had/would buy.

Câu 2 [ID: 213236] If I _____ you, I _____ do that.

- A. am/will B. were/would
C. were/will D. had been/would.

Câu 3 [ID: 213237] If I were offered the job, I think I _____ it.

- A. take B. will take C. would take D. would have taken.

Câu 4 [ID: 213238] I would be very surprised if he _____.

- A. refuses B. refused C. had refused D. would refuse.

Câu 5 [ID: 213239] Many people would be out of work if that factory _____ down.

- A. closes B. had closed C. closed D. would close.

Câu 6 [ID: 213240] If she sold her car, she _____ much money.

- A. gets B. would get C. will get D. would have got.

Câu 7 [ID: 213241] They would be disappointed if we _____.

- A. hadn't come B. wouldn't come
C. don't come D. didn't come.

Câu 8 [ID: 213242] Would John be angry if I _____ his bicycle without asking?

- A. take B. took C. had taken D. would take.

Câu 9 [ID: 213243] She _____ terrible upset if I lost this ring.

- A. will be B. would be C. were D. had been.

Câu 10 [ID: 213244] If someone _____ in here with a gun, I would be very frightened.

- A. would walk B. walks C. had walked D. walked.

Câu 11 [ID: 213245] What would happen if you _____ to work tomorrow?

- A. don't go B. didn't go C. won't go D. wouldn't go.

Câu 12 [ID: 213246] We 'll get wet if we _____ out.

- A. go B. did go C. went D. had gone.

Câu 13 [ID: 213247] If I go shopping, I _____ some food.

- A. buy B. will buy C. would buy D. would have bought.

Câu 14 [ID: 213248] If I find it, I _____ you.

- A. will tell B. would tell C. had told D. told.

Câu 15 [ID: 213249] What would you do if you _____ a million dollars?

- A. would win B. win C. had won D. won.

Câu 16 [ID: 213250] They'd be hurt if I _____.

- A. don't go B. didn't go C. hadn't gone D. wouldn't go.

Câu 17 [ID: 213251] If we took the 6:30 train, we _____ too early.

- A. would have arrived B. arrived
C. will arrived D. would arrive.

Câu 18 [ID: 213252] If I had known you were in hospital, I _____ to see you.

- A. will go B. would go C. went D. would have gone.

Câu 19 [ID: 213253] If I _____ you, I would have said hello.

- A. had seen B. see C. saw D. would see.

Câu 20 [ID: 213254] I _____ out if I hadn't been so tired.

- A. will go B. went C. would have gone D. would go.

Câu 21 [ID: 213255] If I _____ a camera, I would have taken some pictures.

- A. have B. had C. would have D. had had.

Câu 22 [ID: 213256] You won't pass the examination _____ you study more.

- A. as long as B. unless C. if D. whether.

Câu 23 [ID: 213257] If only I _____ you wanted to invest money in business.

- A. had known B. knew C. have known D. know

Câu 24 [ID: 213258] If I were to leave my country, I _____ disappointed.

- A. probably be B. would have been C. will be D. would be.

Câu 25 [ID: 213259] If he hadn't wasted too much time, he _____ in his examination.

- A. would fail B. wouldn't fail
C. wouldn't have failed D. won't fail

Câu 26 [ID: 213260] If I had taken that English course, I _____ much progress now.

- A. had made B. would have made C. made D. would make.

Câu 27 [ID: 213261] If I were in your place, I _____ a trip to England.

- A. will make B. had made C. made. D. would make.

Câu 28 [ID: 213262] If I _____ you, I'd save some of your lottery winning.

- A. be B. were C. am D. was

Câu 29 [ID: 213263] If the car _____ larger, we would have bought it.

- A. had been B. have been C. has been D. been

Câu 30 [ID: 213264] If I had enough money, I _____ abroad to improve my English.

- A. will go B. should go C. would go D. should have go to

Câu 31 [ID: 213265] If it _____ convenient, let's go out for a drink tonight.

- A. be B. was C. were D. is

Câu 32 [ID: 213266] If you _____ time, please write to me.

- A. have B. have had C. had D. has

Câu 33 [ID: 213267] If you had the chance, _____ you go finishing?

- A. did B. would C. may D. do

Câu 34 [ID: 213268] Trees won't grow _____ there is enough water.

- A. if B. when C. unless D. as

Câu 35 [ID: 213269] If you _____ to my advice in the first place, you wouldn't be in this mess right now.

- A. listen B. had listened C. will listen D. listened

Câu 36 [ID: 213270] I wish I _____ you some money for your rent, but I'm broke myself.

- A. can lend B. could lend C. would lend D. will lend

Câu 37 [ID: 213271] If someone _____ into the store, smile and say, " May I help you?"

- A. comes B. came C. would come D. could lend

Câu 38 [ID: 213272] If you stay up late the previous night, you _____ sleepy the next morning.

- A. felt B. to feel C. feels D. will feel

Câu 39 [ID: 213273] If Peter _____ Sarah will be sad because she wants to meet him very much.

- A. comes B. do not come C. does not come D. will come

Câu 40 [ID: 213274] If his teeth still _____ he will have to go to the dentist's again.

- A. hurt B. hurts C. to hurt D. will hurt

Câu 41 [ID: 213275] If you _____ Tom , tell him I have a message for him.

- A. will meet B. would meet C. meet D. met

Câu 42 [ID: 213276] If you _____ too hot during the night, turn down the central heating.

- A. will feel B. felt C. feel D. feels.

Câu 43 [ID: 213277] If you _____ with your dictionary, I 'd like to borrow it.

- A. finish B. finished C. will finish D. are finishing.

Câu 44 [ID: 213278] If I lived nearer the centre, I _____ always late.

- A. wouldn't be B. can be C. won't be D. will be.

Câu 45 [ID: 213279] What would Lan do if she _____ the Miss World?

- A. would be B. were C. will be D. is.

Câu 46 [ID: 213280] If I _____ her, I would have said "Hi".

- A. has seen B. have seen C. saw D. had seen.

Câu 47 [ID: 213281] If she had read the passage more slowly, the candidate _____.

- A. understood. B. would have understood
C. will understood D. would understand.

Câu 48 [ID: 213282] If it _____, they will not go out.

- A. rains B. rained C. rain D. raining.

Câu 49 [ID: 213283] Jane cannot complete the work if you _____ her.

- A. help B. don't help C. helped D. won't help

Câu 50 [ID: 213284] Betty will not go to the party unless John _____ too.

- A. go B. went C. going D. goes

ĐÁP ÁN

1. D	2. B	3. C	4. B	5. C	6. B	7. D	8. B	9. B	10. D
11. B	12. A	13. B	14. A	15. D	16. B	17. D	18. D	19. A	20. C
21. D	22. B	23. A	24. D	25. C	26. D	27. D	28. B	29. A	30. C
31. D	32. A	33. B	34. C	35. B	36. B	37. A	38. D	39. C	40. A
41. C	42. C	43. B	44. A	45. B	46. D	47. B	48. A	49. B	50. D

LUYỆN TẬP 5: (ID: ET1122)

Câu 1 [ID: 214824] She feels lonely because she doesn't know many people there. She wishes she _____ more people.

- A. will know B. knew C. knows D. has known

Câu 2 [ID: 214825] If I _____ the flu, I would have joined you for the trip.

- A. hadn't had B. haven't had C. didn't have D. had has

Câu 3 [ID: 214826] "I'm not staying any longer." "I wish you _____."

- A. can B. will C. are D. were

Câu 4 [ID: 214827] I miss my old motorbike, I wish I _____ it. I had it for years.

- A. I didn't sell B. hadn't sold C. had sold D. haven't sold

A. didn't buy it B. hasn't bought it
C. wouldn't have bought it D. hadn't bought it

A. had been there B. was there
C. could have been there D. should have been there

A. will contact B. would have contacted
C. would contact D. had contacted

A. could study B. had studied
C. have studied D. would have studied

A. brought B. would have brought
C. could have brought D. had brought

A. didn't speak B. hadn't spoken
C. wouldn't have spoken D. shouldn't have spoken

A. dissolves B. would dissolve C. could dissolve D. dissolved

A. If you'll have enough time B. If you have enough time
C. Unless you have enough time D. Unless you can have enough time

A. weren't
B. hasn't been
C. hadn't been
D. wouldn't have been

A. met B. meet C. could meet D. will meet

A. hadn't opened B. couldn't open
C. weren't be able to open D. wouldn't have opened

A. are trying B. would try C. tried D. have tried

Câu 17 [ID: 214840] I wouldn't have to take this course if my English ____ better.

- A. were B. had been C. would be D. would have been

Câu 18 [ID: 214841] If we hadn't got lost, we ____ arrived much earlier.

- A. had B. would be C. might be D. could have

Câu 19 [ID: 214842] I wish I ____ more careful with my money in the future.

- A. would be B. should be C. could be D. had been

Câu 20 [ID: 214843] "You speak English well." "Yes, but I wish I ____ another foreign language well too."

- A. speak B. can speak C. would speak D. could speak

Câu 21 [ID: 214844] "Did you watch the football match late last night?" "No, I didn't, but I wish I ____."

- A. were B. have had C. had D. did

Câu 22 [ID: 214845] "I doubt whether I can get through the test." "If you did as I told you, you ____".

- A. can succeed B. could succeed
C. had succeeded D. would have succeeded

Câu 23 [ID: 214846] "I'm too tired to study." "If you hadn't watched that late movie last night, you ____ so tired now."

- A. wouldn't be B. hadn't been
C. wouldn't have been D. would have been

Câu 24 [ID: 214847] "Did you invest that company, Carol?" "Yes, but now I wish I ____".

- A. didn't B. hadn't C. did D. had

Câu 25 [ID: 214848] If I had known that you couldn't eat eel, I ____ bought it.

- A. wouldn't B. won't have C. hadn't D. wouldn't have

Câu 26 [ID: 214849] Without the life-jackets, most passengers ____ drowned in that accident.

- A. would have been B. would be C. had been D. were

Câu 27 [ID: 214850] Hurry! We're got to leave the house immediately. Otherwise, _____ the opening ceremony.

- A. we'd miss B. we'd have missed
C. we miss D. we're going to miss

Câu 28 [ID: 214851] A nation's balance of trade is considered unfavorable if it _____ more money on imports than it gains from exports.

- A. will spend B. would spend C. can spend D. spends

Câu 29 [ID: 214852] Many people who live near nuclear plants are concerned. _____ go wrong, the impact on the surrounding area can be disastrous.

- A. Something would B. Something will
C. Should something D. Does something

A. will get B. might get
C. would have gotten D. will have gotten

A. would stop B. are going to stop C. stop D. can stop

A. Should I be B. Had I been
C. Would I have been D. Would I be

A. can fly B. will fly C. flies D. could fly

A. became B. would have become
C. will become D. would become

A. had been lifted B. is being lifted C. would be lifted D. is lifting

A. If she saw the signal, she would stop her car.
B. If she had seen the signal, she would stop her car.
C. If she had seen the signal, she would have stopped her car.
D. If she saw the signal, she would have stopped her car.

A. He would be here in time if his flight were not delayed.
B. He would have been here in time if his flight hadn't been delayed.
C. He would be here in time if his flight hadn't been delayed.
D. He would have been here in time if his flight weren't delayed.

A. Unless B. a bowl of C. under D. will

A. If B. to use C. would D. to face

Câu 40 [ID: 214863] If I am 10 centimeters taller, I would play basketball.

- A. am B. centimeters C. taller D. would play

Câu 41 [ID: 214864] If she bought that house now, she ran out of money.

- A. bought B. now C. ran D. of

Câu 42 [ID: 214865] What you would do if you could speak French well?

- A. What B. you would do C. could D. well

Câu 43 [ID: 214866] If I were you, I will go to the dentist's and have the tooth checked.

- A. were B. will go C. the dentist's D. checked

Câu 44 [ID: 214867] If I had known he is not at home, I wouldn't have gone all the way to his house.

- A. had known B. is not
C. wouldn't have gone D. to

Câu 45 [ID: 214868] If I had known that the road were flooded, I would never have taken that way.

- A. had known B. were flooded C. would D. have taken

Câu 46 [ID: 214870] If the doctors find in the remedy, a lot of people would be saved.

- A. the doctors B. find in C. a lot of D. would be

Câu 47 [ID: 214871] If we will reduce the speed of population growth, there will be less pressure on the earth.

- A. will reduce B. population growth C. less D. on

Câu 48 [ID: 214872] If he weren't too old, he would apply to the job as a reporter.

- A. weren't B. would C. to the D. as a

Câu 49 [ID: 214873] If drivers obeyed the speed limit, fewer accidents occur.

- A. drivers B. speed limit C. fewer D. occur

ĐÁP ÁN

1. B	2. A	3. D	4. B	5. D	6. A	7. B	8. B	9. A	10. B
11. A	12. B	13. C	14. B	15. D	16. C	17. A	18. D	19. A	20. D
21. C	22. B	23. A	24. B	25. D	26. A	27. A	28. D	29. C	30. C
31. A	32. B	33. D	34. C	35. A	36. C	37. B	38. A	39. C	40. A
41. C	42. B	43. B	44. B	45. B	46. B	47. A	48. C	49. D	

C- THI ONLINE

Truy cập ☒ ID: ET1123, ET1124, ET1125.

GÓC GIẢI TRÍ

Hôm nay, chúng ta sẽ cùng đọc một số câu danh ngôn nổi tiếng Anh - Việt về học tập và ước mơ. Đây là các câu cô viết trong một cuốn sổ để đầu giường và mỗi sáng khi thức dậy, cô đều đọc chúng đấy nhé.

- Intelligence is the wife, imagination is the mistress, memory is the servant. (Victor Hugo).

Trí thông minh là vợ, trí tưởng tượng là người tình, trí nhớ là người hầu.

- Dreams do come true, if we only wish hard enough. You can have anything in life if you will sacrifice everything else for it. (James M. Barrie)

Những ước mơ chỉ trở thành hiện thực nếu chúng ta thực sự mong muốn. Bạn có thể có được bất kỳ điều gì trong cuộc sống nếu bạn dám hy sinh tất cả mọi thứ cho nó.

- Live as if you were to die tomorrow, learn as if you were to live forever. (Mahatma Gandhi)

Sống như thể bạn sẽ chết ngày mai, học như thể bạn sẽ sống mãi mãi.

- If we do not plant knowledge when young, it will give us no shade when we are old. (Lãnh chúa Chesterfield)

Nếu ta không gieo trồng tri thức khi còn trẻ, nó sẽ không cho ta bóng râm khi ta về già.

- Learn to... be what you are, and learn to resign with a good grace all that you are not. (Henri Frederic Amiel)

Học... học để là chính mình, và học để từ bỏ với vẻ thanh cao những gì không phải là mình.

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 7: CÂU CHỦ ĐỘNG, BỊ ĐỘNG

A – LÝ THUYẾT

Trong tiết học này, cô sẽ giới thiệu cho các em về câu bị động, cách chuyển từ câu chủ động sang câu bị động,... Câu bị động là một dạng thức câu có thể giúp chúng ta nói hoặc viết ở một tầm cao mới.

Đây là dạng bài quan trọng trong các đề thi tiếng Anh, chúng ta cùng tìm hiểu các em nhé!

I. KHÁI NIỆM CÂU CHỦ ĐỘNG, BỊ ĐỘNG (ID: EV1048)

➤ Câu chủ động: là câu mà chủ ngữ là người hoặc vật thực hiện hành động.

Eg: People speak English all over the world.

➤ Câu bị động: là câu mà chủ ngữ là người hoặc vật chịu sự tác động của hành động.

Eg: English is spoken all over the world.

Lưu ý: Không phải cứ chủ ngữ là người thì là chủ động, chủ ngữ là vật thì là bị động.

Eg: The students were punished yesterday.

Hanoi has changed a lot in the past five years.

Lưu ý: Chúng ta không dùng cấu trúc bị động với các nội động từ như “fit, suit, have, resemble, look, like, hold, contain, mean,...”

Eg: They have a nice house.

Don't say: A nice house is had by them.

II. QUY TẮC CHUYỂN CÂU CHỦ ĐỘNG SANG BỊ ĐỘNG

To be + Past participle

❖ Thể bị động của các thì:

	Quá khứ	Hiện tại	Tương lai
Đơn	Was/were + PII	Am/is/are + PII	Will + be + PII
Tiếp diễn	Was/were + being+ PII	Am/is/are + being+ PII	_____
Hoàn thành	Had+ been + PII	Have/has + been+ PII	Will have + been + PII

Tương lai gần	Động từ khuyết thiếu
am/is/are + going to be + PII	Modal verbs (can/could/may/might/must/ought to/should) + be + PII

❖ Một số lưu ý quan trọng:

- Đôi khi "get" được dùng thay cho "be" để diễn đạt những sự việc gây bất ngờ hoặc khó chịu:

Eg: There was an accident in the street but nobody got hurt. = nobody was hurt.

The eggs got broken. = The eggs were broken.

- Trong câu bị động, nếu tân ngữ không xác định (people, them, someone, him, her....) thì có thể lược bỏ đi.

Eg: We don't water the flowers in the morning.

The flowers are not watered in the morning.

- Vị trí của trạng từ hoặc cụm trạng từ trong câu bị động:

- Đối với trạng từ chỉ cách thức của hành động, thì nó sẽ đi theo động từ.

Eg: The problem has been carefully studied by the scientists.

- "By + O" sẽ đứng sau trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn và đứng trước trạng từ chỉ thời gian:

Eg: He was found in the forest by the police.

The report was typed by the secretary this morning.

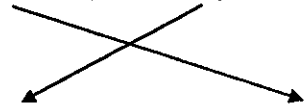
- Ta có thể dùng "with" (không dùng "by") để chỉ dụng cụ, công cụ hoặc nguyên liệu được sử dụng.

Eg: He was shot (by the policeman) with a rifle.

The room was filled with smoke.

1. Simple present:

S + V (s/es) + Object



S + am/is/are + PII + by + O

Eg: We don't watch films in the evening.

=> Films aren't watched in the evening.

They sweep the streets every night.

=> The streets are swept every night.

What do they call the new hotel?

=> What is the new hotel called?

2. Present continuous:

S + am/is/are + V.ing + Object

S + am/is/are + being + PII + by + O

Eg: They are building a bridge over the river.

=> A bridge is being built over the river.

He isn't decorating the room today.

=> The room isn't being decorated today.

Are they upgrading the road leading to the city centre?

=> Is the road leading to the city centre being upgraded (by them)?

3. Present perfect:

S + have/has + PII + Object

S + have/has + been + PII + by + O

Lưu ý: Thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn không có dạng bị động.

Eg: They haven't moved anything in your room since 1999.

=> Anything in the room hasn't been moved since 1999.

=> Nothing in the room has been moved since 1999.

The terrorist has kept three hostages for a week.

=> Three hostages have been kept by the terrorist for a week.

4. Simple past

S + Past of Verb (V-ed/P-Irregular) + Object

S + was/were + PII + by + O

Eg: The thieves broke into the house.

=> The house was broken into by the thieves.

They didn't allow Tom to take these books home.

=> Tom wasn't allowed to take these books home.

5. Past continuous:

S + was/were + V-ing + Object

S + was/were + being + PII + by + O

Eg: They were doing a physical experiment when I was there.

=> A physical experiment was being done by them when I was there.

Tom was writing 2 poems.

=> Two poems were being written by Tom.

6. Past perfect:

S + had + PII + Object

S + had + been + PII + by + O

Lưu ý: Không có bị động của thì quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn.

Eg: Nobody told me that they had discharged John from hospital.

=> I was not told that John had been discharged from hospital.

They had taken the victim to hospital before the police came.

=> The victim had been taken to hospital before the police came.

7. Simple future:

S + will/shall + V + Object

S + will/shall + be + PII + by + O

Lưu ý: Thì tương lai tiếp diễn không có dạng bị động.

Eg: They will change the date of the meeting again.

=> The date of the meeting will be changed again.

The examiner will read the passage three times.

=> The passage will be read three times by the examiner.

8. Future perfect

S + will/shall + V + Object

S + will/shall + have been + PII + by + O

Eg: By the time you come back, they will have finished the project.

=> By the time you come back, the project will have been finished.

By the time you come back here in 5 years' time, they will have knocked down those houses.

=> Those houses will have been knocked down by the time you come back here in 5 years' time.

9. Near future

S + am/is/are + going to + V-inf + O

S + am/is/are + going to be + PII + by + O

Eg: We are going to make him the monitor of our class.

=> He is going to be made the monitor of our class.

10. Modals and Auxiliary in the passive voice

S + modal verbs (can/could/may/might/must/ought to/should) + V-inf + O.

S + modal verbs (can/could/may/might/must/ought to/should) + be + PII + by + O.

Eg: He can't repair my bike.

=> My bike can't be repaired.

III. CÁC TRƯỜNG HỢP ĐẶC BIỆT (ID: EV1049)

1. Verb with 2 objects

S + V + indirect object + direct object

S + V + direct object + preposition + indirect object

Eg: He gave the police some information.

=> The police were given some information.

He gave some information to the police.

=> Some information was given to the police.

Lưu ý:

- Một số động từ thường dùng trong cấu trúc này gồm: allow, award, ask, give, sell, send, show, lend, pay, promise, tell, offer, teach, refuse, write.

Eg: Tom sent you some beautiful flowers.

=> You were sent some beautiful flowers by Tom.

=> Some beautiful flowers were sent to you by Tom.

2. Động từ nguyên mẫu

S + passive verb + to + V-inf

Eg: He asked me to send a stamp enveloped.

=> I was asked to send a stamped enveloped.

They advised us to come early.

=> We were advised to come early.

❖ Make/Help/Let

Active	Passive
Make sb do sth Eg: -The teacher is making us work hard. - My parents made me study all day.	Be made to do sth Eg: -We are being made to work hard by our teacher. - I was made to study all day by my parents.
Help sb (to) do sth Eg: - He helped me (to) repair the washing machine. - Ms Phuong helps me study English.	Be helped to do sth Eg: - I was helped (to) repair the washing machine. - I am helped to study English by Ms Phuong.
Let sb do sth Eg: - His parents didn't let him buy a motorbike.	Be let do sth (or be allowed to do sth) Eg: He wasn't let buy (wasn't allowed to buy) a motorbike by his parents.

3. See/Notice/Hear/Listen to/Watch

Active

Passive

See

seen

Notice

Sb do st

Sb

noticed

to do st

Hear

sb doing st

heard

doing st

Listen to

listened

Watch

watched

Eg: Someone saw him pick up a stone and throw it at the riot police.

=> He was seen to pick up a stone and to throw it at the riot police.

They saw him walking with his friend before he got lost.

=> He was seen walking with his friend before he got lost.

4. Bị động tân ngữ

a) Khác chủ ngữ

S + V + Object + passive infinitive (to be + P2)

Eg: I want you to repair the car now.

=> I want the car to be repaired (by you) now.

I'd like someone to take me to the Opera House.

=> I'd like to be taken to the Opera House.

b) Chung chủ ngữ

S + V + to be + P2

Eg: He likes people to call him "Sir".

=> He likes to be called "Sir".

I prefer you to call me by my first name.

S + V + passive gerund (being + P2)

=> I prefer to be called by my first name.

5. Passive gerund

Eg: I like people praising me.

=> I like being praised.

She hates people staring at her when she is in the street.

=> She hates being stared at when she is in the street.

Lưu ý: Với cấu trúc "need to + V-inf" mang nghĩa chủ động, thì khi chuyển sang bị động, ta sử dụng cấu trúc

need + V-ing = need to be + P2

Eg: This car needs to be serviced/this car needs servicing.

I need to clean my shirt because it needs cleaning/to be cleaned.

6. Động từ + mệnh đề THAT (ID: EV1050)

Một số động từ quy định: say, believe, think, consider, report, know, expect, understand, allege, acknowledge, estimate, rumour, explain, assume, presume, suppose, announce có thể dùng với một trong hai cấu trúc sau:

It is/was + Past participle + that + clause

Chú ý: Cấu trúc trên chỉ tương đương với câu chủ động có chủ ngữ số nhiều với nghĩa nói chung: people, everybody...

Eg: People say that he is 100 years old.

=> It is said that he is 100 years old.

People expect that the strike will end soon.

=> It is expected that the strike will end soon.

Everybody says that there is a secret tunnel between those two houses.

=> It is said that there is a secret tunnel between those two houses.

S + to be + P2 + To Verb (1)
 To be + V-ing (2)
 To + Have + P2 (3)
 To have been + V-ing (4)

- Dùng (1) khi động từ trong mệnh đề phụ được chia ở thì hiện tại đơn, hoặc tương lai đơn:

People said that he was a dedicated worker.

=> He was said to be a dedicated worker.

He is said to be 100 years old.

The strike is expected to end soon.

There is said to be a secret tunnel between those two houses.

- Dùng (2) khi động từ trong mệnh đề phụ được chia ở thì hiện tại tiếp diễn, hoặc tương lai tiếp diễn:

They think that the terrorists are hiding in the mountain

=> The terrorists are thought to be hiding in the mountain.

People believe that she is studying abroad.

=> She is believed to be studying abroad.

- Dùng (3) khi động từ trong mệnh đề phụ được chia ở thì hiện tại hoàn thành, hoặc quá khứ đơn:

People say that he escaped to a neutral country.

=> He is said to have escaped to a neutral country.

People think that she has made progress in her studies.

=> She is thought to have made progress in her studies.

People allege that he stole the money.

=> He is alleged to have stolen the money.

- Dùng (4) khi động từ trong mệnh đề phụ được chia ở thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn, hoặc tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn:

People say that he has been playing football since he was 5.

=> He is said to have been playing football since he was 5.

Lưu ý: Be supposed to (do) có thể được dùng theo hai nghĩa sau:

Tương đương nghĩa với "be said to + V-inf" (Được cho rằng)

This film is said/supposed to be very interesting.

Why was he arrested? He was supposed to have kicked a policeman.

Để nói bốn phần hoặc nghĩa vụ ai đó phải làm gì tương đương với cấu trúc:

"It's somebody's duty to + V.inf"

It's her duty to make tea at 8 o'clock.

=> She is supposed to make tea at 8 o'clock.

It's her duty to lock the door after the school finishes.

=> She is supposed to lock....

- Đôi khi *was/were supposed to* còn được dùng để nói một kế hoạch, sự sắp xếp nhưng thường khác so với thực tế xảy ra:

The train was supposed to arrive at 11.30 but it was an hour late.

You were supposed to clean the windows. Why didn't you do it?

7. *that ...should + V.inf*

Một số các động từ như: advise, agree, arrange, ask, beg, command, decide, demand, determine, insist, order, propose, recommend, request, stipulate, suggest, urge, prefer,... thường được diễn đạt ở dạng bị động bằng mệnh đề "that" (clause)

S + V + that + S + (should) + be + P2

Eg: He insisted that his son (should) be named after his grandfather.

They have decided to sell the house

=> They have decided that the house (should) be sold.

They suggested making the tests easier.

=> They suggested that the tests should be made easier.

She advised that we should keep the gate locked/She advised keeping the gate locked.

=> She advised that the gate should be kept locked.

Ngoài ra, chúng ta còn có dạng bị động đặc biệt với một số tính từ, như: *advisable, better, desirable, essential, imperative, important, natural, necessary, anxious, determined*

S + to be + adj + that + S + should + be + P2

It is essential that rare animals (should) be protected.

It is essential for him to be prepared for this./It is essential that he (should) be prepared for this.

8. Động từ + tân ngữ + bổ ngữ của tân ngữ.

Eg: They elected Mr. Sanderson president. => Mr. Sanderson was elected president.

9. Câu mệnh lệnh (V + O/Don't + V + O)

Let + Object + be + P2

Eg: Write your name here. => Let your name be written here.

10. Câu bị động truyền khiến

Active	Passive
Have sb do something/get sb to do something	have/get something done (by sb)
Eg: - I have my younger brother clean the floor. (- He has the barber cut his hair.	- I have the floor cleaned by my younger brother. - He has his hair cut.

Cấu trúc trên được dùng theo hai nghĩa sau:

a. Để nói ta thu xếp để người khác làm giúp mình một việc gì (không tự mình làm).

Eg: Jill repaired the roof. (= She repaired it herself).

=> Jill had the roof repaired. (= She arranged for somebody else to repair it).

b. Để nói một sự việc không hay xảy ra với vật sở hữu của ai/cái gì:

Eg: George's nose was broken in a fight.

=> George had his nose broken in a fight.

Jack's passport was stolen a few weeks ago.

=> Jack had his passport stolen a few weeks ago.

IV. BÀI TẬP LUYỆN TẬP CHỮA TRONG VIDEO

BÀI TẬP LUYỆN TẬP 1 (ID: EV1051)

EXERCISE 1: Câu bị động đơn giản

1. My father waters this flower every morning.
2. John invited Fiona to his birthday party last night.
3. Her mother is preparing the dinner in the kitchen.
4. We should clean our teeth twice a day.
5. Our teachers have explained the English grammar
6. Some drunk drivers caused the accident in this city.
7. Tom will visit his parents next month.
8. The manager didn't phone the secretary this morning.
9. Did Mary buy this beautiful dress?
10. I won't hang these old pictures in the living room.
11. The German didn't build this factory during the Second World War.
12. The Greens are going to paint this house and these cars for Christmas Day.
13. Ann had fed the cats before she went to the cinema.
14. The students have discussed the pollution problems since last week.

15. Have the thieves stolen the most valuable painting in the national museum
16. Some people will interview the new president on TV.

EXERCISE 2: Tân ngữ trực tiếp và gián tiếp

1. The waiter brings me this dish.
2. Our friends send these postcards to us.
3. Their grandmother told them this story when they visited her last week.
4. Tim ordered this train ticket for his mother.
5. You didn't show me the special cameras.
6. She showed her ticket to the airline agent.
7. He lends his friend his new shoes.
8. She left her relatives five million pounds.
9. The shop assistant handed these boxes to the customer.
10. The board awarded the first prize to the reporter.
11. Have you sent the Christmas cards to your family?
12. The committee appointed Alice secretary for the meeting.
13. He hides the broken cup in the drawer.
14. They keep this room tidy all the time.
15. They all voted the party a great success.
16. We gave Ann some bananas and some flowers.

EXERCISE 3: Câu bị động tường thuật

1. They told me that you were the best architect in this city.
2. She reported that the flowers had been killed by frost.
3. Some people inform that the director is going to take a business trip to England
4. That officer announced that the meeting was delayed until next week.
5. He discovered that this cotton was grown in Egypt.
6. They promise that the performance will start on time.
7. He recommends that we should stay at the city center.
8. We believed that Alice would pass the driving test.
9. The director notifies all the workers that they will have to work extra hard this month.
10. They have persuaded me that they will go with me to the stadium.
11. They have decided that the company will go to the beach together at the weekend.
12. People think that Maradona is the best football player in the 20th century.
13. They find that the job is not suitable for a girl like her.
14. The teacher explained that this powerful engine pulled the train.

EXERCISE 4: Câu bị động sai khiến

1. I had my nephew paint the gate last week.
2. She will have Peter wash her car tomorrow.
3. They have her tell the story again.
4. John gets his sister to clean his shirt.
5. Anne had had a friend type her composition.
6. Rick will have a barber cut his hair.
7. I will get the dressmaker to make a new dress.
8. He had a mechanic repair his car.
9. She often gets the technician to maintain the heater.
10. They had the police arrest the shoplifter.
11. Are you going to have the shoemaker repair your shoes?
12. I must have the dentist check my teeth.
13. She will have a veterinary surgeon examine her dog.
14. We had a man take this photograph when we were on holiday last summer.

ĐÁP ÁN**EXERCISE 1: Câu bị động đơn giản**

1. My father waters this flower every morning.
=> *This flower is watered by my father every morning.*
2. John invited Fiona to his birthday party last night.
=> *Fiona was invited to John's birthday party last month.*
3. Her mother is preparing the dinner in the kitchen.
=> *The dinner is being prepared in the kitchen by her mother.*
4. We should clean our teeth twice a day.
=> *Our teeth should be cleaned twice a day.*
5. Our teachers have explained the English grammar.
=> *The English grammar has been explained by our teachers.*
6. Some drunk drivers caused the accident in this city.
=> *The accident was caused in this city by some drunk drivers.*
7. Tom will visit his parents next month.
=> *Tom's parents will be visited next month.*
8. The manager didn't phone the secretary this morning.
=> *The secretary wasn't phoned by the manager this morning.*
9. Did Mary buy this beautiful dress?
=> *Was this beautiful dress bought by Mary?*

10. I won't hang these old pictures in the living room.

=> *These old pictures won't be hung in the living room.*

11. The German didn't build this factory during the Second World War.

=> *This factory wasn't built by the German during the Second World War.*

12. The Greens are going to paint this house and these cars for Christmas Day.

=> *This house and these cars are going to be painted for Christmas day by the Greens.*

13. Ann had fed the cats before she went to the cinema.

=> *The cats had been fed by Ann before she went to the cinema.*

14. The students have discussed the pollution problems since last week.

=> *The pollution problems have been discussed by the students since last week.*

15. Have the thieves stolen the most valuable painting in the national museum?

=> *Has the most valuable painting in the national museum been stolen by the thieves?*

16. Some people will interview the new president on TV.

=> *The new president will be interviewed on TV.*

EXERCISE 2: Tân ngữ trực tiếp và gián tiếp

1. The waiter brings me this dish.

=> *I am brought this dish by the waiter.*

=> *This dish is brought to me by the waiter.*

2. Our friends send these postcards to us.

=> *These postcards are sent to us by our friends.*

3. Their grandmother told them this story when they visited her last week.

=> *They were told this story by their grandmother when they visited her last week.*

=> *This story was told to them by their grandmother when they visited her last week.*

4. Tim ordered this train ticket for his mother.

=> *This train ticket was ordered for Tim's mother.*

5. You didn't show me the special cameras.

=> *I wasn't shown the special cameras.*

=> *The special cameras weren't shown to me.*

6. She showed her ticket to the airline agent.

=> *Her ticket was shown to the airline agent.*

7. He lends his friend his new shoes.

=> *His friend is lent his new shoes.*

=> *His new shoes are lent to his friends.*

8. She left her relatives five million pounds.

=> *Her relatives were left five million pounds.*

=> *Five million pounds was left to her relatives.*

9. The shop assistant handed these boxes to the customer.
=> *These boxes were handed to the customer by the shop assistant.*
10. The board awarded the first prize to the reporter.
=> *The first prize was awarded to the reporter by the board.*
11. Have you sent the Christmas cards to your family?
=> *Have the Christmas cards been sent to your family?*
12. The committee appointed Alice secretary for the meeting
=> *Alice was appointed secretary for the meeting by the committee.*
13. He hides the broken cup in the drawer.
=> *The broken cup is hidden in the drawer.*
14. They keep this room tidy all the time.
=> *This room is kept tidy all the time.*
15. They all voted the party a great success.
=> *The party was voted a great success by them all/by all of them.*
16. We gave Ann some bananas and some flowers.
=> *Ann was given some bananas and some flowers.*

EXERCISE 3: Câu bị động tường thuật

1. They told me that you were the best architect in this city.
=> *You were told to be the best architect in this city.*
2. She reported that the flowers had been killed by frost.
=> *It was reported that the flowers had been killed by frost.*
=> *The flowers were reported to have been killed by frost.*
3. Some people inform that the director is going to take a business trip to England.
=> *The director is informed to be going to take a business trip to England.*
4. That officer announced that the meeting was delayed until next week.
=> *The meeting was announced have been delayed by that officer until next week.*
5. He discovered that this cotton was grown in Egypt.
=> *This cotton was discovered have been grown in Egypt.*
6. They promise that the performance will start on time.
=> *The performance is promised to start on time.*
7. He recommends that we should stay at the city center.
=> *It is recommended that we should stay at the city center.*
=> *We are recommended to stay at the city center.*
8. We believed that Alice would pass the driving test
=> *It was believed that Alice would pass the driving test.*
=> *Alice was believed to pass the driving test.*

9. The director notifies all the workers that they will have to work extra hard this month.

=> *All the workers are notified by the director that they will have to work extra hard this month.*

10. They have persuaded me that they will go with me to the stadium.

=> *I have been persuaded that they will go with me to the stadium.*

11. They have decided that the company will go to the beach together at the weekend.

=> *It has been decided that the company will go to the beach together at the weekend.*

=> *The company has been decided to go to the beach together at the weekend.*

12. People think that Maradona is the best football player in the 20th century.

=> *It is thought that Maradona is the best football player in the 20th century.*

=> *Maradona is thought to be the best football player in the 20th century.*

13. They find that the job is not suitable for a girl like her.

=> *It is found that the job is not suitable for a girl like her.*

=> *The job is found to be not suitable for a girl like her.*

14. The teacher explained that this powerful engine pulled the train.

=> *It was explained that this powerful engine had pulled the train.*

=> *This powerful engine was explained to have pulled the train by the teacher.*

EXERCISE 4: Câu bị động sai khiến

1. I had my nephew paint the gate last week.

=> *I had the gate painted by my nephew last week.*

2. She will have Peter wash her car tomorrow.

=> *She will have her car washed by Peter tomorrow.*

3. They have her tell the story again.

=> *They have the story told again.*

4. John gets his sister to clean his shirt.

=> *John gets his shirt cleaned by his sister.*

5. Anne had had a friend type her composition.

=> *Anne has had her composition typed.*

6. Rick will have a barber cut his hair.

=> *Rick will have his hair cut.*

7. I will get the dressmaker to make a new dress.

=> *I will get a new dress made.*

8. He had a mechanic repair his car.

=> *He had his car repaired.*

9. She often gets the technician to maintain the heater.

=> *She often gets the heater maintained.*

10. They had the police arrest the shoplifter.

=> *They had the shoplifter arrested.*

11. Are you going to have the shoemaker repair your shoes?

=> *Are you going to have your shoes repaired?*

12. I must have the dentist check my teeth.

=> *I must have my teeth checked.*

13. She will have a veterinary surgeon examine her dog.

=> *She will have her dog examined.*

14. We had a man take this photograph when we were on holiday last summer.

=> *We had this photograph taken when we were on holiday last summer.*

BÀI TẬP LUYỆN TẬP 2 (ID: EV1052)

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer.

1. The parcel _____ to him before his birthday.

A. will be sented

B. will been sent

C. will be sent

D. will be send

2. Is the new computer system _____ next month?

A. been installed

B. being installed

C. being installed by people

D. be installed

3. _____ believed to be over 300 species of trees in EL Yunque rain forest in Puerto Rico.

A. There are

B. They are

C. It is

D. It has been

4. It is advised that not only Tam but also his friends _____ punctual.

A. be

B. are

C. is

D. were

5. About six million years ago, the Mediterranean sea _____.

A. is said to have evaporated-depositing

B. says to be evaporating deposit

C. is said to evaporate-deposited

D. is said having evaporated-to deposit

6. Go on, finish the food. It needs _____ up because it won't stay fresh until tomorrow.

A. eat

B. eating

C. to eat

D. eaten

7. When Nadine arrived, she soon _____ at all her jokes.

A. had everyone laughed

B. had laughing everyone

C. had everyone laughing

D. had laughed everyone

8. Who wrote the report on the air pollution?
- A. Whom was the report written on the air pollution by?
 B. By whom was the report on the air pollution written?
 C. By whom was the report written on the air pollution?
 D. No answer is correct.
9. What I fear most off all is that we _____ in what refers to the building of a new market in West Crane. The local people seem to be very wary about it.
- A. might misinterpret
 B. might have misinterpreted
 C. won't be misinterpreting
 D. might be misinterpreted
10. When the old school friends met, a lot of happy memories _____ back.
- A. had brought
 B. were brought
 C. brought
 D. had been brought
11. The well is said _____.
- A. to dig by the local people ages ago
 B. to have been dug by the local people ages ago
 C. to be dug by the local people ages ago
 D. dug by the local people ages ago.
12. The old church _____ in the last storm.
- A. is said to have collapsed
 B. is said to be collapsed
 C. is said that it was collapsed
 D. is said to have been collapsed
13. Despite all my anxiety, I _____ for the job I wanted.
- A. was hiring
 B. hired
 C. got hiring
 D. got hired
14. He couldn't afford to _____ his car repaired.
- A. pay
 B. make
 C. do
 D. get
15. The bank is reported in the local newspaper _____ in broad daylight yesterday.
- A. to be robbed
 B. robbed
 C. to have been robbed
 D. having been robbed
16. "Was Jack wearing a seat belt?" – "Yes, he would have _____ been injured without it."
- A. injure
 B. injured
 C. been injuring
 D. been injured
17. The damage caused by poachers and illegal lumberjacks must _____ to be belived.
- A. see
 B. be seen
 C. to be seen
 D. seen

18. I got everyone in the family _____ Jane's birthday card before I sent it to her.
A. sign
B. signed
C. to sign
D. having signed
19. Mary informed the police of the news.
A. The police was informed of the news.
B. The news was informed of the police.
C. The police were informed of the news.
D. The police of the news was informed by Mary.
20. The teacher gave us two very difficult exercises.
A. We were given two very difficult exercises.
B. Two very difficult exercises were given to the teacher.
C. Two very difficult exercises were given to us.
D. Both (A) and (C) are correct.
21. Brian told me that somebody had attacked him in the street.
A. I was told by Brian that somebody was attacked in the street.
B. I told Brian that he had been attacked in the street.
C. Brian told me that have been attacked in the street.
D. Brian told me that he had been attacked in the street.
22. Keep the machine always clean.
A. The machine is always kept clean.
B. The machine should be kept clean always.
C. Let the machine always be kept clean
D. Let the machine always be kept cleaned.
23. Excuse me. Is this seat?
A. taking
B. took
C. occupy
D. taken
24. Ted _____ by a bee while he was sitting in the garden.
A. got sting
B. got stung
C. get stung
D. gets stung
25. I let my girlfriend choose her own ring.
A. She chooses her own ring.
B. My girlfriend was allowed to choose her own ring.
C. My girlfriend was let choose her own ring.
D. A & C are correct

26. Respect your parents always.
- Let your parents be always respected.
 - Let your parents always respected.
 - Let your parents always be respected.
27. A number of people _____ following a demonstration in the Serbian capital, Belgrade.
- have arrested
 - have been arrested
 - has arrested
 - has been arrested
28. Whatever you do, don't let yourself _____.
- cheated
 - to be cheated
 - be cheated
 - to cheated
29. It is highly desirable that every effort _____ to reduce expenditure.
- is made
 - be made
 - has been made
 - B & C are correct

Exercise 2: Rewrite these sentences.

- It is your duty to obey him.
- They began to build the bridge two months ago.
- Don't do that silly thing again.
- They didn't let the children come in.
- Dust covers the table.
- They suggested buying flowers to give their teacher.
- People often make fun of me. I hate it.
- It is impossible to write an essay in 20 minutes.
- They saw her picking a wallet.
- The garage is going to repair my car next week.
- They think he was playing tennis at 3pm yesterday.
- You need clean your car.
- The hurricane blew the roof off the house.
- People say that there is a lot of oil under the North Sea.
- They expected me to finish my work early.
- She decided to rebuild the house.
- Don't let others see you.
- The doctor advised him to eat more.
- She remembers people taking her to the zoo.
- People think that he was born in a rich family.

ĐÁP ÁN

Exercise 1:

1. C	2. B	3. A	4. A	5. A	6. B	7. B	8. B	9. D	10. B
11. B	12. A	13. D	14. D	15. C	16. D	17. B	18. C	19. C	20. D
21. D	22. C	23. D	24. B	25. D	26. C	27. B	28. C	29. B	

Exercise 2:

1. It is your duty to obey him.

=> *You're supposed to obey him.*

2. They began to build the bridge two months ago.

=> *The bridge began to be built two months ago.*

3. Don't do that silly thing again.

=> *That silly thing mustn't be done again.*

4. They didn't let the children come in.

=> *The children weren't allowed to come in.*

5. Dust covers the table.

=> *The table is covered with dust.*

6. They suggested buying flowers to give their teacher.

=> *They suggested that flowers be bought to give teacher.*

7. People often make fun of me. I hate it.

=> *I hate being made fun of.*

8. It is impossible to write an essay in 20 minutes.

=> *An essay can't be written in 20 minutes.*

9. They saw her picking a wallet.

=> *She was seen picking a wallet.*

10. The garage is going to repair my car next week.

=> *I'm going to have a car repaired next week.*

11. They think he was playing tennis at 3pm yesterday.

=> *He is thought to have been playing tennis at 3pm yesterday.*

12. You need clean your car.

=> *Your car needs to be cleaned/cleaning.*

13. The hurricane blew the roof off the house.

=> *The house had its roof blown off by the hurricane.*

14. People say that there is a lot of oil under the North Sea.

=> *There is said to be a lot of oil under the North Sea*

15. They expected me to finish my work early.

=> *They expected my work to be finished early.*

16. She decided to rebuild the house.

=> *She decided that the house (should) be built.*

17. Don't let others see you.

=> *Don't let yourself be seen.*

18. The doctor advised him to eat more.

=> *He was advised to eat more.*

19. She remembers people taking her to the zoo.

=> *She remembers being taken to the zoo.*

20. People think that he was born in a rich family.

=> *He is thought to have been born in a rich family.*

B - LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1: (ID: ET1126)

Câu 1 [ID: 213478] My wedding ring _____ of yellow and white gold.

- A. is made B. is making C. made D. maked

Câu 2 [ID: 213479] If your brother _____, he would come.

- A. was invited B. were invited C. were inviting D. invite

Câu 3 [ID: 213480] References _____ in the examination room.

- A. not are used B. is not used C. didn't used D. are not used

Câu 4 [ID: 213481] Mary _____ in Boston.

- A. are born B. were born C. was born D. born

Câu 5 [ID: 213482] My mother is going _____ this house.

- A. sold B. to be sold C. to sold D. to sell

Câu 6 [ID: 213483] There's somebody behind us. I think we are _____.

- A. being followed B. are followed C. follow D. following

Câu 7 [ID: 213484] Have you _____ by a dog?

- A. bite B. ever been bit C. ever been bitten D. bit

Câu 8 [ID: 213485] The room is being _____ at the moment.

- A. was cleaned B. cleaned C. cleaning D. clean

Câu 9 [ID: 213486] The road to our village _____ widened next year.

- A. is B. will C. can D. will be

Câu 10 [ID: 213487] Most forests in other climatic areas _____ by human beings.

- A. have already been affected B. have already affected
C. have already been affecting D. had already been affected

Câu 11 [ID: 213488] The old man is said _____ all his money to an old people's home when he died.

- A. to leave B. to leaving C. have left D. to have left

Câu 12 [ID: 213489] Nobody was injured in the accident, _____?

- A. was there B. was he C. were they D. weren't they

Câu 13 [ID: 213490] Renoir's paintings _____ masterpieces all over the world.

- A. had considered B. are considered C. are considering D. consider

Câu 14 [ID: 213491] He was advised _____ singing lessons.

- A. take B. taken C. taking D. to take

Câu 15 [ID: 213492] Mr. Wilson is _____ as Willie to his friend.

- A. knowed B. knew C. known D. is known

Câu 16 [ID: 213493] When _____? In 1928.

- A. penicillin was discovered B. did penicillin discovered
C. was penicillin discovered D. did penicillin discover

Câu 17 [ID: 213494] I don't remember _____ of the decision to change the company policy on vacations.

- A. telling B. being told C. to tell D. to be told

Câu 18 [ID: 213495] The children _____ to the zoo.

- A. were enjoyed taken B. enjoyed being taken
C. were enjoyed taking D. enjoyed taking

Câu 19 [ID: 213496] A new bike was bought _____ him on his birthday.

- A. to B. for C. with D. on

Câu 20 [ID: 213497] His car needs _____.

- A. be fixed B. fixing C. to be fixing D. fixed

Câu 21 [ID: 213498] Her watch needs _____.

- A. repairing B. to be repaired C. repaired D. A & B

Câu 22 [ID: 213499] He was said _____ this building.

- A. designing B. to have designed C. to designs D. designed

Câu 23 [ID: 213500] Ted _____ by a bee while he was sitting in the garden.

- A. was sting B. was stung C. get stung D. gets stung

Câu 24 [ID: 213501] Let the children _____ taken to the cinema.

- A. to B. be C. to be D. being

Câu 25 [ID: 213502] That book _____ by a famous author.

- A. wrote B. was written C. is writing D. has written

Câu 26 [ID: 213503] Food _____ direct to the market by trucks.

- A. delivered B. deliver C. can be delivered D. delivers

Câu 27 [ID: 213504] The house has _____ after the fire.

- A. to rebuild B. to be rebuilt C. to be rebuild D. rebuilt

Câu 28 [ID: 213505] All the homework _____ at home.

- A. should do B. should done C. should be done D. should be doing

Câu 29 [ID: 213506] The application form _____ to the university before May 31st.

- A. must send B. sent C. must be send D. must be sent

Câu 30 [ID: 213507] Traffic rules _____ strictly.

- A. followed B. must followed C. must be followed D. must follow

Choose a sentence that is closest in meaning to the given sentence.

Câu 31 [ID: 213508] Somebody cleans that room everyday.

- A. The room every day is cleaned.
B. The room is everyday cleaned.
C. The room is cleaned every day.
D. The room is cleaned by somebody everyday.

Câu 32 [ID: 213509] They cancelled all flights because of fog.

- A. All flights because of fog were cancelled.
B. All flights were cancelled because of fog.
C. All flights were cancelled by them because of fog.
D. All flights were because of fog cancelled.

Câu 33 [ID: 213510] They are building a new highway around the city.

- A. A new highway is being built around the city.
B. A new highway is being built around the city by them.
C. A new highway around the city is being built.
D. Around the city a new highway is being built.

Câu 34 [ID: 213511] They have built a new hospital near the airport.

- A. A new hospital has been built near the airport by them.
B. A new hospital near the airport have been built.
C. A new hospital has been built near the airport.
D. Near the airport a new hospital has been built by them.

Câu 35 [ID: 213512] They will ask you a lot of questions at the interview.

- A. You will be asked a lot of questions at the interview.
B. You will be asked a lot of questions at the interview by them.
C. A lot of questions will be asked you at the interview.
D. A lot of questions will be asked at the interview.

Câu 36 [ID: 213513] People don't use this road very often.

- A. This road is not used very often.
- B. Not very often this road is not used.
- C. This road very often is not used.
- D. This road not very often is used.

Câu 37 [ID: 213514] Somebody accused me of stealing money.

- A. I was accused by somebody of stealing money.
- B. I was accused of stealing money.
- C. I was accused of stealing money by somebody.
- D. I was accused stealing money.

Câu 38 [ID: 213515] Somebody is using the computer at the moment.

- A. The computer is being used at the moment.
- B. The computer at the moment is being used.
- C. The computer is being used by somebody at the moment.
- D. The computer is used at the moment.

Câu 39 [ID: 213516] The bill includes service.

- A. Service is included by the bill.
- B. Service included in the bill.
- C. Service is included in the bill.
- D. Service is in the bill.

Câu 40 [ID: 213517] They have changed the date of the meeting.

- A. The date of the meeting has been changed.
- B. The date of the meeting has been changed by them.
- C. The meeting has been changed the date.
- D. The date of the meeting has changed.

Câu 41 [ID: 213518] The robbers attacked the police from behind.

- A. The police was attacked from behind.
- B. The police were attacked from behind.
- C. The robbers were attacked from behind.
- D. The robbers are attacked from behind.

Câu 42 [ID: 213520] They have to hold the meeting in this narrow room.

- A. The meeting had to be hold in this narrow room.
- B. The meeting has to be hold in this narrow room.
- C. The meeting has to be holded in this narrow room.
- D. The meeting has to be held in this narrow room.

Câu 43 [ID: 213521] They showed his photograph on television.

- A. On television they had his photograph shown.
- B. His photograph was shown on television.
- C. His photograph is being shown on television.
- D. The television was shown his photograph.

Câu 44 [ID: 213522] They began to build the bridge two months ago.

- A. The bridge was begun to build two months ago.
- B. The bridge was begun to be built two months ago.
- C. The bridge began to build two months ago.
- D. The bridge began to be built two months ago.

Câu 45 [ID: 213523] They saw him searching the truck.

- A. He is seen searching the truck.
- B. He is seen to search the truck.
- C. He was seen searching the truck.
- D. He was being seen searching the truck.

Câu 46 [ID: 213525] His parents made him do it.

- A. He was made do it.
- B. He was made to do it.
- C. He made his parents to do it
- D. His parents were made do it.

Câu 47 [ID: 213526] The barber has cut my hair.

- A. My hair has already been cut now.
- B. I've got to have the barber cut my hair.
- C. My hair has become shorter and shorter.
- D. I've had my hair cut.

Câu 48 [ID: 213527] People say that the American women are used to living independently means.

- A. It is said that the American women are used to living independently.
- B. The American women are said to be used to living independently.
- C. The American women are said they be used to live independently.
- D. A & B are correct.

Câu 49 [ID: 213528] People think that he was born in a rich family.

- A. That is thought he was born in a rich family.
- B. He was thought to be born in a rich family.
- C. That he was born in a rich family is thought.
- D. He is thought to have been born in a rich family.

Câu 50 [ID: 213529] It is impossible to do this work right now.

- A. It is impossible for this work to be done right now.
- B. It is impossible for to be done this work right now.
- C. This work is impossible to do right now.
- D. This work is impossible to be done.

ĐÁP ÁN

1. A	2. B	3. D	4. C	5. D	6. A	7. C	8. B	9. D	10. A
11. D	12. C	13. B	14. D	15. C	16. C	17. B	18. B	19. B	20. B
21. D	22. B	23. B	24. B	25. B	26. C	27. B	28. C	29. D	30. C
31. C	32. B	33. C	34. C	35. A	36. A	37. B	38. A	39. C	40. A
41. B	42. D	43. B	44. D	45. C	46. B	47. D	48. D	49. D	50. A

LUYỆN TẬP 2: (ID: ET1127)

Câu 1 [ID: 213530] "What a beautiful shirt you're wearing!" "Thank you. It _____ especially for me by my mother."

- A. is made
- B. has made
- C. made
- D. was made

Câu 2 [ID: 213531] I don't understand why the students didn't keep silent while the speech _____.

- A. has been made
- B. was made
- C. would be made
- D. was being made

Câu 3 [ID: 213532] This is the first time I have seen this car. Where _____?

- A. did it make
- B. did it made
- C. was it make
- D. was it made

Câu 4 [ID: 213533] Today, many serious childhood diseases _____ by early immunization.

- A. are preventing
- B. can prevent
- C. prevent
- D. can be prevented

Câu 5 [ID: 213534] Whole-grain food products _____ in most large supermarkets across the United States and Canada.

- A. now can purchase
- B. can now be purchased
- C. now to purchase
- D. the purchase of which

Câu 6 [ID: 213535] All that rubbish will have to be _____ at once.

- A. get rid of
- B. got rid of
- C. getting rid of
- D. no answer is correct

Câu 7 [ID: 213536] "What happened to the postman?" "He _____ to a new town to work.

- A. has sent
- B. was send
- C. was sent
- D. sent

Câu 8 [ID: 213537] Excuse me. Is this seat _____?

- A. taking
- B. took
- C. occupy
- D. taken

Câu 9 [ID: 213538] He was advised _____ 'singing lessons.

- A. take B. taken C. taking D. to take.

Câu 10 [ID: 213539] We're late. The film _____ by the time we get to the cinema.

- A. will already start B. will be already started
C. will already have started D. will be starting

Câu 11 [ID: 213540] I still can not believe it. My bicycle _____ some minutes ago.

- A. was stolen B. was stealing C. stolen D. stole

Câu 12 [ID: 213541] Some funny things _____ in class yesterday.

- A. happened B. were happened C. happens D. is happened

Câu 13 [ID: 213542] The children's arm was swollen because he _____ by a bee.

- A. stung B. had stung C. had been stung D. had being stung

Câu 14 [ID: 213543] I _____ with you on that subject.

- A. am agree B. am agreed C. agreeing D. agree

Câu 15 [ID: 213544] Many U.S automobiles _____ in Detroit, Michigan.

- A. manufacture B. have manufactured
C. are manufactured D. are manufacturing

Câu 16 [ID: 213545] When I came, an experiment _____ in the lab.

- A. was being holding B. has been held
C. was being held D. has held

Câu 17 [ID: 213546] George is _____ Lisa.

- A. marry with B. marry to C. married with D. married to

Câu 18 [ID: 213547] Last night a tornado swept through Rockvill. It _____ everything in its path.

- A. destroyed B. was destroyed
C. was being destroyed D. had been destroyed

Câu 19 [ID: 213548] Dynamite _____ by Alfred Bernard Nobel.

- A. have been invented B. invented
C. was invented D. was being invented

Câu 20 [ID: 213549] _____ this work _____ before you went to Moscow?

- A. Will/have been done B. Has/been done
C. Will/be done D. Had/been done

Câu 21 [ID: 213550] If you _____ about it, will you be able to answer?

- A. are asked B. ask C. will be asked D. asked

Câu 22 [ID: 213551] Do you believe that such a problem can _____.

- A. solve B. be solving C. is solved D. be solved

Câu 23 [ID: 213552] "Can't we do something about the situation?" - "Something _____ right now."

- A. is doing B. is do C. is being done D. has been doing

Câu 24 [ID: 213553] Vitamin C _____ by the human body. It gets into the blood stream quickly.

- A. absorbs easily B. is easily absorbing
C. is easily absorbed D. absorbed easily

Câu 25 [ID: 213554] "When can I have my car back?" "I think it'll _____ late this afternoon."

- A. finish B. be finished C. have finished D. be finish

Câu 26 [ID: 213555] My country _____ the pursuit of world peace.

- A. is dedicating to B. is dedicated to
C. is dedicating by D. is dedicated by

Câu 27 [ID: 213556] I didn't think my interview went very well, but I guess it must have. Despite all my anxiety, I _____ for the job I wanted. I'm really going to work hard to justify their confidence.

- A. was hiring B. hired C. got hiring D. got hired

Câu 28 [ID: 213557] Edward was new on the job, but he quickly fit himself into the _____ routine of the office.

- A. established B. establishing C. establishes D. establish

Câu 29 [ID: 213558] The Mayan Indians _____ an accurate and sophisticated calendar more than seven centuries ago.

- A. were developed B. developed
C. are developed D. have been developed

Câu 30 [ID: 213559] If you _____ by the police for speeding, what would you do?

- A. stopped B. are stopped C. was stopped D. were stopped

Câu 31 [ID: 213560] It _____ that the strike will end soon.

- A. is expected B. expected C. are expected D. was expected

Câu 32 [ID: 213561] These tennis courts don't _____ very often. Not many people want to play.

- A. got used B. used C. get used D. get use

Câu 33 [ID: 213562] Each word in our mental dictionaries _____ with its unique sound and meaning.

- A. must store B. must be stored C. must is stored D. must to be stored

Câu 34 [ID: 213563] These instructions _____ precisely.

- A. must follow B. must followed
C. must to be followed D. must be followed

Câu 35 [ID: 213564] Tuition and fees _____ if a student withdraws after the fifteenth day of the term.

A. not refunded

B. will not be refunded

C. will be not refunded

D. will not refund

Câu 36 [ID: 213565] When I was a child, I _____ by my parents.

A. used to punished

B. use to be punished

C. use to punish

D. used to be punished

Câu 37 [ID: 213566] An international conference _____ in Hanoi next week.

A. will held

B. will be hold

C. is going to hold

D. will be held

Câu 38 [ID: 213567] The day of the meeting _____ again.

A. will change

B. will be changed

C. will has to be changed

D. will have to change

Câu 39 [ID: 213568] Mary _____ about our change in plans.

A. has told

B. has just been told

C. has been just told

D. had been just told.

Câu 40 [ID: 213569] These books _____ back to the library.

A. should have given

B. should give

C. should have been given

D. must have given

Câu 41 [ID: 213570] The earth _____ to be flat.

A. believed

B. is believed

C. was believed

D. is considered

Câu 42 [ID: 213571] He is rumoured to _____ on the way home.

A. have attacked

B. be attacked

C. attacked

D. have been attacked

Câu 43 [ID: 213572] The flight to Hanoi _____ because of the bad weather.

A. can postpone

B. will postpone

C. can be postponed

D. can be postpone

Câu 44 [ID: 213573] Had there been your presence, everything _____ carefully.

A. would have arranged

B. would have been arranged

C. would be arranged

D. will be arranged

Câu 45 [ID: 213574] A new hospital _____ in this area soon.

A. is going to build

B. is going to be build

C. is going to be built

D. will build

Câu 46 [ID: 213575] Many species of rare animals _____ seriously.

A. is endangered

B. are in danger

C. are threaten

D. are threatened

Câu 47 [ID: 213576] The money _____ to him 2 months ago, but it _____ back yet.

- A. was lent/had not been given B. has been lent/was not given
C. was lent/has not given D. was lent/has not been given

Câu 48 [ID: 213577] She could easily _____ for a top model.

- A. be mistaken B. have mistaken
C. been mistaken D. to be mistaken

Câu 49 [ID: 213578] My shirt _____ by my sister on my last birthday.

- A. gave B. was given
C. had been given D. was being given

Câu 50 [ID: 213579] "Did Shakespeare write this play?"

- A. Did this play be written by Shakespeare?
B. Was this play written by Shakespeare?
C. This play was written by Shakespeare.
D. Did this play Shakespeare write?

ĐÁP ÁN

1. D	2. D	3. D	4. D	5. B	6. B	7. C	8. D	9. D	10. C
11. A	12. A	13. C	14. D	15. C	16. C	17. D	18. A	19. C	20. D
21. A	22. D	23. C	24. C	25. B	26. B	27. D	28. A	29. B	30. D
31. A	32. C	33. B	34. D	35. B	36. D	37. D	38. B	39. B	40. C
41. C	42. D	43. C	44. B	45. C	46. D	47. D	48. A	49. B	50. B

LUYỆN TẬP 3: (ID: ET1128)

Choose a sentence that is closet in meaning to the given sentence

Câu 1 [ID: 213580] They spent a lot of money on food and clothes.

- A. A lot of money on food were spent.
B. A lot of money was spent on food and clothes.
C. A lot of money were spent on food and clothes.
D. Money was spent a lot on food and clothes.

Câu 2 [ID: 213581] The restaurant serves seafood every Monday.

- A. Seafood is served every Monday.
B. Seafood was served every Monday.
C. Seafood are served every Monday.
D. Seafood were served every Monday.

Câu 3 [ID: 213582] Mary informed the police of the news.

- A. The police was informed of the news.
B. The news was informed of the police.
C. The police were informed of the news.
D. The police of the news was informed by Mary.

Câu 4 [ID: 213583] The ambulance is taking the boy to hospital.

- A. To the hospital is the boy being taken.
- B. The boy is being taking to hospital.
- C. The boy is being taken to hospital.
- D. The boy is taken to hospital.

Câu 5 [ID: 213584] The engineers will construct a bridge over this house.

- A. This house will be constructed over a bridge.
- B. A bridge will be constructed over this house.
- C. This house will be being constructed over a bridge.
- D. A bridge will be being constructed over this house.

Câu 6 [ID: 213585] Someone has stolen his gun.

- A. His gun has been stolen.
- B. His gun has stolen.
- C. He has been stolen the gun.
- D. The gun has been stolen him.

Câu 7 [ID: 213586] We have to tell Mary about our change in plans.

- A. Mary has to be told about our change in plans.
- B. Our change in plans should be told for Mary.
- C. Mary is told about our change in plans.
- D. Our change in plans is told to Mary.

Câu 8 [ID: 213587] Which book do the students love?

- A. Which book are done love by the students?
- B. Which book is the students loved?
- C. Which book are loved by the students?
- D. Which book is loved by the students?

Câu 9 [ID: 213588] The directors have fired those lazy clerks.

- A. Those lazy clerks have been fired.
- B. Those lazy clerks has been fired.
- C. Those lazy clerks had been fired.
- D. Those lazy clerks were fired.

Câu 10 [ID: 213589] They didn't explain anything about that.

- A. Nothing was explained about that.
- B. That wasn't explained anything by them.
- C. Anything wasn't explained about that.
- D. Something wasn't explained about that.

Câu 11 [ID: 213590] They showed his photograph on television.

- A. On television they have his photograph shown.
- B. His photograph was shown on television.
- C. His photograph is being shown on television.
- D. The television was shown his photograph.

Câu 12 [ID: 213591] We must find this killer.

- A. This killer we must find.
- B. This killer is found.
- C. This killer be found.
- D. This killer must be found.

Câu 13 [ID: 213592] They signed the contract at lunchtime.

- A. They were signed the contract at lunchtime.
- B. At lunchtime the contract were signed
- C. The contract at lunchtime was signed .
- D. The contract was signed at lunchtime.

Câu 14 [ID: 213593] Someone ought to do something about it.

- A. Something about it ought to be done.
- B. Someone ought to be done about it.
- C. Something ought to be done about it.
- D. It ought to be done something by someone.

Câu 15 [ID: 213594] People should send their complaints to the head office.

- A. Their complaints were sent to the head office.
- B. The head office was sent their complaints.
- C. Their complaints should be sent to the head office.
- D. The head office should be sent complaints.

Câu 16 [ID: 213595] People don't use this road very often.

- A. This road don't be used very often.
- B. This road is not used very often.
- C. This road is used not very often.
- D. This road is not often used.

Câu 17 [ID: 213596] Miller has taken a lot of photographs.

- A. Photographs have been taken by Miller.
- B. Photographs have been taken a lot of by Miller.
- C. A lot of photographs were taken by Miller.
- D. A lot of photographs have been taken by Miller.

Câu 18 [ID: 213597] The teacher gave us two very difficult exercises.

- A. We were given two very difficult exercises.
- B. Two very difficult exercises were given to the teacher.
- C. Two very difficult exercises were given to us.
- D. Both (A) and (C) are correct.

Câu 19 [ID: 213598] They said that he was all right.

- A. He said he was all right.
- B. They were said him was all right.
- C. He was said he was all right.
- D. He was said to be all right.

Câu 20 [ID: 213599] The lawyer is interviewing the witness.

- A. The witness is interviewed.
- B. The witness is being interviewed.
- C. The lawyer is interviewed.
- D. The lawyer is being interviewed.

Câu 21 [ID: 213600] They are taking photographs of the event.

- A. The event was taken photographs.
- B. The event is taken photographs.
- C. Photographs are taken of the event.
- D. Photographs of the event are being taken.

Câu 22 [ID: 213601] How do people learn languages?

- A. How are languages learned?
- B. How are languages learned by people?
- C. How languages are learned?
- D. Languages are learned how?

Câu 23 [ID: 213602] Nobody told me that George was ill.

- A. I was told that George wasn't ill.
- B. I wasn't told that George was ill.
- C. George wasn't told to be ill.
- D. George was told not to be ill.

Câu 24 [ID: 213603] His colleagues gave him a present when he retired.

- A. He was given a present when he retired.
- B. A present was given by his colleagues when he retired.
- C. He was given a present by his colleagues when he retired.
- D. A present was given him when he retired.

Câu 25 [ID: 213604] We will send you the results as soon as they are ready.

- A. You will be sent the results as soon as they are ready.
- B. You will be sent the results as soon as they are ready by us.
- C. The results will be sent you by us as soon as they are ready.
- D. The results will be sent you as soon as they are ready by us.

Câu 26 [ID: 213605] Brian told me that somebody had attacked him in the street.

- A. I was told by Brian that somebody was attacked in the street.
- B. I told Brian that he had been attacked in the street.
- C. Brian told me that have been attacked in the street.
- D. Brian told me that he had been attacked in the street.

Câu 27 [ID: 213606] They say that many people are homeless after the earthquake.

- A. They say many people to have been homeless after the tsunami.
- B. They say many people to be homeless after the tsunami.
- C. Many people are said to have been homeless after the tsunami.
- D. Many people are said to be homeless after the tsunami.

Câu 28 [ID: 213607] We cannot do it that way.

- A. It cannot do that way.
- B. It cannot be done that way.
- C. That way it can't be done.
- D. That way can't be done.

Câu 29 [ID: 213608] We cannot do it that way.

- A. It cannot do that way.
- B. It cannot be done that way.
- C. That way it can't be done.
- D. That way can't be done.

Câu 30 [ID: 213609] They think that the prisoner escaped by climbing over the wall.

- A. The prisoner is thought to escape by climbing over the wall.
- B. The prisoner is thought escaped by climbing over the wall.
- C. The prisoner is thought having escaped by climbing over the wall.
- D. The prisoner is thought to have escaped by climbing over the wall.

Câu 31 [ID: 213610] They believe that the thieves got in through the kitchen window.

- A. The thieves are believed to have got in through the kitchen window.
- B. The thieves are believed to get in through the kitchen window.
- C. They believe the thieves got in through the kitchen window.
- D. They believe the thieves have got in through the kitchen window.

Câu 32 [ID: 213611] They report that over 200,000 people were killed in the tsunami.

- A. Over 200,000 people are reported to have been killed in the tsunami.
- B. Over 200,000 people are reported to be killed in the tsunami.
- C. Over 200,000 people are reported to have killed in the tsunami.
- D. Over 200,000 people are reported to kill in the tsunami.

Câu 33 [ID: 213612] We found that they had cancelled the game.

- A. We found that the game had been cancelled.
- B. The game had been cancelled.
- C. we found that the game had been cancelled by them.
- D. The game were found to be cancelled.

Câu 34 [ID: 213613] Where did they make your shoes?

- A. Where were they made your shoes?
- B. Where did your shoes made?
- C. Where were your shoes made?
- D. Where were your shoes make?

Câu 35 [ID: 213614] Keep the machine always clean.

- A. The machine is always kept clean.
- B. The machine should be kept clean always.
- C. Let the machine always be kept cleaned.
- D. Let the machine be always kept clean.

Câu 36 [ID: 213615] We found that they had cancelled the soccer match.

- A. We found that the soccer match had been cancelled.
- B. The soccer match had been cancelled.
- C. The soccer match was found that had been cancelled.
- D. The soccer match was found to have been cancelled by us.

Câu 37 [ID: 213616] How many slums are they going to clear?

- A. How many slums are being gone to clear?
- B. How many slums are being cleared?
- C. How many slums are going to clear?
- D. How many slums are going to be cleared?

Câu 38 [ID: 213617] Who wrote the report on the air pollution?

- A. By whom was the report on the air pollution written?
- B. Whom was the report written on the air pollution by?
- C. By whom was the report written on the air pollution?
- D. No answer is correct

Câu 39 [ID: 213618] He sent me a nice gift on my birthday.

- A. I was sent a nice gift on my birthday by him.
- B. A nice gift was sent me on my birthday by him.
- C. A nice gift was sent to me on my birthday by him.
- D. Both A & C are correct.

Choose the best answer to complete these sentences

Câu 40 [ID: 213619] His relatives say that he is an adopted child. He is said _____ an adopted child.

- A. to be
- B. to being
- C. to been
- D. to have been

Câu 41 [ID: 213620] I found that what he said was incorrect. What he said _____ incorrect.

- A. was found
- B. was found to be
- C. was founded
- D. has been found

Câu 42 [ID: 213621] We consider him the best speaker of the debate. He _____ the best speaker of the debate.

- A. is considered to be
- B. is considering
- C. was considered
- D. was considering

Câu 43 [ID: 213622] We thought you were serious when you said you were leaving. You were thought _____ when you said you were leaving

- A. to have been serious
- B. to being serious
- C. to be serious
- D. to have been seriously

Câu 44 [ID: 213623] The castle _____ in the 16th century.

- A. built
- B. has built
- C. was built
- D. had built

Câu 45 [ID: 213624] French _____ in many parts of Europe.

- A. is being spoken
- B. is spoken
- C. has been spoken
- D. has spoken

Câu 46 [ID: 213625] The car _____ by the mechanic.

- A. is repairing
- B. is being repaired
- C. has repaired
- D. has repaired

Câu 47 [ID: 213626] I _____ but I went anyway.

- A. wasn't invited
- B. haven't invited
- C. wasn't being invited
- D. hadn't invited

Câu 48 [ID: 213627] Young babies need to _____.

- A. take care of
- B. be taken care of
- C. have taken care of
- D. are taken care of

Câu 49 [ID: 213628] I didn't know why I _____.

- A. have been chosen
- B. had been chosen
- C. had chosen
- D. had chosen

Câu 50 [ID: 213629] I _____ about her reaction.

- A. am worried B. am being worried
C. have worried D. worried

ĐÁP ÁN

1. B	2. A	3. C	4. C	5. B	6. A	7. A	8. D	9. A	10. A
11. B	12. D	13. D	14. C	15. C	16. B	17. D	18. D	19. D	20. B
21. D	22. A	23. B	24. C	25. A	26. D	27. D	28. B	29. B	30. D
31. A	32. A	33. A	34. C	35. D	36. A	37. D	38. A	39. D	40. A
41. B	42. A	43. C	44. C	45. B	46. B	47. A	48. B	49. B	50. A

LUYỆN TẬP 4: (ID: ET1129)

Choose a sentence that is closet in meaning to the given sentence

Câu 1 [ID: 213682] My watch was broken.

- A. He broke my watch.
B. My watch were broken.
C. My watch be broken.
D. My watch is broken.

Câu 2 [ID: 213683] The teacher explained the rule to the student.

- A. The rule was explained to the student.
B. The students were explained the rule.
C. The students were explained the rules.
D. A and B are correct.

Câu 3 [ID: 213684] He often asks me to help him.

- A. He is often asked to help them.
B. They are often asked to help me.
C. I am often asked to help him.
D. I am often asked him to help me.

Câu 4 [ID: 213685] His friends never forgave his betrayal.

- A. His betrayal were never forgiven by his friends.
B. His betrayal was never forgiven by his friends.
C. His betrayal was never forgave by his friends
D. His betrayal never forgave by his friends.

Câu 5 [ID: 213686] I am sure we'll settle the matter easily.

- A. I'm sure the matter will settle easily.
B. I'm sure the matter will be settled easily.
C. I'm sure the matter will settled easily.
D. I'm sure the matter won't be settled easily.

Câu 6 [ID: 213687] We sent for the police.

- A. The police was sent for.
- B. The police were sent for.
- C. The police was sent.
- D. The police was sent for us.

Câu 7 [ID: 213688] They speak much about this book.

- A. This book is much spoken about.
- B. This book is much spoken.
- C. This book is much about spoken.
- D. This book are much spoken about.

Câu 8 [ID: 213689] Have they tested all the machines?

- A. Have all the machines be tested?
- B. Have all the machines been testing?
- C. Have all the machines been tested?
- D. Have all the machines been being testing?

Câu 9 [ID: 213690] Does he realize that they are laughing at him?

- A. Is he realized that he is laughing at?
- B. Is he realized that he is being laughed at?
- C. Does he realize that he is laughing at?
- D. Does he realize that he is being laughed at?

Câu 10 [ID: 213691] The manager offers me several jobs.

- A. I was offers several jobs.
- B. I am offered several jobs.
- C. Several jobs are offered to me.
- D. B and C are correct.

Câu 11 [ID: 213692] "Did Shakespeare write this play?"

- A. Did this play be written by Shakespeare?
- B. Was this play written by Shakespeare?
- C. This play was written by Shakespeare.
- D. Did this play Shakespeare write?

Câu 12 [ID: 213693] Esther gave Sue a nice present.

- A. Esther was given a nice present by Sue.
- B. Sue was given a nice present by Esther.
- C. A nice present was given to Esther by Sue.
- D. A nice present was given to Sue from Esther.

Câu 13 [ID: 213694] A small red car hit the dog.

- A. The dog was hit by a small red car.
- B. The dog is hit by a small red car.
- C. A dog was hitted by the small red car.
- D. The dog has hit by a small red car.

Câu 14 [ID: 213695] A thief stole Bob's painting.

- A. Bob's painting has stole by a thief.
- B. Bob's painting was stolen by a thief.
- C. Bob's painting was stole by a thief.
- D. Bob's painting was stealed by a thief.

Câu 15 [ID: 213699] Joan spread the newspaper out on the floor.

- A. The newspaper was spreaded out on the floor by Joan.
- B. The newspaper has spreaded out on the floor.
- C. The newspaper is spreaded out on the floor.
- D. The newspaper was spread out on the floor by Joan

Câu 16 [ID: 213696] The news surprised us all.

- A. We all surprising by the news.
- B. We all surprised by the news.
- C. We all are surprised from the news.
- D. We all were surprised by the news.

Câu 17 [ID: 213697] Where did they find the book?

- A. Where is the book found?
- B. Where has been found the book?
- C. Where was the book found?
- D. Where was found the book?

Câu 18 [ID: 213698] He cut the bread with a big knife.

- A. The bread was cutted with a big knife.
- B. The bread is cut with a big knife.
- C. The bread was cut with a big knife.
- D. The bread has cut with a big knife by him.

Câu 19 [ID: 213700] Where did he put the suitcase?

- A. Where did the suitcase put by him?
- B. Where was the suitcase put?
- C. Where has the suitcase been put by him?
- D. Where was the suitcase puttied?

Câu 20 [ID: 213701] Their father's stories amused them.

- A. They were amused by their father's stories.
- B. They were amusing by their father's stories.
- C. They amused by their father's stories.
- D. They had amusing by their father's stories.

Câu 21 [ID: 213702] Ben drove me to the airport.

- A. I was drove to the airport by Ben.
- B. I was driven to the airport by Ben.
- C. I was drived to the airport by Ben.
- D. I been drive to the airport by Ben.

Câu 22 [ID: 213703] People said that he is a good doctor.

- A. He was said to be a good doctor.
- B. It was said that he is a good doctor.
- C. It is said that he is a good doctor.
- D. A & B are correct.

Câu 23 [ID: 213704] People thought he stole my car.

- A. He was thought to have stolen my car.
- B. It was thought that he stole my car.
- C. It was thought that he has stolen my car.
- D. A & B are correct.

Choose the best answer to complete these sentences

Câu 24 [ID: 213705] Everything that _____ remained a secret.

- A. had be overheard
- B. had been overheard
- C. had been overheard
- D. would had been overheard

Câu 25 [ID: 213706] I _____.

- A. have not given the money
- B. have not been given the money
- C. have not been give the money
- D. have not be given the money

Câu 26 [ID: 213707] It _____ for years.

- A. has not been known
- B. had not been known
- C. had not be known
- D. have not been known

Câu 27 [ID: 213708] It _____ that learning English is easy.

- A. are said
- B. said
- C. is said
- D. is sayed

Câu 28 [ID: 213709] John and Ann _____.

- A. were not misleed
- B. were not misleded
- C. was not misled
- D. were not misled

Câu 29 [ID: 213710] Our horses _____.

- A. are well feeded
- B. are well fed
- C. is well fed
- D. is well feeded

Câu 30 [ID: 213711] Peter and Tom _____ in an accident yesterday.

- A. is hurt
- B. is hurted
- C. were hurt
- D. were hurted

A. attracted B. are attracted
C. have attracted D. have been attracting

A. were distributing B. distributed
C. were distributed D. no answer is correct

A. had removed B. had been removed
C. removed D. no answer is correct

A. were reserving B. had reserved
C. had been reserved D. no answer is correct

A. hidden B. had hidden C. had been hidden D. hid

A. had left B. had been left C. left D. is leaving

A. removing B. remove C. be removed D. are removed

A. have arrested B. have been arrested
C. has arrested D. has been arrested

A. hitted B. was hitted C. was hit D. hits

A. to have successfully made B. to have been successfully made
C. to successfully make D. A & C are correct

A. cheat B. be cheated C. to be cheated D. to cheat

A. isn't B. won't be C. wouldn't be D. hasn't been

A. to see B. to have seen C. to had seen D. see

Câu 44 [ID: 213725] The tragic sinking of the Titanic _____ for she went down on her first voyage with heavy loss of life.

- A. will always remember B. will always be remembered
C. always remember D. no answer is correct

Câu 45 [ID: 213726] The noblest and most imperative task of a Government is _____ the sovereignty, independence and territorial integrity of the Nation.

- A. defending B. to defend C. defended D. defend

Câu 46 [ID: 213727] Henry deported for having an expired visa. He should _____ his visa _____.

- A. have / renewing B. have had / renewing
C. have had / renewed D. have had / to be renewed

Câu 47 [ID: 213728] It is highly desirable that every effort _____ to reduce expenditure.

- A. is made B. has been made
C. be made D. A & B are correct

Câu 48 [ID: 213729] This homework is not as good as usual. I think you should _____ time on it.

- A. be spent B. spend
C. have spent D. have been spent

Câu 49 [ID: 213730] I apologized for the mistake _____ by my team. There appears to _____ a slight misunderstanding.

- A. is made / be B. made / have been
C. making / have been D. made / being

Câu 50 [ID: 213731] The medicine made me feel dizzy. I felt as though the room _____ around and around.

- A. is spinning B. was spinning C. were spinning D. was spun

ĐÁP ÁN

1. A	2. A	3. C	4. B	5. B	6. B	7. A	8. C	9. D	10. D
11. B	12. B	13. A	14. B	15. D	16. D	17. C	18. C	19. B	20. A
21. B	22. D	23. D	24. B	25. B	26. A	27. C	28. D	29. B	30. C
31. B	32. C	33. B	34. C	35. D	36. B	37. C	38. B	39. C	40. A
41. B	42. C	43. B	44. B	45. B	46. C	47. C	48. C	49. B	50. C

C- THI ONLINE

Truy cập ☒ ID: ET1130, ET1131, ET1132.

GÓC GIẢI TRÍ

Các em thân mến, hôm nay chúng ta sẽ cùng thư giãn bằng một mẫu chuyện cười tiếng Anh nhé !

A stupid boy

A young boy enters a barber shop and the barber whispers to his customer. "This is the dumbest kid in the world. Watch while I prove it you." The barber puts a dollar bill in one hand and two quarters in the other, then calls the boy over and asks, "Which do you want, son?" The boy takes the quarters and leaves. "What did I tell you?" said the barber. "That kid never learns!"

Later, when the customer leaves, he sees the same young boy coming out of the ice cream store. "Hey, son! May I ask you a question? Why did you take the quarters instead of the dollar bill?" The boy licked his cone and replied, "Because the day I take the dollar, the game is over!"

Have fun!

Cậu bé ngốc nghếch

Một cậu bé vào cửa hàng cắt tóc và người thợ cắt tóc thì thầm vào tai khách hàng: "Đây là thằng bé ngốc ngẩn nhất trên thế giới. Xem nhé tôi sẽ chứng minh cho ông thấy". Sau đó người thợ đưa ra một tờ đôla và đồng xu nửa đô rồi bảo cậu bé: "Cháu thích bên nào hơn con trai?". Cậu bé cầm lấy đồng xu và rời đi. "Thấy chưa, tôi đã nói với ông rồi", người thợ cắt tóc nói. "Thằng bé chẳng bao giờ học được điều gì cả".

Sau đó, người khách hàng cũng rời đi và gặp cậu bé đang đi ra từ hàng kem. "Này con trai. Ta có thể hỏi con một câu hỏi không? Tại sao con chọn đồng xu thay vì tờ một đôla?". Cậu bé vừa liếm kem vừa trả lời: "Vì vào cái ngày mà cháu lấy tờ một đôla, trò chơi sẽ kết thúc".

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 8: CÂU TRỰC TIẾP, GIÁN TIẾP

A – LÝ THUYẾT

Trong tiết học này, các em sẽ được học về định nghĩa câu trực tiếp, gián tiếp; cách chuyển từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp đối với câu tường thuật, câu hỏi, câu cảm thán, câu mệnh lệnh, câu đề nghị... và một số trường hợp đặc biệt.

Đây là dạng bài quan trọng trong các đề thi tiếng Anh, chúng ta cùng tìm hiểu các em nhé!

I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA (ID: EV1053)

1. Direct speech

Eg: She said: "I have never been to Paris".

He said to me: "I like your hair".

He said to her: "I like your hair".

2. Indirect/Reported speech

Eg: She said that she had never been to Paris.

He said that he liked my hair.

He told her that he liked her hair.

II. QUY TẮC CHUYỂN CÂU TRỰC TIẾP SANG GIÁN TIẾP

1. Thay đổi chủ ngữ, tân ngữ, tính từ sở hữu (S, O, Possessive Adjectives)

Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Direct Speech	Reported Speech
Chủ Ngữ (Subject)		Tân ngữ (Object)	
I	He/She	Me	Him/Her
We	They	Us	Them
You	I/We	You	Me/Us
Đại từ sở hữu (Possessive pronouns)		Tính từ sở hữu (Possessive adjectives)	
Mine	His/Hers	My	His/Her
Ours	Theirs	Our	Their
Yours	Mine/Ours	Your	My/Our

2. Thay đổi động từ

Modal	Direct Speech	Reported Speech
can	"I can do it"	He said he could do it.
may	"May I go out?"	He wanted to know if he might go out.
must	"She must apply for the job."	He said that she must/had to apply for the job.
will	"They will call you."	He told me that they would call her.

DIRECT SPEECH	REPORTED SPEECH
Simple Present He said: "I am happy."	Simple Past He said that he was happy.
Present Progressive He said: "I'm looking for my keys."	Past Progressive He said that he was looking for his keys.
Simple Past He said: "I visited New York last year."	Past Perfect Simple He said that he had visited New York the previous year.
Present Perfect He said: "I've lived here for a long time."	Past Perfect He said that he had lived there for a long time.
Past Perfect He said: "They had finished the work when I arrived."	Past Perfect He said that they had finished the work when he had arrived.
Past Progressive He said: "I was playing football when the accident occurred."	Past Perfect Progressive He said that he had been playing football when the accident had occurred.
Present Perfect Progressive He said: "I have been playing football for two hours."	Past Perfect Progressive He said that he had been playing football for two hours.
Past Perfect Progressive He said: "I had been reading a newspaper when the light went off."	Past Perfect Progressive He said that he had been reading a newspaper when the light had gone off.
Future Simple (will+verb) He said: "I will open the door."	Conditional (would+verb) He said that he would open the door.
Conditional I He said to me: "I will help you if I am free"	He said that he would help me if he was free;

3. Thay đổi trạng từ chỉ thời gian và nơi chốn

Direct Speech	Reported Speech
Time Expressions	
today	that day
now	then
yesterday	the day before, the previous day
.... ago	 before
last week	the week before, the previous week
next year	the following year, the next year
tomorrow	the next day, the following day
Place	
here	there
Demonstratives	
this	that
these	those

Eg: "I met her yesterday." he said.

=> He said that he had met her the day before.

"I'll do it tomorrow." he promised.

=> He promised that he would do it the following day.

❖ Các trường hợp không lùi thì động từ

1. Khi câu trực tiếp diễn tả một chân lý hay một hành động được lặp đi lặp lại thường xuyên theo thói quen hiện tại.

Eg: My teacher said, "The Sun rises in the east".

=> My teacher said that the Sun rises in the east.

She said, "I get up at 5 o'clock every morning".

=> She said that she gets up at 5 o'clock every morning.

2. Câu trực tiếp có dạng câu điều kiện loại 2 hoặc loại 3 → không lùi thì.

Eg: She said to me "If I had enough money, I'd buy a new bicycle".

=> She said to me that if she had enough money, she'd buy a new bicycle.

3. Mệnh đề sau "Wish" → không lùi thì.

Eg: He said "I wish I had a lot of money".

=> He said he wished he had a lot of money.

4. Mệnh đề sau "would rather/would sooner" → không lùi thì.

Eg: She said "I would rather you stayed at home."

=> She said to/told me that she would rather I stayed at home.

5. Không thay đổi thì của mệnh đề sau "It's (high/about) time"

Eg: She said: "It's about time you went to bed, children."

=> She told her children that it was time they went to bed.

6. Động từ trong câu nói trực tiếp có thời gian xác định

Eg: He said, "I was born in 1980."

=> He said that he was born in 1980.

7. Lời nói trực tiếp có các động từ tình thái "could, should, might, ought to, used to, had better" thì không thay đổi.

Eg: Tom said: "You had better not contact her"

=> Tom said (that) I had better not contact her.

8. Nếu động từ dẫn ở hiện tại, chỉ cần thay đổi quy tắc 1 (đổi S, O, P.adj)

Eg: "I met her yesterday.", he says.

=> He says he met her yesterday.

❖ Practice: Rewrite these sentences (chữ trong video)

1. "I have never been to Korea before", said Mary. (Mary said)
2. "We go fishing with our parents everyday", they said to me. (They told)
3. "She was lost when she was looking for my house", Ted said. (Ted said)
4. "I met him yesterday", Alan said. (Alan said)
5. "I will make the decision tomorrow", Perry said to me. (Perry told)
6. "I think we should stay here", said Jinny. (Jinny said)
7. "If I am happy, I will go to the party with my friends tomorrow", said Kate. (Kate said)
8. "I am going to buy this book next month", Minh says to me. (Minh tells)
9. "It is high time you did your homework, boys", said the teacher. (The teacher told)
10. "I was watching TV when the flame broke out two weeks ago", the man said. (The man said)
11. "If I were rich, I would not have to work this hard", said Kent. (Kent said)
12. "Water boils at 100°C", said the girl. (The girl said)
13. "We got married in 1990", my grandmother said to me. (My grandmother told)
14. "You may find it difficult but I'd rather you didn't give up", said my dad. (My dad told)
15. "You can stay here with me as long as you want", said my friend Tom to me. (My friend)

ĐÁP ÁN

1. "I have never been to Korea before", said Mary. (Mary said)
=> Mary said that she had never been to Korea before.
2. "We go fishing with our parents everyday", they said to me. (They told)
=> They told me that they went fishing with their parents everyday.
3. "She was lost when she was looking for my house", Ted said. (Ted said)
=> Ted said that she had been lost when she had been looking for his house.
4. "I met him yesterday", Alan said. (Alan said)
=> Alan said that he had met him the day before/the previous day.
5. "I will make the decision tomorrow", Perry said to me. (Perry told)
=> Perry told me that he would make the decision the following day.
6. "I think we should stay here", said Jinny. (Jinny said)
=> Jinny said that (she thought) they should stay there.
7. "If I am happy, I will go to the party with my friends tomorrow", said Kate. (Kate said)
=> Kate said that if she was happy, she would go to the party with her friends the following day.
8. "I am going to buy this book next month", Minh says to me. (Minh tells)
=> Minh tells me that he is going to buy that book the following month.
9. "It is high time you did your homework, boys", said the teacher. (The teacher told)
=> The teacher told the boys that it was high time they did their homework.
10. "I was watching TV when the flame broke out two weeks ago", the man said. (The man said)
=> The man said that he had been watching TV when the flame had broken out two weeks before.
11. "If I were rich, I would not have to work this hard", said Kent. (Kent said)
=> Kent said that if he were rich, he would not have to work that hard.
12. "Water boils at 100°C", said the girl. (The girl said)
=> The girl said that water boils at 100°C.
13. "We got married in 1990", my grandmother said to me. (My grandmother told)
=> My grandmother told me that they got married in 1990.
14. "You may find it difficult but I'd rather you didn't give up", said my dad. (My dad told)
=> My dad told me that I might find it difficult but he'd rather I didn't give up.
15. "You can stay here with me as long as you want", said my friend Tom to me. (My friend)
=> My friend Tom told me that I could stay there with him as long as I wanted.

Để làm được dạng bài nêu trên các em cần xác định được các từ cần phải chuyển đổi: chủ ngữ, tân ngữ, động từ, trạng từ... và áp dụng 3 quy tắc chuyển từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp mà cô đã nêu ở phần trên.

III. CÂU HỎI TRONG LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP (ID: EV1054)

1. Động từ tường thuật câu hỏi gián tiếp

Các động từ tường thuật thường dùng trong câu hỏi gián tiếp bao gồm: ask, want to know, wonder, inquire.

2. Đổi trật tự từ từ dạng câu hỏi về dạng trần thuật

Say: He asked me if I was a student.

Don't say: He asked me if was I a student.

3. Đổi đại từ, tính từ sở hữu, thì của động từ và các trạng từ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn.

Eg: "Where should I go on my summer vacation next summer?", Jon asked me.

=> Jon asked me where he should go on his summer vacation the following summer.

❖ Yes/No Questions

S + asked + (O) + if/whether + clause

Eg1: "Are you ready?", he asked me.

=> He asked me/wanted to know IF/WHETHER I was ready.

Eg2: "Did you go out last night?" He asked her.

=> He asked her whether she had gone out the previous night.

❖ WH- Questions

S + asked + (O) + wh - word + clause

Eg1: "When will you be ready?" He asked me.

=> He asked me when I would be ready.

Eg2: "When did you finish work last night?" He asked her.

=> He asked her when she had finished the previous night.

Lưu ý:

- Khi tường thuật lại các câu hỏi có cấu trúc "who/what/which + be" + bổ ngữ" thì "be" có thể đặt trước hoặc sau bổ ngữ.

Eg: "Who's the best player?", he asked

=> He wanted to know who the best player was.

=> He wanted to know who was the best player.

- Động từ trần thuật trong mệnh đề chính ở thì hiện tại đơn, hiện tại tiếp diễn, hiện tại hoàn thành hoặc thì tương lai đơn thì thì của động từ trong câu gián tiếp không đổi.

Eg: "Has the taxi arrived yet?", he is wondering

=> He is wondering if/whether the taxi has arrived yet.

"Where can we stay?", he asks.

=> He wants to know where they can stay.

❖ Câu trả lời Yes/No

Câu trả lời Yes/No được diễn đạt trong câu gián tiếp bằng chủ ngữ và trợ động từ tương ứng.

Eg: Daniel said: "Is there a café nearby" and Tom said: "No"

=> Daniel asked if/whether there was a café nearby and Tom said there wasn't

He said: "Can you swim?" , I said: "Yes"

=> He wanted to know if/whether I could swim and I said I could.

IV. CÂU CẢM THÁN

Câu cảm thán bắt đầu bằng "What (a/an)...!" và "How ...!" thường được thuật lại bằng động từ "exclaim/say that".

What + (a/an) + adj + N!

How + adj/adv + s + tobe!

Eg: What a beautiful girl!

How beautiful the girl is!

Eg: "What a lovely dress!" She said.

=> She exclaimed/said that it was a lovely dress.

"How beautiful she is!" He said.

=> He exclaimed/said that she was beautiful.

"How quickly he runs!" She said.

=> She exclaimed/said that he ran quickly.

❖ Một số trường hợp đáng lưu ý

Câu trực tiếp	Câu gián tiếp
"Good!", he exclaimed.	He gave an exclamation with pleasure.
"Ugh!", he exclaimed.	He gave an exclamation with disgust.
He said: "Thank you!"	He thanked me.
He said: "Welcome!"	He welcomed me.
He said: "Good morning!"	He greeted me.
He said: "Happy Christmas!"	He wished me a happy Christmas.
He said: "Congratulation!"	He congratulated me.
He said: "Liar!"	He called me a liar.

Câu trực tiếp	Câu gián tiếp
He said: "Damn!"	He swore.

❖ Practice: Rewrite these sentences (chữa trong video)

Exercise 1

1. "Do you want to see the Cathedral?", asked he, and I said "No, I don't"
2. "Do you mean working on the night shifts?" She asked and I answered "Yes".
3. "Can you play any musical instrument?", the musician asked the girl, she said "Yes".
4. "Have you ever seen a UFO?", he asked me and I said "Never in my life".
5. "Did you go anywhere the day before yesterday?", the policeman asked the man and he answered "No, I didn't".
6. "Will it be alright if I come in a little late tonight?", the aupair girl asked me and I said "Yes, it will be alright".
7. "Did any of you actually see the accident happen?", the policeman asked.
8. "Are you going anywhere tomorrow night?", he asked her.

Exercise 2

1. "Who did you give the money to?", Jane asked.
2. "What did you miss most when you were in prison?", Mary asked the ex. Convict.
3. "How often do you go shopping?" the woman asked the girl.
4. "Why are you so late?" said the teacher "the lesson started half an hour ago".
5. "Where are you going for your holiday this summer?", he asked me.
6. "Who has been using my typewriter?" said my mother.

Exercise 3

1. "What a lovely song she sang!", said Tony.
2. "How terrible the film is!", said mom.
3. "It's so kind of you to give me a lift tonight", Tim said to me.
4. "Congratulations! You won the scholarship.", my teacher said to me.
5. "Happy birthday to you", said Emmy to me.

ĐÁP ÁN

Exercise 1

1. "Do you want to see the Cathedral?", asked he, and I said "No, I don't"
=> He asked me if I wanted to see the Cathedral and I said I didn't.
2. "Do you mean working on the night shifts?" She asked and I answered "Yes".
=> She asked me whether I meant working on the night shifts and I answered I did.
3. "Can you play any musical instrument?", the musician asked the girl, she said "Yes".
=> The musician asked the girl if she could play any musical instrument and she said she could.

4. "Have you ever seen a UFO?", he asked me and I said "Never in my life".

=> He asked me if I had ever seen a UFO and I said I hadn't.

5. "Did you go anywhere the day before yesterday?", the policeman asked the man and he answered "No, I didn't".

=> The policeman asked the man if he had gone anywhere 2 days before and he said he hadn't.

6. "Will it be alright if I come in a little late tonight?", the aupair girl asked me and I said "Yes, it will be alright".

=> The aupair girl asked me if it would be alright if she came in a little late that night and I said it would.

7. "Did any of you actually see the accident happen?", the policeman asked.

=> The policeman asked us if any of us had seen that the accident happen.

8. "Are you going anywhere tomorrow night?", he asked her.

=> He asked her if/whether she was going anywhere the following night.

Exercise 2

1. "Who did you give the money to?", Jane asked.

=> Jane asked me whom I had given the money to.

2. "What did you miss most when you were in prison?", Mary asked the ex. Convict.

=> Mary asked the ex. Convict what he had missed most when he had been in prison.

3. "How often do you go shopping?" the woman asked the girl.

=> The woman asked the girl how often she went shopping

4. "Why are you so late?" said the teacher "The lesson started half an hour ago".

=> The teacher asked him why he was so late and said that/added that the lesson had started half an hour before.

5. "Where are you going for your holiday this summer?", he asked me.

=> He asked me where I was going for my holiday that summer.

6. "Who has been using my typewriter?" said my mother.

=> My mother asked us who had been using her typewriter.

Exercise 3

1. "What a lovely song she sang!", said Tony.

=> Tony exclaimed that she had sung a lovely song.

2. "How terrible the film is!", said mom.

=> Mom exclaimed that the film was terrible.

3. "It's so kind of you to give me a lift tonight", Tim said to me.

=> Tim thanked me for having given him a lift that night.

4. "Congratulations! You won the scholarship.", my teacher said to me.

=> My teacher congratulated me on having won the scholarship.

5. "Happy birthday to you", said Emmy to me.

=> Emmy wished me a happy birthday.

V. CÂU YÊU CẦU, ĐỀ NGHỊ, LỜI KHUYÊN, LỜI MỜI....TRONG LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP (ID: EV1055)

Câu yêu cầu, đề nghị, lời khuyên, lời hứa, lời mời... trong lời nói gián tiếp thường được tường thuật lại bằng:

* V + to V

* V + V_{ing}

Áp dụng 3 quy tắc căn bản khi chuyển từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp.

Trực tiếp	Gián tiếp
"Can/could/will/would you... please?" "Would/do you mind + V-ing?" Câu mệnh lệnh (chỉ có động từ)	Ask/tell+ sb+ (not) + to V

"Please don't tell anybody what happened", he said to me.

=> He asked/told me not to tell anybody what had happened.

"Stay in bed for a few days", the doctor said to me.

=> The doctor asked/told me to stay in bed for a few days.

Ngoài "ask/tell", chúng ta có thể sử dụng các động từ trần thuật khác: "order, command, request, beg, plead"

"Please don't take any risks", said his wife.

His wife begged/pleaded with him not to take any risks.

1. Câu đề nghị

Trực tiếp	Gián tiếp
"Shall I/we...?" "Can I...?" "I will..."	offer to V

They said: "We will pay for the meal"

=> They offered to pay for the meal.

2. Câu lời khuyên

Trực tiếp	Gián tiếp
"If I were you...." "Someone should/had better/ought to"	Advise sb (not) to V Advise on V-ing Encourage sb to V

Tom said: "You should/ought to take a taxi, Mary"

=> Tom advised Mary to take a taxi.

"Go on, apply for the job", said Jack to me.

=> Jack urged/encouraged me to apply for the job.

3. Câu lời hứa

Trực tiếp	Gián tiếp
"I will...."	Promise to V

John said: "I will write to you"

=> John promised to write to me.

4. Câu mời

Trực tiếp	Gián tiếp
"Would you like...?" "....., please"	Invite sb to V

"Would you like to go out for lunch?", she said to me.

=> She invited me to go out for lunch.

5. Câu nhắc nhở

Trực tiếp	Gián tiếp
Don't forget... Remember to... Never forget to...	Remind sb to V

"Don't forget to order the wine", said Mrs. Pitt to her husband.

=> Mrs. Pitt reminded her husband to order the wine.

Một số động từ trần thuật được theo sau trực tiếp bởi "to+V-inf": offer, agree, demand, guarantee, promise, propose, swear, threaten, volunteer.

Eg: "I will help you", she said to me.

=> She agreed to help me.

Eg: "I will kill you if you do not give me all of your money", she said to me.

=> She threatened to kill me if I did not give her all of my money.

Một số động từ trần thuật được theo sau bởi "object + to + V-inf": *advise, ask, command, encourage, expect, forbid, instruct, invite, order, persuade, remind, request, urge, want*.

"You should go now", she shouted at me.

=> She asked me to go then.

Danh động từ (V-ing) được dùng sau "admit, advise, apologize for, insist on, recommend, suggest".

"You should read a number of books before the exam", Jack said.

=> Jack recommended reading a number of books before the exam.

"Shall we go to a cafeteria?", Claire said.

=> Claire suggested going to a cafeteria.

Mệnh đề "that" (that-clause) có thể được dùng sau: *admit, advise, agree, insist, promise, remind, suggest, warn*.

"It's true that I forgot the shopping", Trevor said.

=> Trevor admitted (that) he had forgotten the shopping.

NOTE: Nếu theo sau "advise" có tân ngữ, ta sử dụng cấu trúc "Advise somebody + to V-inf" nhưng nếu không có tân ngữ thì theo sau, thì ta dùng cấu trúc: "Advise (on/about) + V-ing"

"It's great idea to buy this book", Jon said to me.

=> Jon advised me to buy that book.

"It's great idea to buy this book", Jon said.

=> Jon advised on buying that book.

6. PRACTICE: Change these following sentences into reported speech. (chữ trong video)

1. "Could you please give me the pocket next to you?", said the guy in black. (asked)
2. "Would you mind opening the doors for me?", said the girl. (ordered)
3. "Is there anything I can help, Henry?", said the teacher. (offered)
4. "Don't worry if you miss the bus", said Kent. (told)
5. "If I were you, I wouldn't lend John any money", said my friend. (advised)
6. "It's better not to neglect the deadline", the teacher said. (warned)
7. "Never make such silly mistakes again", my mother said. (told)
8. "We will drive you home tomorrow", Jane's parents said to me. (offered)
9. "You 'd better apply for that scholarship as you are qualified enough", Mr. Jon said to his students.
(encouraged)
10. "Let me do the laundry for you", my sister said to me. (insisted)
11. "We will finish all practice questions you gave us last week by tonight", the students said to their teacher. (promised)

12. "I will never let you down again", the daughter said to her mom. (promised)
13. "Would you like to go out with me next Sunday?", my boyfriend said. (invited)
14. "Some cakes?", the host said to his guests. (invited)
15. "Never forget to buy some foods for dinner", the woman said to her husband. (reminded)
16. "Remember to do the laundry before you leave", Kenny said to me. (reminded)
17. "I will report you to the boss if you miss your deadline once more", my leader said. (threatened)
18. "I will go with you if you give me \$5", the boy said to his mom. (agreed)
19. "You can't go out after 10 p.m.", my mother said. (forbade)
20. "It's me who broke the window", the naughty boy said. (admitted)
21. "Why don't we go shopping this weekend. It's sale season now!", Linda said. (recommended)
22. "Sorry for disappointing you yesterday", Ory said to his partner. (apologized)
23. "I didn't steal your money, dad", the son said. (denied)
24. "Let's play Uno when we come home", Tony said. (suggested)

ĐÁP ÁN

1. The guy in black asked me to give him the pocket next to me.
2. The girl ordered me to open the doors for her.
3. The teacher offered to help Henry.
4. Kent told Jinny not to worry if she missed the bus.
5. My friend advised me not to lend John any money.
6. The teacher warned me not to neglect the deadline.
7. My mother told me not to make such silly mistakes again.
8. Jane's parents offered to drive me home the following day.
9. Mr. Jon encouraged his students to apply for that scholarship as they were qualified enough.
10. My sister insisted on doing the laundry for me.
11. The students promised to finish all practice questions their teacher had given them the previous week by that night.
12. The daughter promised not to let her mom down again.
13. My boyfriend invited me to go out with him the following Sunday.
14. The host invited his guests to eat some cakes.
15. The woman reminded her husband to buy some food for dinner.

16. Kenny reminded me to do the laundry before I left.
17. My leader threatened to report me to the boss if I missed my deadline once more.
18. The boy agreed to go with his mom if she gave him \$5.
19. My mother forbade me to go out after 10 p.m.
20. The naughty boy admitted to having broken the window.
21. Linda recommended going shopping that weekend as it was sale season then.
22. Ory apologized to his partner for having disappointed him/her the previous day.
23. The son denied having stolen his dad's money.
24. Tony suggested playing Uno when they came home.

VI. TỔNG KẾT CÁC DẠNG CÂU GIÁN TIẾP (ID: EV1056)

Tóm tắt	Câu Gián Tiếp
A. Statements (Câu trần thuật)	S + said that/said to sb that/told sb that + clause (S+V) She said: "I have never been to Paris" => She said that she had never been to Paris.
B. Yes-no questions (Câu hỏi có không)	S + asked + sb/wondered/wanted to know + if/whether + clause (S+V) "Are you ready?", he asked me. => He asked me/wanted to know IF/WHETHER I was ready.
C. Wh-questions (Câu hỏi nội dung)	S + asked + sb/wondered/wanted to know + Wh-... + clause (S+V) "When did you finish work last night?" He asked her. => He asked her when she had finished the previous night.
D. TO- INF	1. offer + to V-infinitive They said: "We will pay for the meal" => They offered to pay for the meal.
	2. To- INF: advise, warn, persuade, encourage sb + to V... "Go on, apply for the job", said Jack to me. => Jack urged/encouraged me to apply for the job
	3. promise to V: Hứa làm gì John said: "I will write to you" => John promised to write to me.
	4. "Would you like...?", "..., please!"-> invite sb to V "Would you like to go out for lunch?", she said to me. => She invited me to go out for lunch.

Tóm tắt	Câu Gián Tiếp
	5. remind sb to V: nhắc ai làm gì. "Don't forget to order the wine", said Mrs. Pitt to her husband. => Mrs. Pitt reminded her husband to order the wine
	6. Một số động từ trần thuật được theo sau trực tiếp bởi "to+Vinf": offer, agree, demand, guarantee, promise, propose, swear, threaten, volunteer. "I will kill you if you do not give me all of your money", she said to me. => She threatened to kill me if I did not give her all of my money. Một số động từ trần thuật được theo sau bởi "object + to + Vinf": advise, ask, command, encourage, expect, forbid, instruct, invite, order, persuade, remind, request, urge, want. "You should go now", she shouted at me. => She asked me to go then.
E. GERUND	admit, advise, apologize for, insist on, recommend, suggest + Ving "You should read a number of books before the exam", Jack said. => Jack recommended reading a number of books before the exam.
	Mệnh đề "that" có thể được dùng sau: admit, advise, agree, insist promise, remind, suggest. "It's true that I forgot the shopping", Trevor said. -> Trevor admitted (that) he had forgotten the shopping.

VII. CÂU HỖN HỢP TRONG LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP

1. Câu trần thuật + câu hỏi

2. Câu hỏi + câu mệnh lệnh

3. Câu mệnh lệnh + câu trần thuật...

"I have left my watch at home. What time is it now?" he asked.

=> He said he had left his watch at home and asked (me) what time it was then.

"I'm going shopping. Can I get you anything?", she said.

=> She said she was going shopping and asked if she could get me anything.

"Someone's coming", he said to me, "Get behind the screen."

=> He said that someone was coming and told me to get behind the screen.

"Let's shop on Friday. The supermarket will be very crowded on Saturday", she said.

=> She suggested shopping on Friday and said that the supermarket would be very crowded on Saturday.

"Please, please don't drink too much! Remember that you will have to drive home", she said.

=> She begged him not to drink too much and reminded him that he would have to drive home.

Khi mệnh đề sau là câu giải thích cho mệnh đề trước, ta có thể sử dụng "as" thay cho động từ trần thuật thứ hai.

He said to me: "You had better wear a coat. It is very cold out".

=> He advised me to wear a coat as it was very cold out.

"Let's shopping on Friday. The supermarket will be very crowded on Saturday".

=> She suggested shopping on Friday as the supermarket would be very crowded on Saturday.

PRACTICE: (chữa trong video)

Exercise 1: Change these sentences into reported speech.

1. Helen said, "I think I'll have to find a better job. I can't make both ends meet"
2. He said to her "Why are you so late? I've been waiting for half an hour already".
- 3 She said to him: "Don't let them down. I'll be very embarrassed if you go back on your words".
4. She said to her husband: "You'd better not drink too much. You may lose control of the car and have a bad accident".
5. The boy said to his mother: "When shall we have lunch? I'm very hungry".
6. He said, "I don't understand why she has refused to join us on the trip".
7. She said to him, "I'm glad you've come. Sit down, please".
8. Mr. Brown said to his wife, "I don't feel like going out this evening. Let's ask the Browns to come over for a chat".
9. "It's raining too hard to go out. We'd better stay home tonight and watch TV instead", John said.
10. "Could you ring up the station and find out when the train comes in?" said Tom to me.
11. Daisy said: "I want to be a famous singer in the world." (dreamed of)
12. The police said to the hunters, "Everyone stopped hunting and killing animals". (prevented)

13. The boy said to the woman, "I've broken the window of your house". (admitted)

14 "I think he stole that car", my friend said (suspected)

15 He said, "If I catch the plane, I'll be home by five".

Exercise 2: Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best completes each sentence.

1. Jack asked me _____.

A. where do you come from?

B. where did I came from

C. where I came from

D. where did I come from?

2. She asked me _____ I liked pop music.

A. when

B. what

C. if

D. x

3. I wanted to know _____ return home.

A. when would she

B. when will she

C. when she will

D. when she would

4. Claire told me that her father _____ a race horse.

A. owns

B. owned

C. owning

D. A and B

5. I rang my friend in Australia yesterday, and she said it _____ raining there.

A. is

B. were

C. has been

D. was

6. The last time I saw Linda, she looked very relaxed. She explained she'd been on holiday the _____ week.

A. ago

B. following

C. next

D. previous

7. I wonder _____ the tickets are on sale yet.

A. what

B. when

C. where

D. whether

8. Bill was slow, so I _____ hurry up.

A. tell him

B. told him for

C. told to

D. told him to

9. "You'd better apologise for telling lie," said my mother.

A. My mother advised me to apologise for telling lie.

B. My mother suggested me to apologise for telling lie.

C. My mother suggested apologising for telling lie.

D. My mother warned me to apologise for telling lie.

10. "Could you check the oil, please?" I asked the mechanic.

- A. I invited the mechanic to check the oil.
- B. I asked the mechanic to check the oil.
- C. I reminded the mechanic to check the oil.
- D. I warned the mechanic to check the oil.

ĐÁP ÁN

Exercise 1:

1. Helen said that she thought she would have to find a better job because she couldn't make both ends meet.
2. He asked her why she was so late and added that he had been waiting for half an hour already.
3. She told/advised him not to let them down and added that she would be very embarrassed if he went back on his words.
4. She advised her husband not to drink too much and added that he might lose control of the car and have a bad accident.
5. The boy asked his mother when they would have lunch and said he was very hungry.
6. He said he didn't understand why she had refused to join them on the trip.
7. She told him she was very glad he had come and invited him to sit down.
8. Mr. Brown told his wife he didn't feel like going out that evening and suggested asking the Browns to come over for a chat.
9. John said it was raining too hard to go out and suggested that they should stay at home and watch TV instead.
10. Tom asked me to ring up the station to find out when the train came in.
11. Daisy dreamed of being a famous singer in the world.
12. The police prevented the hunters from hunting and killing animals.
13. The boy admitted to having broken the window of the woman's house.
14. My friend suspected him of stealing that car
15. He said if he caught the plane, he would be home by five.

Exercise 2:

1. C 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. D 6. D 7. D 8. D 9. A 10. B

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer.

A. come B. coming
C. to come D. came

A. the movie began B. the movie begins
C. does the movie begin D. did the movies begin

A. is
B. had been
C. will be
D. would be

A. please pick B. to pick
C. should pick D. I can pick

A. were getting/tomorrow B. are getting/the next day
C. were getting/the next day D. will get/the day after

A. he had seen
B. I hadn't seen
C. he didn't see
D. he hadn't seen

A. if I am doing B. was I doing
C. am I doing D. whether I was doing

A. told me B. told to me
C. said me D. asked me

A. time was it B. time is it
C. time it was D. none is correct

A. told her wake B. asked her to wake
C. said her to wake D. requested her wake

Câu 11: "Please don't tell anyone what happened", An said to me.

- A. An said to me please don't tell anyone what happened.
- B. An told me didn't tell anyone what had happened.
- C. An said me not to tell anyone what happened.
- D. An told me not to tell anyone what had happened.

Câu 12: "Would you like to go to the cinema with me tonight", he said to me.

- A. He invited me to go to the cinema with him that night.
- B. He offered me to go to the cinema with him tonight.
- C. He asked me if I'd like to go to the cinema with him tonight.
- D. He would like me to go to the cinema with him this night.

Câu 13: "Can I take a friend to the party?" => Hung asked me _____.

- A. Hung asked me if he could take a friend to the party.
- B. Hung wanted to ask someone to take his friend to the party.
- C. Hung knew that taking a friend to the party was good.
- D. I wanted to invite his friend to the party.

Câu 14: "I'm really sorry for being late again", said Nga.

- A. I felt sorry for Nga's being late again.
- B. Nga was sorry for my being late again.
- C. Nga excused for my being late again.
- D. Nga apologized for being late again.

Câu 15: Miss Lan said to him "Why are you so late? Did your car have a flat tire?"

- A. Miss Lan told him why was he so late and did your car have a flat tire.
- B. Miss Lan asked him why was he so late and did your car have have a flat tire.
- C. Miss Lan asked him why was he so late and if your car have have a flat tire.
- D. Miss Lan asked him why he was so late and whether his car had a flat tire.

Câu 16: "Don't play ball near the restricted area." I said to the boy.

- A. I warned the boy not play ball near the restricted area.
- B. I warned not to play ball near the restricted area.
- C. I warned the boy against playing ball near the restricted area.
- D. I warned the boy against for playing ball near the restricted area.

Câu 17: "You stole my bike", he said.

- A. He accused me of having stolen his bike.
- B. He accused me of steal his bike.
- C. He said to me not to stole his bike.
- D. He warned me not to stole his bike.

Câu 18: "It was your fault. You didn't tell the truth", she said.

- A. She blamed for me for not telling the truth.
- B. She blamed me for not telling the truth.
- C. She blamed me on not telling the truth.
- D. She blamed me for not tell the truth.

Câu 19: "I wish I had visited her" said he.

- A. He regretted not having visited her.
- B. He regretted not to visit her.
- C. He regretted to visit her.
- D. He regretted for having visited her.

Câu 20: "Liar!"

- A. He called me a liar.
- B. He said me a liar.
- C. He told me to be a liar.
- D. He said me that I was a liar.

Exercise 2: Rewrite the following sentences.

Câu 1: Lan: "Why don't you study hard for the exam, Nam?"

=> Lan advised Nam _____.

Câu 2: "Go on, Marry! Apply for the job", the mother said.

=> The mother encouraged _____.

Câu 3: "Shall I make you a cup of tea?", the girl said to the lady.

=> The girl offered _____.

Câu 4: "You should have finished the report by now", Mr Hung told his secretary.

=> Mr Hung reproached _____.

Câu 5: "Thank you very much for your help, Quang", said Nga.

=> Nga thanked _____.

Câu 6: "I will pay back the money, Nga", said Nam.

=> Nam promised _____.

Câu 7: The captain said to his men: "Leave there immediately."

=> The captain ordered _____.

Câu 8: "You are always getting up late", my mother said.

=> My mother complained _____.

Câu 9: "Why don't we go out for a walk?" said the boy.

=> The boy suggested _____.

Câu 10: How dreadful!

=> He exclaimed that _____.

Câu 11: "Have a happy birthday", she said.

=> She wished me _____.

Câu 12: "I'm happy to know that you win the game. Congratulations!", Jim said to Mary.

=> Jim congratulated Mary _____.

Câu 13: "Welcome to my house, my dear", she said to her friend.

=> She welcomed _____.

Câu 14: "You shouldn't have made that mistake", the boss said to me.

=> The boss criticized me _____.

Câu 15: "I've made the wall dirty", said one student.

=> One student admitted _____.

Câu 16: Peter said: "I didn't steal the painting."

=> Peter denied _____.

Câu 17: Ann: "Would you lend me another £50?" - Tom: "No, I won't lend you any more money".

=> Tom refused _____.

Câu 18: Daisy said: "I want to be a famous singer in the world."

=> Daisy dreamed _____.

Câu 19: "I think he stole that car", my friend said.

=> My friend suspected _____.

Câu 20: My mother said: "I can't let you use the phone".

=> My mother prevented _____.

ĐÁP ÁN

Exercise 1:

1. D	2. A	3. B	4. B	5. C	6. D.	7. D	8. A	9. C	10. B
11. D	12. A	13. A	14. D	15. D	16. C	17. A	18. B	19. A	20. A

Exercise 2:

Câu 1: Lan advised Nam to study hard for the exam.

Câu 2: The mother encouraged to apply for the job.

Câu 3: The girl offered to make a cup of tea for the lady

Câu 4: Mr Hung reproached his secretary for not having finished the report.

Câu 5: Nga thanked Quang for his help/for helping her.

Câu 6: Nam promised to pay back Nga's money.

Câu 7: The captain ordered his man to leave immediately.

Câu 8: My mother complained about my getting up late.

Câu 9: The boy suggested going out for a walk.

Câu 10: He exclaimed that it was dreadful.

Câu 11: She wished me a happy birthday.

Câu 12: Jim congratulated Mary on winning the game.

Câu 13: She welcomed her friend to her house.

Câu 14: The boss criticized me for having made that mistake.

Câu 15: One student admitted to making the wall dirty.

Câu 16: Peter denied stealing the painting.

Câu 17: Tom refused to lend Ann any more money.

Câu 18: Daisy dreamed of being a famous singer in the world.

Câu 19: My friend suspected him of stealing that car.

Câu 20: My mother prevented me from using the phone.

Để làm được dạng bài chuyển câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp, các em cần xác định được đó là loại câu nào. Nếu là câu tường thuật hay câu hỏi, thì các em cần áp dụng 3 quy tắc chuyển đổi. Còn nếu là các loại câu đặc biệt như câu ước, lời mời, lời khuyên....thì các em phải nhớ được dạng câu gián tiếp của nó đã được liệt kê trong bài học.

B - LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1: (ID: ET1133)

Câu 1 [ID: 213782] Julia said that she _____ there at noon.

A. is going to be

B. was going to be

C. will be

D. can be

Câu 2 [ID: 213783] He _____ that he was leaving way that afternoon.

A. told me

B. told to me

C. said me

D. says to me

Câu 3 [ID: 213784] She told me _____.

A. think well before I answered

B. think well before I answer

C. to think well before I answered

D. think well before I will answer

Câu 4 [ID: 213785] I _____ him to sell that old motorbike.

A. said to

B. suggested

C. advised

D. recommended

Câu 5 [ID: 213786] My parents reminded me _____ the flowers.

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| A. remember to plant | B. not to plant to plant |
| C. to plant | D. planting |

Câu 6 [ID: 213787] I asked Martha _____ to enter law school.

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| A. are you planning | B. is she planning |
| C. was she planning | D. if she was planning |

Câu 7 [ID: 213788] Nam wanted to know what time _____.

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| A. does the movie begin | B. did the movie begin |
| C. the movie begins | D. the movie began |

Câu 8 [ID: 213789] I wondered _____ the right thing.

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------|
| A. whether I was doing | B. if I am doing |
| C. was I doing | D. am I doing |

Câu 9 [ID: 213790] The scientist said the earth _____ the sun.

- | | |
|----------------|---------------------|
| A. goes around | B. is going around |
| C. went around | D. was going around |

Câu 10 [ID: 213791] Peter said that if he _____ rich, he _____ a lot.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| A. is – will travel | B. were – would travel |
| C. had been – would have travelled | D. was – will travel |

Câu 11 [ID: 213792] They said that they had been driving through the desert _____.

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| A. the previous day | B. yesterday |
| C. the last day | D. sunday previously |

Câu 12 [ID: 213793] He asked the children _____ too much noise.

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| A. not to make | B. not making |
| C. don't make | D. if they don't make |

Câu 13 [ID: 213794] The man said that the days _____ longer in summer.

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| A. will be | B. are |
| C. were | D. can be |

Câu 14 [ID: 213795] The teacher said Columbus _____ America in 1942.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| A. discovered | B. had discovered |
| C. was discovering | D. would discover |

Câu 15 [ID: 213796] John said he _____ her since they _____ school.

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| A. hasn't met – left | B. hadn't met - had left |
| C. hadn't met – left | D. didn't meet – has left |

Câu 16 [ID: 213797] The woman asked _____ get lunch at school.

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| A. can the children | B. whether the children could |
| C. if the children can | D. could the children |

Câu 17 [ID: 213798] The teacher advised us _____.

- A. to be careful when doing these exercises
- B. be careful when doing these exercises
- C. careful when doing these exercises
- D. are careful when doing these exercises

Câu 18 [ID: 213799] He asked, "Why didn't she take the final exam?" - He asked why _____ the final exam.

- A. she took
- B. did she take
- C. she hadn't taken
- D. she had taken

Câu 19 [ID: 213800] "What were you doing last night, Mr John?" asked the police.

- A. The police asked what were you doing last night, Mr John.
- B. The police asked Mr John what he had been doing the night before.
- C. The police asked Mr John what he had been done the night before.
- D. The police asked Mr John what had he been done the night before.

Câu 20 [ID: 213801] They told their parents that they _____ their best to do the test.

- A. try
- B. will try
- C. are trying
- D. would try

Câu 21 [ID: 213802] She asked me where I _____ from.

- A. come
- B. coming
- C. to come
- D. came

Câu 22 [ID: 213803] She _____ me whether I liked classical music or not.

- A. ask
- B. asks
- C. asked
- D. asking

Câu 23 [ID: 213804] He asked me who the editor of that book _____.

- A. was
- B. were
- C. is
- D. has been

Câu 24 [ID: 213805] He wants to know whether I _____ back tomorrow.

- A. come
- B. came
- C. will come
- D. would come

Câu 25 [ID: 213806] I wonder why he _____ love his family.

- A. doesn't
- B. don't
- C. didn't
- D. hasn't

Câu 26 [ID: 213807] They asked me how many children _____.

- A. I had
- B. had I
- C. I have
- D. have I

Câu 27 [ID: 213808] Thu said she had been _____ the day before.

- A. here B. there
C. in this place D. where

Câu 28 [ID: 213809] The student said that the English test _____ the most difficult.

- A. is B. was
C. will be D. have been

Câu 29 [ID: 213810] He wanted to know _____ shopping during the previous morning.

- A. if we had been going B. that if we had been going
C. we were going D. that we were going

Câu 30 [ID: 213811] He asked me _____ Robert and I said I did not know _____.

- A. that did I know/who were Robert B. that I knew/who Robert were
C. if I knew/who Robert was D. whether I knew/who was Robert

Câu 31 [ID: 213812] The mother asked her son _____.

- A. where he has been B. where he had been
C. where has he been D. where had he been

Câu 32 [ID: 213813] Martin asked me _____.

- A. how is my father B. how my father is
C. how was my father D. how my father was

Câu 33 [ID: 213814] The host asked Peter _____ tea or coffee.

- A. whether he preferred B. that he preferred
C. did he prefer D. if he prefers

Câu 34 [ID: 213815] She asked me _____ my holidays _____.

- A. where I spent/the previous year
B. where I had spent/the previous year
C. where I spent/last year
D. where did I spend/last year

Câu 35 [ID: 213816] He advised _____ too far.

- A. her did not go B. her do not go
C. her not to go D. she did not go

Câu 36 [ID: 213817] John often says he _____ boxing because it _____ a cruel sport.

- A. does not like/is B. did not like/were
C. not liked/had been D. had not liked/was

Câu 37 [ID: 213818] Nancy asked me why I had not gone to New York the summer _____.

- A. before B. ago
C. last D. previous

Câu 38 [ID: 213819] He asked _____ him some money.

- A. her to lend
- B. she to lend
- C. she has lent
- D. she lends

Câu 39 [ID: 213820] Andrew told me that they _____ fish two _____ days.

- A. have not eaten/ago
- B. had not eaten/previous
- C. did not eat/before
- D. would not eat/last

Câu 40 [ID: 213821] Jason told me that he _____ his best in the exam the _____ day.

- A. had done/following
- B. will do/previous
- C. would do/following
- D. was going/previous

Câu 41 [ID: 213822] John asked me _____ in English.

- A. what does this word mean
- B. what that word means
- C. what did this word mean
- D. what that word meant

Câu 42 [ID: 213823] The mother told her son _____ so impolitely.

- A. not behave
- B. not to behave
- C. not behaving
- D. did not behave

Câu 43 [ID: 213824] She said she _____ collect it for me after work.

- A. would
- B. did
- C. must
- D. had

Câu 44 [ID: 213825] She said I _____ an angel.

- A. am
- B. was
- C. were
- D. have been

Câu 45 [ID: 213826] I have ever told you he _____ unreliable.

- A. is
- B. were
- C. had been
- D. would be

Câu 46 [ID: 213827] I told him _____ the word to Jane somehow that I _____ to reach her during the early hours.

- A. passing/will try
- B. he will pass/tried
- C. to pass/would be trying
- D. he passed/have tried

Câu 47 [ID: 213828] Laura said she had worked on the assignment since _____.

- A. yesterday
- B. two days ago
- C. the day before
- D. the next day

Câu 48 [ID: 213829] John asked me _____ interested in any kind of sports.

- A. if I were
- B. if were I
- C. if was I
- D. if I was

Câu 49 [ID: 213830] John asked me _____ that film the night before.

- A. that I saw
B. had I seen
C. if I had seen
D. if had I seen

Câu 50 [ID: 213831] The guest told the host that _____.

- A. I must go now
B. he must go now
C. he had to go now
D. he had to go then

ĐÁP ÁN

1. B	2. A	3. C	4. C	5. C	6. D	7. D	8. A	9. A	10. B
11. A	12. A	13. B	14. A	15. B	16. B	17. A	18. C	19. B	20. D
21. D	22. C	23. A	24. C	25. A	26. A	27. B	28. B	29. A	30. C
31. B	32. D	33. A	34. B	35. C	36. A	37. A	38. A	39. B	40. C
41. D	42. B	43. A	44. B	45. A	46. C	47. C	48. D	49. C	50. D

LUYỆN TẬP 2: (ID: ET1134)

Câu 1 [ID: 213832] "I'll tell you about this tomorrow, Mary", said Tom.

- A. Tom said to Mary that he will tell her about that the next day.
B. Tom told Mary that I would tell you about that the next day.
C. Tom told Mary that he would tell her about that the next day.
D. Tom told Mary that she would tell him about that the next day.

Câu 2 [ID: 213833] "I have something to tell you", Mary said to John.

- A. Mary told John I had something to tell him.
B. Mary told John she had something to tell him.
C. Mary told John she had had something to tell him.
D. Mary told John he had had something to tell her.

Câu 3 [ID: 213834] He said, "My wife has just bought a diamond ring."

- A. He said that his wife had just bought a diamond ring.
B. He said that my wife had just bought a diamond ring.
C. He said that his wife has just bought a diamond ring.
D. he said that his wife just bought a diamond ring.

Câu 4 [ID: 213835] "I will come with you as soon as I am ready", she said to Philip.

- A. She said to Philip he will come to see you as soon as he I am ready.
B. She told Philip she will come to see her as soon as she was ready.
C. She told Philip she would come to see you as soon as she was ready.
D. She told Philip she would come to see him as soon as she was ready.

Câu 5 [ID: 213836] "I wrote to him yesterday".

- A. She said to me I wrote to him the day before.
- B. She told me she wrote to him yesterday.
- C. She told me she had written to him yesterday.
- D. She told me she had written to him the day before.

Câu 6 [ID: 213837] "He is talking to your sister", she said to me.

- A. She told me he was talking to your sister.
- B. She told me she was talking to my sister.
- C. She told me he was talking to my sister.
- D. She told me he was talking to her sister.

Câu 7 [ID: 213838] "It is the time to check what you have done", the father said to the boys.

- A. The father said to the boys it was time to check what they had done.
- B. The father told the boys it was time to check what they had done.
- C. The father told the boys it was time to check what they have done.
- D. The father told the boys it is time to check what they had done.

Câu 8 [ID: 213839] "You will like my sister when you meet her."

- A. He told me you will like her sister when you meet her.
- B. He told me I will like his sister when I met her.
- C. He told me I would like his sister when I met her.
- D. He told me I would be liked his sister when I met her.

Câu 9 [ID: 213840] "I didn't meet Susan last week."

- A. He said he didn't meet Susan the week before.
- B. He said he hasn't met Susan last week.
- C. He said he hadn't met Susan last week.
- D. He said he hadn't met Susan the week before.

Câu 10 [ID: 213841] "I didn't break your watch."

- A. The boy told the girl he hadn't broken her watch.
- B. The boy told the girl he didn't break her watch.
- C. The boy asked the girl he hadn't broken her watch.
- D. The boy told the girl he hadn't broken your watch.

Câu 11 [ID: 213842] "Could you tell me how to get to the airport?"

- A. He asked me how to get to the airport.
- B. He said if I could tell him the airport.
- C. He told me how to get to the airport.
- D. He asked me to tell how to get to the airport.

Câu 12 [ID: 213843] "Have you heard of her marriage?"

- A. She asked me if I hear of their marriage.
- B. She asked me whether I had heard of their marriage.
- C. She asked me if I had heard of their marriage.
- D. B and C.

Câu 13 [ID: 213844] Cindy said: "I haven't seen John since last month."

- A. Cindy said she hasn't seen John since the previous month.
- B. Cindy said she hadn't seen John since the previous month.
- C. Cindy said she wasn't seen John since the previous month.
- D. Cindy said she doesn't see John since the previous month.

Câu 14 [ID: 213845] The little boy said: "Two and two make four."

- A. The little boy said that two and two made four.
- B. The little boy said that two and two have made four.
- C. The little boy said that two and two had made four.
- D. The little boy said that two and two make four.

Câu 15 [ID: 213846] "If I were you, I would go to the doctor", Minh said to Lan.

- A. Minh told Lan to become a doctor.
- B. Minh advised Lan to go to the doctor.
- C. Minh told Lan that he would go to the doctor.
- D. Minh advised Lan not to go to the doctor

Câu 16 [ID: 213847] His wife said to him: "Write to me as often as you can."

- A. His wife told him to write to her as often as he can.
- B. His wife told him to write to her as often as he could.
- C. His wife told him writing to her as often as he could.
- D. His wife told him writing to her as often as he can.

Câu 17 [ID: 213848] "What were you doing last night, Mr John?", asked the police.

- A. The police asked what were you doing last night, Mr John.
- B. The police asked Mr John what he had been doing the night before.
- C. The police asked Mr John what he had been done the night before.
- D. The police asked Mr John what had he been done the night before.

Câu 18 [ID: 213849] My friend asked me who _____ the piano in the sitting room.

- A. was playing
- B. plays
- C. is playing
- D. has played

Câu 19 [ID: 213850] The teacher told his students _____ laughing.

- A. would stop
- B. to stop
- C. stop
- D. stopped

Câu 20 [ID: 213851] Mary asked me _____.

- A. whether I would watch the football match on TV the day before.
- B. whether I watched the football match on TV the day before.
- C. If I had watch the football match on TV the day before.
- D. whether I had watched the football match on TV the day before.

Câu 21 [ID: 213852] "Why hasn't Minh phoned?" she wondered

- A. She wondered why Minh hasn't phoned.
- B. She wondered why Minh didn't phone.
- C. She wondered why Minh hadn't phoned.
- D. She wondered why hadn't Minh phoned.

Câu 22 [ID: 213853] Jennifer asked me where _____ the week before.

- A. had I gone
- B. did I go
- C. I had gone
- D. was I going

Câu 23 [ID: 213854] Tom asked me _____.

- A. if was I having a good time last year.
- B. whether I had had a good time the year before.
- C. if would I have a good time the year before.
- D. whether I have had a good time the year before.

Câu 24 [ID: 213855] Do you know where _____?

- A. he lives
- B. did he live
- C. does he live
- D. he live

Câu 25 [ID: 213856] She asked me _____ the seat _____ or not.

- A. if/had occupied
- B. whether/was occupied
- C. if/has been occupied
- D. whether/occupied

Câu 26 [ID: 213857] The policeman asked us _____.

- A. had any of us seen the accident happen.
- B. whether any of us had seen the accident happen.
- C. if had any of us seen the accident happen.
- D. that if any of us had seen the accident happen.

Câu 27 [ID: 213858] I asked him _____, but he said nothing.

- A. what the matter was
- B. what was the matter
- C. the matter was what
- D. what's the matter was

Câu 28 [ID: 213859] James _____ him up when the bus reached the square.

- A. told me wake
- B. asked me to wake
- C. said me to wake
- D. requested me waking

Câu 29 [ID: 213860] Excuse me. Could you tell me _____?

- A. what time is it
- B. what is the time
- C. what time it is
- D. it is what time

Câu 30 [ID: 213861] We wondered _____ from his office after that scandal.

- A. why did he not resign B. why he did not resign
C. why he not resign D. why didn't he resign

Câu 31 [ID: 213862] Jeff wanted to know _____.

- A. that why were his friends laughing B. why were his friends laughing
C. why his friends were laughing D. the reason why his friends laughing

Câu 32 [ID: 213863] Mr. Hawk told me that he would give me his answer the _____ day.

- A. previous B. following C. before D. last

Câu 33 [ID: 213864] She _____ him whether he liked the steak she cooked.

- A. asks B. wondered C. wanted to know D. asked

Câu 34 [ID: 213865] His neighbors sometimes wondered _____ he did for a living.

- A. why B. when C. where D. what

Câu 35 [ID: 213866] Could you please tell me _____?

- A. it is how far to the nearest bus stop
B. how far is it to the nearest bus stop
C. how far to the nearest bus stop is it
D. how far it is to the nearest bus stop

Câu 36 [ID: 213867] Marigold wondered _____ Kevin and Ruth would be at the party.

- A. that B. whether C. if D. B & C

Câu 37 [ID: 213868] He asked me _____.

- A. how long I have studied English. B. how long had I studied English.
C. how long I had study English. D. how long I had studied English.

Câu 38 [ID: 213869] The passengers asked _____ we landed.

- A. what B. when C. if D. why

Câu 39 [ID: 213870] She asked Nam what _____ in that room.

- A. he is doing B. he was doing C. was he doing D. she was doing

Câu 40 [ID: 213871] "I didn't take your calculator", Bob said to Mary.

- A. Bob told Mary he hadn't taken her calculator.
B. Bob told Mary I didn't take your calculator.
C. Bob told Mary he haven't taken her calculator.
D. Bob told Mary he had taken her calculator.

Câu 41 [ID: 213872] Mrs. Emmanuelle told to Alice to give her a hand.

- A. Emmanuelle B. told to C. to give D. a hand

Câu 42 [ID: 213873] John said the taxi driver to turn left at the first traffic lights.

- A. said B. to turn C. first traffic D. lights

Câu 43 [ID: 213874] Mary ordered John if he could carry her suitcase, please.

- A. ordered B. could C. her suitcase D. please

Câu 44 [ID: 213875] Johnson Nancy Lee asked me if would I like to have dinner with her.

- A. asked B. would I like C. to have D. with

Câu 45 [ID: 213876] Hoa asked Lan whether did she like sports or not.

- A. asked B. whether C. did she like D. or not

Câu 46 [ID: 213877] Ba told to Tuan if he could ride his bicycle to school.

- A. told to B. could ride C. his D. to

Câu 47 [ID: 213878] Phong asked Peter whether he enjoys reading books or not.

- A. whether B. enjoys C. reading D. or not

Câu 48 [ID: 213879] Mary promised her boyfriend that she would expect to see him next Wednesday.

- A. promised B. would expect to C. see D. next Wednesday

Câu 49 [ID: 213880] A tourist asked how far was it from Ho Chi Minh City to Hue.

- A. A tourist B. how far C. was it D. to

Câu 50 [ID: 213881] He asked Lan how many people there are in her family.

- A. many B. people C. there are D. her

ĐÁP ÁN

1. C	2. B	3. A	4. D	5. D	6. C	7. B	8. C	9. D	10. A
11. A	12. D	13. B	14. D	15. B	16. B	17. B	18. A	19. B	20. D
21. C	22. C	23. B	24. A	25. B	26. B	27. A	28. B	29. C	30. B
31. C	32. B	33. D	34. D	35. D	36. D	37. D	38. B	39. B	40. A
41. B	42. A	43. D	44. B	45. C	46. A	47. B	48. D	49. C	50. C

LUYỆN TẬP 3: (ID: ET1135)

Câu 1 [ID: 213909] The doctor _____ him to take a rest immediately.

- A. told B. tell C. have told D. are telling

Câu 2 [ID: 213910] "How long _____ here?", asked Jane.

- A. you have been B. you had been
C. had you been D. have you been

Câu 3 [ID: 213911] "Answer this letter for me, will you?", he said "And remember to keep a copy".

- A. He warned me to answer that letter and reminded me to keep a copy.
B. He told me to answer that letter and suggested me to keep a copy.
C. He told me to answer that letter and reminded me to keep a copy.
D. He suggested answering that letter and reminded me to keep a copy.

Câu 4 [ID: 213912] "Why don't you go by train? It's much less tiring than driving", I said.

- A. I advised him to go by train as it was much less tiring than driving.
- B. I suggested him to go by train as it was much less tiring than driving.
- C. I warned him to go by train as it was much less tiring than driving.
- D. I advised him going by train as it was much less tiring than driving.

Câu 5 [ID: 213914] "Will you be here tomorrow?", she asked – "Yes" I answered.

- A. She asked if I would be there the next day and I said that I would.
- B. She asked if I will be there the next day and I said that I will.
- C. She asked if you would be there the next day and I said that you would.
- D. She asked if I would be there the next day and I said that I will.

Câu 6 [ID: 213915] She said to us "Don't be late again".

- A. She said us not to be late again.
- B. She told us to be not late again.
- C. She told to us not to be late again.
- D. She told us not to be late again.

Câu 7 [ID: 213917] John said "You had better not lend them any money, Daisy".

- A. John said Daisy not to lend them any money.
- B. John advised Daisy should not lend any money.
- C. John said to Daisy not lend them any money.
- D. John advised Daisy not to lend them any money.

Câu 8 [ID: 213918] "I'm sorry I have to leave so early", he said.

- A. He apologized for having to leave early.
- B. He apologized to have to leave early.
- C. He apologized that he has to leave early.
- D. He apologized to have left early.

Câu 9 [ID: 213920] "Can I borrow your pen please, Sam?", said Gillian.

- A. Gillian asked Sam if she can borrow his pen.
- B. Gillian asked Sam if she could borrow his pen.
- C. Gillian asked Sam she can borrow his pen.
- D. Gillian asked Sam she could borrow his pen.

Câu 10 [ID: 213922] "Where did you go last night, Nam?", said Hoa.

- A. Hoa said to Nam where had he gone the night before.
- B. Hoa said to Nam where he had gone the night before.
- C. Hoa told Nam where he had gone last night.
- D. Hoa asked Nam where he had gone the night before.

- Câu 11 [ID: 213924]** "What were you doing last night, Mr. John?", the detective asked.
- A. The detective asked what were you doing last night, Mr. John.
 - B. The detective asked Mr. John what he had been doing the night before.
 - C. The detective asked Mr. John what had he been done the night before.
 - D. The detective asked Mr. John what he had done the night before.
- Câu 12 [ID: 213926]** They said "Hurrah! We have won the contest!"
- A. They said "Hurrah" that they had won the contest.
 - B. They said they had won the contest.
 - C. They exclaimed with joy that they had won the contest.
 - D. They said with joy that they have won the contest.
- Câu 13 [ID: 213928]** Miss White said to him, "Why are you so late? Did your car have a flat fire?"
- A. Miss White told him why was he so late and did your car have a flat fire.
 - B. Miss White asked him why was he so late and did your car have a flat fire.
 - C. Miss White asked him why was he so late and if your car has a flat fire.
 - D. Miss White asked him why he was so late and whether his car had a flat fire.
- Câu 14 [ID: 213930]** His friend said to Peter "I'm sad. Let me alone".
- A. His friend said that I am sad and let me alone.
 - B. His friend said that I was sad and let me alone.
 - C. His friend said that he was sad and told Peter to let him alone.
 - D. His friend said that he was sad and if Peter to him alone.
- Câu 15 [ID: 213931]** "What does she like?" he asked me.
- A. He asked me what she likes.
 - B. He asked me what she liked.
 - C. He asked me what do I like.
 - D. He asked me what did he like.
- Câu 16 [ID: 213932]** She said, "Don't make me angry, John."
- A. She said not to make her angry.
 - B. She said John not to make me angry.
 - C. She told John not to make her angry.
 - D. She told John do not make her angry.
- Câu 17 [ID: 213935]** He told me that _____.
- A. his father has sold the house.
 - B. his father had sold the house the previous day.
 - C. his father will sell the house.
 - D. his father don't sell the house.

Câu 18 [ID: 213991] He asked "Why did she take my pen?" – He asked why _____.

- A. she took his pen.
- B. did he take his pen.
- C. she had taken his pen.
- D. she has taken his pen.

Câu 19 [ID: 213992] He said, "Great! We have won the match!"

- A. He said "Great" that they had won the match.
- B. He said with joy that they have won the match.
- C. He exclaimed with joy that they had won the match.
- D. He said that they have won the match.

Câu 20 [ID: 213993] My father said to me, "Why are you late? Did you miss the train?"

- A. My father told me why was I late and did I miss the train.
- B. My father asked me why was I late and did I miss the train.
- C. My father asked me why you were late and if you missed the train.
- D. My father asked me why I was late and whether I had missed the train.

Câu 21 [ID: 213994] I said to him "I'm very angry with you. Go away."

- A. I said that I am very angry with you and go away.
- B. I said that I was very angry with you and went away.
- C. I said that I was very angry with him and told him to go away.
- D. I said that he was very angry with me and told me to go away.

Câu 22 [ID: 213995] "What do you want?" he asked me.

- A. He asked me what I want.
- B. He asked me what I wanted.
- C. He asked me what do I want
- D. He asked me what did I want.

Câu 23 [ID: 213996] She said, "Don't smile, John. Be serious."

- A. She said not to smile and be serious.
- B. She said John not to smile and be serious.
- C. She told John not to smile and asked him to be serious.
- D. She told John do not smile and be serious.

Câu 24 [ID: 213997] He said "If I had enough money, I could buy that dictionary."

- A. He said if he had enough money, he could buy that dictionary.
- B. He said if he had had enough money, he could buy that dictionary.
- C. He said if he had enough money, he could have bought that dictionary.
- D. He said if he had had enough money, he could have bought that dictionary.

Câu 25 [ID: 213998] "Good morning, Mary! How are you?" Henry said

- A. Henry greeted Mary and asked how she was.
- B. Henry greeted Mary and asked how is she.
- C. Henry said good morning Mary and asked how was she.
- D. Henry said good morning and asked Mary how she is.

Câu 26 [ID: 213999] Cindy said that "I haven't seen John since last month."

- A. Cindy said she doesn't see John since the previous month.
- B. Cindy said she wasn't seen John since the previous month.
- C. Cindy said she hasn't seen John since the previous month.
- D. Cindy said she hadn't seen John since the previous month.

Câu 27 [ID: 214000] "I will let you know the answer by the end of this week," Tom said to Janet.

- A. Tom suggested giving Janet the answer by the end of the week.
- B. Tom promised to give Janet the answer by the end of the week.
- C. Tom insisted on letting Janet know the answer by the end of the week.
- D. Tom offered to give Janet the answer by the end of the week.

Câu 28 [ID: 214001] "Sorry, Madam. Looking after the garden is not my duty."

- A. He apologized for not looking after the garden.
- B. He not promised to look after the garden.
- C. He said that he was not responsible for looking after the garden.
- D. He asked if looking after the garden was his duty.

Câu 29 [ID: 214002] "Let's go to the cinema tonight!" he suggested.

- A. He suggested that let's them to go to the cinema that night.
- B. He suggested them to go to the cinema that night.
- C. He suggested going to the cinema that night.
- D. He suggested they went to the cinema that night.

Câu 30 [ID: 214003] "Don't come home late, Jenny, it is dangerous!" her father said.

- A. Jenny's father advised her to come home early.
- B. Jenny's father told her not to come home late because it was dangerous.
- C. Jenny's father asked her against being home late because it may be dangerous.
- D. Jenny's father told her not to come home late and it was dangerous.

Câu 31 [ID: 214004] "You should have finished the report by now," John told his secretary.

- A. John reminded his secretary of finishing the report on time.
- B. John reproached his secretary for not having finished the report.
- C. John said that his secretary had not finished the report.
- D. John scolded his secretary of not having finished the report.

Câu 32 [ID: 214005] "Don't be so disappointed, Bill. You can take the driving test again," said Helen.

- A. Helen told Bill not to be disappointed and not to take the driving test again.
- B. Helen told Bill to be disappointed because of the driving test again.
- C. Helen said Bill not to be disappointed in order to take the driving test again.
- D. Helen encouraged Bill to take the driving test again.

Câu 33 [ID: 214006] "John left here an hour ago," said Jane.

- A. Jane told me that John had left there an hour before.
- B. Jane said John left there an hour before.
- C. Jane told John to have left there an hour before.
- D. Jane told me that John to leave there an hour before.

Câu 34 [ID: 214007] "Why didn't you follow my advice?" he said.

- A. He asked me to follow his advice.
- B. He asked me not to follow his advice.
- C. He asked me why I did follow his advice.
- D. He asked me why I hadn't followed his advice.

Câu 35 [ID: 214008] "May I see your passport, Mrs Scott?" said the customs officer.

- A. The customs officer asked to see Mrs Scott's passport.
- B. The customs officer suggested seeing Mrs Scott's passport.
- C. The customs officer asked Mrs Scott to see his passport.
- D. The customs officer promised to show Mrs Scott his passport.

Câu 36 [ID: 214009] She asked Janet to repeat what she had said.

- A. "Please repeat what you have said, Janet!" , she said
- B. "Will you please repeat what Janet said?" , she asked.
- C. "Please repeat what Janet had said!" , she asked.
- D. "Please repeat what you say, Janet!" , she said.

Câu 37 [ID: 214010] He said he would do it _____.

- A. yesterday
- B. the following day
- C. the previous day
- D. the day before

Câu 38 [ID: 214011] "How is Marry getting to the school?" - "She said that her father _____ her a lift."

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| A. would have given | B. would give |
| C. should give | D. could be given |

Câu 39 [ID: 214012] "How did Gina feel when she received a surprise gift?"

- She exclaimed _____ a wonderful surprise.

- A. to be B. being C. that it was D. to being

Câu 40 [ID: 214023] George: "Feed the cat."

- A. George asked his girlfriend to feed the cat.
B. George asked his girlfriend feed the cat.
C. George asked his girlfriend feeding the cat.
D. George asked his girlfriend fed the cat.

Câu 41 [ID: 214013] Minh's friends asked him how long would he stay in Paris.

- A. Minh's B. asked C. how long D. would he

Câu 42 [ID: 214014] She asked me if he wants to buy any second-hand books.

- A. if B. wants C. buy D. second-hand

Câu 43 [ID: 214015] He wanted to know Hong if would have time to play badminton regularly.

- A. wanted B. Hong if would C. have time D. regularly

Câu 44 [ID: 214016] My mother told me that I work very hard.

- A. told B. me C. work D. hard

Câu 45 [ID: 214017] He said they had a lift very often but it doesn't work.

- A. said B. had C. often D. doesn't

Câu 46 [ID: 214018] The teacher asked me if I could answer this question.

- A. asked B. if C. could answer D. this

Câu 47 [ID: 214019] I asked his mother if he went to work by bus or not.

- A. asked B. went C. to work D. or not

Câu 48 [ID: 214020] He promised me he'll come with you as soon as he was ready.

- A. he'll B. with C. as soon as D. was

Câu 49 [ID: 214021] My brother said he must to write some letters then.

- A. My B. must to C. write D. letters then

Câu 50 [ID: 214022] Peter asked me did not to stay up late and advised me to go to bed early.

- A. asked B. did not C. to stay D. to go to bed

DÁP ÁN

1. A	2. D	3. C	4. A	5. A	6. D	7. D	8. A	9. B	10. D
11. B	12. C	13. D	14. C	15. B	16. C	17. B	18. C	19. C	20. D
21. C	22. B	23. C	24. A	25. A	26. D	27. B	28. C	29. C	30. B
31. B	32. D	33. A	34. D	35. A	36. A	37. B	38. B	39. C	40. D
41. B	42. B	43. C	44. D	45. D	46. D	47. A	48. B	49. B	50. A

LUYỆN TẬP 4: (ID: ET1136)

Câu 1 [ID: 214025] She asked the little boy what _____.

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| A. his name was | B. is his name |
| C. was his name | D. his name is |

Câu 2 [ID: 214027] Tom asked Susan if she _____ to wear her new hat.

- | | |
|-----------|--------------|
| A. wants | B. to want |
| C. wanted | D. will want |

Câu 3 [ID: 214028] The man asked her if she _____ him the time.

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| A. will tell | B. could tell |
| C. tells | D. can tell |

Câu 4 [ID: 214029] She said that they had moved their house _____.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| A. this year | B. the year |
| C. the year before | D. the year after |

Câu 5 [ID: 214030] John's mother asked where he _____ the night before.

- | | |
|---------|-------------|
| A. went | B. has gone |
| C. goes | D. had gone |

Câu 6 [ID: 214031] She asked Mr. Vincent _____.

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| A. what was his job | B. what will his job be |
| C. what is his job | D. what his job was |

Câu 7 [ID: 214032] She said she _____.

- | | |
|------------------|----------------------|
| A. was a teacher | B. will be a teacher |
| C. is a teacher | D. can be a teacher |

Câu 8 [ID: 214033] She asked me what time _____.

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| A. was it | B. it was |
| C. it is | D. is it |

Câu 9 [ID: 214034] She asks him if he _____ back next week.

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| A. is coming | B. were coming |
| C. was coming | D. would coming |

Câu 10 [ID: 214035] "Come and have dinner with us", he said.

- | |
|--|
| A. He ordered me to come and have dinner with them. |
| B. He invited us to come and have dinner with them. |
| C. He asked me if I would come to their dinner. |
| D. He wanted to know whether I would come to their dinner. |

Câu 11 [ID: 214036] She asked John to repeat what he had said

- A. "Please repeat again what you've said"
- B. "Please repeat what you've said"
- C. "Please you repeat what you've said"
- D. "Please repeat what he's said again"

Câu 12 [ID: 214037] He asked me _____ I liked rock music.

- A. where
- B. whether
- C. when
- D. what

Câu 13 [ID: 214038] When Tom was at Helen's apartment yesterday, Tom asked if he _____ use the phone.

- A. can
- B. may
- C. will
- D. could

Câu 14 [ID: 214039] "Keep away from this area", said the security guard when we approached the fence.

- A. The security guard told to us to keep away from that area when we approached the fence.
- B. The security guard told us to keep away from that area when we approached the fence.
- C. The security guard said to us to keep away from that area when we approached the fence.
- D. The security guard told us to keep away from this area when we approached the fence.

Câu 15 [ID: 214040] His uncle asked Tom _____ the previous match.

- A. who is winning
- B. who will win
- C. who won
- D. who wins

Câu 16 [ID: 214041] Their parents wanted to know _____.

- A. what was happening
- B. is happening
- C. was what happening
- D. will be happening

Câu 17 [ID: 214042] "Do you know _____?" asked the old lady.

- A. where was the ticket office
- B. where is the ticket office
- C. where the ticket office is
- D. is where the ticket office

Câu 18 [ID: 214043] She asked him _____ again.

- A. when he will come
- B. when he would come
- C. he will come
- D. when would he come

Câu 19 [ID: 214044] "I don't know _____ such a big cake" he said.

- A. how she made
- B. how can she makes
- C. how does she makes
- D. she made

Câu 20 [ID: 214045] He said it was time we _____.

- | | |
|-----------|--------------|
| A. worked | B. will work |
| C. work | D. can work |

Câu 21 [ID: 214046] My father asked me _____ of the film.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| A. what do you think | B. what I think |
| C. what did you think | D. what I thought |

Câu 22 [ID: 214047] He said he wished he _____ the answer.

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| A. known | B. knew |
| C. had known | D. can know |

Câu 23 [ID: 214048] Mary says _____ to school by bus.

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| A. she went | B. she goes |
| C. she could go | D. she would go |

Câu 24 [ID: 214049] The man said they _____ when it _____ snowing.

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| A. would go/stops | B. would go/stopped |
| C. will go/stopped | D. can go/stopped |

Câu 25 [ID: 214050] She asked him _____ from.

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| A. where is he | B. where he were |
| C. where he was | D. where were he |

Câu 26 [ID: 214051] He wanted to know _____ to.

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| A. who was she talking | B. who she was talking |
| C. who is she talking | D. who she talks |

Câu 27 [ID: 214052] He asked me if _____ on time the day before.

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| A. would arrive | B. have arrived |
| C. arrived | D. had arrived |

Câu 28 [ID: 214053] The man promised that he _____ to Mary as soon as he reached Paris.

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|----------------|-----------|
| A. will write | B. can write | C. would write | D. writes |
|---------------|--------------|----------------|-----------|

Câu 29 [ID: 214054] The teacher asked Mary _____ the previous match.

- | | |
|-------------|-------------------|
| A. who wins | B. who is winning |
| C. who won | D. that won |

Câu 30 [ID: 214055] She says she _____ the day after tomorrow.

- | | | | |
|----------|---------------|-------------|--------------|
| A. comes | B. would come | C. can come | D. will come |
|----------|---------------|-------------|--------------|

Câu 31 [ID: 214057] Tom _____ that he's having a party.

- | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| A. asks | B. says | C. said | D. told |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|

Câu 32 [ID: 214058] Jenny told me that her boyfriend _____ a restaurant.

- | | | | |
|---------|----------|-----------|---------------|
| A. owns | B. owned | C. owning | D. Both A & B |
|---------|----------|-----------|---------------|

Câu 33 [ID: 214059] Rachel a week ago: I'm taking my driving test tomorrow. You today: When I saw Rachel, she said she was taking her driving test _____.

- A. the next day B. tomorrow C. yesterday D. last day

Câu 34 [ID: 214060] Emma two days ago: I've only had this new computer since yesterday. You today: Emma said she'd only had the new computer since _____.

- A. the day before B. last day C. yesterday D. tomorrow

Câu 35 [ID: 214061] Mathew a week ago: I'm meeting a friend at the station later today. You today: Mathew said he was meeting a friend at the station later _____.

- A. there B. last day C. that week D. that day

Câu 36 [ID: 214062] What did that man say _____?

- A. at you B. for you C. to you D. you

Câu 37 [ID: 214063] I rang my friend in America yesterday, and she said it _____ raining there.

- A. is B. were C. was D. has been

Câu 38 [ID: 214064] The last time I saw Jonathan, he looked very relaxed. He explained that he'd been on holiday the _____ week.

- A. ago B. following C. next D. previous

Câu 39 [ID: 214065] Mathew _____ Emma that her flight was about to take off.

- A. has reminded B. has reminded that
C. reminded D. reminded that

Câu 40 [ID: 214066] "Do not write on the walls", said the teacher to the boys.

- A. The teacher told the boys do not write on the walls.
B. The teacher told the boys not to write on the walls.
C. The teacher said to the boys not write on the walls.
D. The teacher said to the boys do not write on the walls.

Câu 41 [ID: 214067] He asked her if she would meet him that evening

- A. He said to her "Did you meet me that evening?"
B. If he asked her, she'll meet him this evening.
C. He said: "Would you meet me one evening if I asked you?"
D. He said to her: "Will you meet me this evening?"

Câu 42 [ID: 214068] "Why don't you buy them this picture as a wedding present, Sarah?"

- A. Robin suggested Sarah to buy them that picture as a wedding present.
B. Robin suggested that Sarah would buy them that picture as a wedding present.
C. Robin suggested that Sarah buy them that picture as a wedding present.
D. Robin suggested that Sarah will buy them that picture as a wedding present.

Câu 43 [ID: 214069] "I don't love you any more", said Eric to his girlfriend.

- A. Eric told his girlfriend that he any more loved her
- B. Eric told his girlfriend that he no longer loved her.
- C. Eric told his girlfriend that he didn't love her any more
- D. Both B and C are correct

Câu 44 [ID: 214070] "Bring your swimming things in case it is sunny".

- A. He told me to bring swimming things if it is sunny.
- B. He told me to bring swimming things unless it is raining.
- C. He told me to bring swimming things in case it was sunny.
- D. He told me to bring swimming things because it was sunny.

Câu 45 [ID: 214071] "I think you shouldn't go out in this weather", said the man.

- A. The man advised me don't go out in the cold weather.
- B. The man advised me against going out in that weather.
- C. The man advised me not to go out in that weather.
- D. The man said I didn't go out in that weather.

Câu 46 [ID: 214072] "Why don't you put your luggage under the seat?", he asked

- A. He suggests that I put my luggage under the seat.
- B. He suggested me putting my luggage under the seat.
- C. He suggested me to put my luggage under the seat.
- D. He suggested that my luggage put under the seat.

Câu 47 [ID: 214073] "Would you like to come round for a drink?", he said.

- A. He asked me would you like to come round for a drink.
- B. He asked me if I want to drink.
- C. He asked me to come round and drink.
- D. He invited me to come round for a drink.

Câu 48 [ID: 214074] "Don't swim out too far, boys!", I said

- A. I warned the boys that not to swim too far.
- B. I warned the boys not to swim too far.
- C. I warned the boys that they shouldn't swim too far.
- D. Both B and C are correct

Câu 49 [ID: 214075] "If the flood gets worse, we must leave the house", he said.

- A. He said that if the flood got worse, they had to leave the house.
- B. He said that they will leave the house if the flood gets worse.
- C. He said if the flood didn't become good, they had to leave the house.
- D. He said if the flood didn't get better, they would have to leave the house.

Câu 50 [ID: 214076] "Would you like to come to my birthday party, Sarah?", asked Frederic.

- A. Frederic reminded Sarah of his coming birthday party.
- B. Frederic invited Sarah to his birthday party.
- C. Frederic asked Sarah if she liked his birthday party or not.
- D. Frederic asked if Sarah was able to come to his birthday party.

ĐÁP ÁN

1. A	2. C	3. B	4. C	5. D	6. D	7. A	8. B	9. A	10. B
11. B	12. B	13. D	14. B	15. C	16. A	17. C	18. B	19. A	20. A
21. D	22. B	23. B	24. B	25. C	26. B	27. D	28. C	29. C	30. D
31. B	32. B	33. A	34. A	35. D	36. C	37. C	38. D	39. C	40. B
41. D	42. C	43. D	44. C	45. C	46. B	47. D	48. D	49. A	50. B

LUYỆN TẬP 5 (ID: ET1137)

Câu 1 [ID: 214077] "I'm in a bit of a hurry, but I'll ring you tomorrow," William said

- A. William explained that if he weren't hurry, he'd ring me tomorrow.
- B. William told me that though he was in a bit hurry, but he would ring me the next day.
- C. William said he was a bithurry, but he would bring me the following day.
- D. William said he was a bit hurry, but he'd ring me the previous day.

Câu 2 [ID: 214078] Johnny asked his father if he could continue with his study overseas.

- A. "Do you think I can continue with my study overseas?", said Johnny.
- B. "Is it possible for me to study overseas?" Johnny asked his father.
- C. "Can I continue with my study overseas?" Johnny said to his father.
- D. "Will I continue to study overseas?" Johnny said.

Câu 3 [ID: 214079] "Would you like to have lunch with me on Sunday?", he said to me.

- A. He invited me to have lunch with him on Sunday.
- B. He ordered me to have lunch with him on Sunday.
- C. He suggested me to have lunch with him on Sunday.
- D. He reminded me to have lunch with him on Sunday.

Câu 4 [ID: 214080] He wondered if she lived _____ with her parents.

- A. here
- B. there
- C. in there
- D. in here

Câu 5 [ID: 214081] They wondered _____ she would come if it rained.

- A. what
- B. who
- C. whether
- D. then

Câu 6 [ID: 214082] He says he _____ at this school in 2000.

- A. had worked
- B. works
- C. had been working
- D. worked

Câu 7 [ID: 214083] Victor said he _____ very busy.

- A. is B. will be C. was D. may be

Câu 8 [ID: 214084] I asked Hoa if she _____ Chinese.

- A. could speak B. speaks C. can speak D. has spoken

Câu 9 [ID: 214086] "Buy some meat in the shop," said my mother to me.

- A. My mother said to me to buy some meat in the shop.
B. My mother told to me to buy some meat in the shop.
C. My mother told me to buy some meat in the shop.
D. My mother said me to buy some meat in the shop.

Câu 10 [ID: 214087] My parents asked if I was going to visit them _____.

- A. the next day B. next day
C. day next D. the day next

Câu 11 [ID: 214088] I wanted to know what he _____ for her birthday 2 years before.

- A. has bought B. buys C. had bought D. would buy

Câu 12 [ID: 214085] Her friend will come to see her.

- A. She hoped her friend will come to see her.
B. She hoped her friend would come to see her.
C. She hoped her friend comes to see her.
D. She hoped her friend came to see her.

Câu 13 [ID: 214089] She said she _____ come to the party on Friday.

- A. won't B. can't C. doesn't D. couldn't

Câu 14 [ID: 214090] Chris asked me where my car _____.

- A. is B. will be C. was D. has been

Câu 15 [ID: 214091] Mr Jim said that he _____ happy with his new assistant.

- A. weren't B. isn't C. wasn't D. aren't

Câu 16 [ID: 214092] He said that John _____ up his job.

- A. has given B. have given C. had give D. had given

Câu 17 [ID: 214093] She said that she _____ to learn to drive.

- A. is going B. was going C. go D. goes

Câu 18 [ID: 214094] I knew that he _____ a very clever man.

- A. was B. will be C. has been D. is

Câu 19 [ID: 214095] They said they _____ us if we needed.

- A. help B. helped C. had gone D. would help

Câu 20 [ID: 214096] She said she _____ the next week, but I never saw her again.

- A. will be back B. had been back C. would be back D. is back

Câu 21 [ID: 214097] She said that she _____ there the year before.

- A. had gone B. went C. would go D. goes

Câu 22 [ID: 214098] I wonder _____ the tickets for the match are on sale yet.

- A. what B. whether C. where D. when

Câu 23 [ID: 214099] She says she _____ the book.

- A. already finds B. has already found
C. had already found D. would already find

Câu 24 [ID: 214100] I was sure he _____ the letter.

- A. posted B. had posted C. will post D. is posting

Câu 25 [ID: 214101] He said he _____ to the station to see me off.

- A. came B. will come C. would come D. is coming

Câu 26 [ID: 214102] The policeman asked George where he _____ so early.

- A. is running B. ran C. was running D. runs

Câu 27 [ID: 214103] He says that he _____ the laws of the country.

- A. knew B. is knowing C. knows D. had known

Câu 28 [ID: 214104] They realized that they _____ their way in the dark.

- A. had lost B. lose C. lost D. was lost

Câu 29 [ID: 214105] My friend asked me who _____ the piano in the sitting room.

- A. plays B. was playing C. is playing D. has played

Câu 30 [ID: 214106] The doctor said to Peter "Don't go for a walk tomorrow."

- A. The doctor said Peter not to go for a walk the next day.
B. The doctor told Peter not to go for a walk the next day.
C. The doctor said to Peter not to go for a walk tomorrow.
D. The doctor told Peter not to go for a walk the next day.

Câu 31 [ID: 214107] "Don't forget to clean your teeth!", said Granny to Helen.

- A. Granny told Helen not forget to clean her teeth.
B. Granny told Helen not to forget to clean her teeth.
C. Granny told Helen to not forget to clean her teeth.
D. Granny said Helen not to forget to clean her teeth.

Câu 32 [ID: 214108] "Please bring me some chicken soup!", he said to the waitress.

- A. He asked the waitress bring him some chicken soup.
B. He asked the waitress to bring her some chicken soup.
C. He asked the waitress to bring him some chicken soup.
D. He asked the waitress bring her some chicken soup.

Câu 33 [ID: 214109] "This man spoke to me on the road", said the woman.

- A. The woman said that man had spoken to me on the road.
- B. The woman said that man has spoken to her on the road.
- C. The woman said that man spoke to her on the road.
- D. The woman said that man had spoken to her on the road.

Câu 34 [ID: 214110] I said to Peter: "Where are you going?"

- A. I asked Peter where was he going.
- B. I asked Peter where he was going.
- C. I asked Peter where is he going.
- D. I asked Peter where he is going.

Câu 35 [ID: 214111] "If I were you, I'd try to get a room on the top floor", he said.

- A. He advised me to try to get a room on the top floor.
- B. He advised me to try getting a room on the top floor.
- C. He offered me to try to get a room on the top floor.
- D. He suggested me to try to get a room on the top floor.

Câu 36 [ID: 214112] "I'll wait for you if you like", she said.

- A. She offered to wait for me.
- B. She said she'd wait for me if I liked.
- C. She suggested she waited for me.
- D. A & B are correct.

Câu 37 [ID: 214114] "Remember to switch off when you've finished", he said.

- A. He reminded me to switch off when I've finished.
- B. He reminded me to switch off when I'd finished.
- C. He offered me to switch off when I'd finished.
- D. He suggested me to switch off when I'd finished.

Câu 38 [ID: 214115] "You'd better apologise for telling lies", said my mother.

- A. My mother advised me to apologise for telling lies.
- B. My mother suggested me to apologise for telling lies.
- C. My mother suggested apologising for telling lies.
- D. My mother warned me to apologise for telling lies.

Câu 39 [ID: 214116] "Could you check the oil, please?", I asked the mechanic.

- A. I invited the mechanic to check the oil.
- B. I asked the mechanic to check the oil.
- C. I reminded the mechanic to check the oil.
- D. I warned the mechanic to check the oil.

Câu 40 [ID: 214117] Kate said: "Mike, do you like my dress?"

- A. Kate asked Mike if he liked her dress.
- B. Kate asked Mike if you liked her dress.
- C. Kate asked Mike if he liked your dress.
- D. Kate asked Mike if he likes her dress.

Câu 41 [ID: 214118] "Will you help me, please?", she said: "I can't reach the top shelf."

- A. She asked me help her as she couldn't reach the top shelf.
- B. She asked me to help her as she can't reach the top shelf.
- C. She asked me to help her as she couldn't reach the top shelf.
- D. She warned me to help her as she couldn't reach the top shelf.

Câu 42 [ID: 214119] "This is a horrible room. Why don't you ask for something better?", he said

- A. He said it was a horrible room and reminded me to ask for something better.
- B. He said it was a horrible room and advised me to ask for something better.
- C. He said it was a horrible room and warned me to ask for something better.
- D. He said it was a horrible room and invited me to ask for something better.

Câu 43 [ID: 214120] "Do you know where my shoes are, Mum?", Sharon asked.

- A. Sharon asked her mother about her shoes.
- B. Sharon asked her mother if she knew where her shoes were.
- C. Sharon asked her mother for her shoes.
- D. Sharon asked her mother if she knew where were her shoes.

Câu 44 [ID: 214121] "I would take the job if I were you", said my classmate.

- A. My classmate was thinking about taking the job.
- B. My classmate introduced the idea of taking the job to me.
- C. My classmate advised me to take the job.
- D. My classmate insisted on taking the job for me.

Câu 45 [ID: 214122] "Please don't mention it to anybody", Mary said to her friend.

- A. Mary asked her friend not to mention it to anybody.
- B. Mary asked her friend not mention it to anybody.
- C. Mary asked her friend to not mention it to anybody.
- D. Mary asked her friend did not mention it to anybody.

Câu 46 [ID: 214124] Tom said: "I have already has breakfast, so I am not hungry."

- A. Tom said he had already had breakfast, so he is not hungry.
- B. Tom said he has already had breakfast, so he is not hungry.
- C. Tom said he had already had breakfast, so he was not hungry.
- D. Tom told he had already had breakfast, so he was not hungry.

Câu 47 [ID: 214125] I said to Nick: "What are you doing?"

- A. I asked Nick what was he doing.
- B. I asked Nick what he was doing.
- C. I asked Nick what is he doing.
- D. I asked Nick what he is doing.

Câu 48 [ID: 214126] He said to them: "Who will you see before you leave here?"

- A. He asked them who they would see before they left there.
- B. He asked them who would they see before they left there.
- C. He asked them who they would see before you left there.
- D. He asked them who you would see before they left there.

Câu 49 [ID: 214128] She asked me: "Why didn't you come here yesterday?"

- A. She asked me why I hadn't gone there the day before.
- B. She asked me why I didn't go there the day before.
- C. She asked me why didn't I go there the day before.
- D. She asked me why hadn't I gone there the day before.

Câu 50 [ID: 214129] Mother asked me: "Did you play with your friends yesterday?"

- A. Mother asked me if I had played with my friends the day before.
- B. Mother asked me if I played with my friends the day before.
- C. Mother asked me if I had played with your friends the day before.
- D. Mother asked if you had played with my friends the day before.

ĐÁP ÁN

1. C	2. C	3. A	4. B	5. C	6. D	7. C	8. A	9. C	10. A
11. C	12. B	13. D	14. C	15. C	16. D	17. B	18. A	19. D	20. C
21. A	22. B	23. B	24. B	25. C	26. C	27. C	28. A	29. B	30. D
31. B	32. C	33. D	34. B	35. A	36. D	37. B	38. A	39. B	40. A
41. C	42. B	43. B	44. C	45. A	46. C	47. B	48. A	49. A	50. A

LUYỆN TẬP 6 (ID: ET1138)

Câu 1 [ID: 214131] He _____ to go with me to the police station.

- A. agreed
- B. helped
- C. insisted
- D. allowed

Câu 2 [ID: 214132] The man asked us where Piker _____ from.

- A. was
- B. were
- C. is
- D. are

Câu 3 [ID: 214133] He _____ me of crashing into his car.

- A. complained
- B. informed
- C. accused
- D. suggested

Câu 4 [ID: 214134] He _____ me to look for another job.

- A. advised
- B. informed
- C. insisted
- D. suggested

Câu 5 [ID: 214135] She _____ to causing the accident.

- A. admitted B. claimed C. explained D. refused

Câu 6 [ID: 214136] He said he _____ the next morning.

- A. left B. is leaving C. will leave D. would leave

Câu 7 [ID: 214137] She says she _____ the key.

- A. already finds B. has already found
C. would already find D. had already found

Câu 8 [ID: 214138] I was sure he _____ the letter the day before.

- A. posted B. had posted C. will post D. is posting

Câu 9 [ID: 214139] You have thanks _____ everything you have done.

- A. on B. to C. with D. for

Câu 10 [ID: 214140] The teacher encouraged Nam _____ harder.

- A. to work B. working C. that he work D. he should work

Câu 11 [ID: 214141] I _____ you that you had to be on time. Why are you late?

- A. said B. told C. asked D. tell

Câu 12 [ID: 214142] I _____ I would help you, so here I am.

- A. say B. said C. asked D. told

Câu 13 [ID: 214143] When you _____ her if she'd work late, what did she say?

- A. told B. said C. asked D. offered

Câu 14 [ID: 214144] He was made _____ smoking.

- A. to give up B. gave up C. give up D. giving up

Câu 15 [ID: 214145] "We're having a reunion this weekend. Why don't you come?", John said to us.

- A. John didn't understand why we came to a reunion.
B. John asked us why we didn't come to a reunion this weekend.
C. John simply asked us why we wouldn't come to a reunion.
D. John invited us to come to a reunion that weekend.

Câu 16 [ID: 214146] "Stop smoking or you'll be ill!", the doctor told me.

- A. The doctor advised me to give up smoking to avoid illness.
B. I was warned against smoking a lot of cigarettes.
C. The doctor suggested smoking to treat illness.
D. I was ordered not to smoke to recover from illness.

Câu 17 [ID: 214147] "Would you like some more beer?", he asked.

- A. He offered me some more beer.
B. He asked me would I like some more beer.
C. He asked me if I wanted some beer.
D. He wanted to invite me for a glass of beer.

Câu 18 [ID: 214148] They said that they _____ the new words from three till seven the previous day.

- A. learnt
- B. had been learning
- C. were learning
- D. have learnt

Câu 19 [ID: 214149] "Why don't you go to clubs at the weekend, Mary?", said Jane.

- A. Jane asked Mary why she doesn't go to clubs at the weekend.
- B. Jane invited Mary to go to clubs but Mary refused to go.
- C. Jane suggested that Mary should go to clubs at the weekend.
- D. Jane wondered why Mary didn't go to clubs at the weekend.

Câu 20 [ID: 214150] The chairman said that the question _____ to vote.

- A. would be put
- B. will put
- C. would put
- D. being put

Câu 21 [ID: 214151] "I spoke to Mr. Brown this morning", said Tom.

- A. Tom said he spoke to Mr. Brown that morning.
- B. Tom said he had spoken to Mr. Brown that morning.
- C. Tim said I had spoken to Mr. Brown that morning.
- D. Tom said he has spoken to Mr. Brown that morning.

Câu 22 [ID: 214152] "John, please buy some milk!", he said.

- A. He reminded John to buy some milk.
- B. He ordered John to buy some milk.
- C. He told John to buy some milk.
- D. He advised John to buy some milk.

Câu 23 [ID: 214153] "Do you watch television every evening, Van?" – He asked.

- A. He asked Van if she had watched TV every evening
- B. He asks Van if she watched TV every evening.
- C. He asked Van if she watches TV every evening.
- D. He asked Van if she watched TV every evening.

Câu 24 [ID: 214154] "Go away!" – He said.

- A. He asked me whether I went away.
- B. He told me to go away.
- C. He advised me to go away.
- D. He tells me to go away.

Câu 25 [ID: 214155] "I wish I had learnt French at school", she told me.

- A. She told me she wished she had learnt French at school.
- B. She told me she wished she learnt French at school.
- C. She said to me she wished he learnt French at school.
- D. She said me she wished she had learnt French at school.

Câu 26 [ID: 214156] "Would you like another biscuit?", he asked me.

- A. He asks me if I would like another biscuit.
- B. He asked me if I would like another biscuit.
- C. He invites me another biscuit.
- D. He invited me another biscuit.

Câu 27 [ID: 214157] "If you like, I'll help you do the decorating, Hung."

- A. He offered to help Hung do the decorating.
- B. He offered Hung a help to do decorating.
- C. He asked Hung if Hung needed him to do decorating.
- D. He offers to help Hung do the decorating.

Câu 28 [ID: 214158] "No, sorry. I don't want to lend you my car", he said.

- A. He refused to lend me his car.
- B. He apologized for not lending me my car.
- C. he refuses to lend me his car.
- D. He refused to lend me my car.

Câu 29 [ID: 214159] "I really think you should see a doctor, Trang."

- A. He said Trang should see a doctor.
- B. He told Trang to see a doctor.
- C. He advised Trang to see a doctor.
- D. He advises Trang to see a doctor.

Câu 30 [ID: 214160] "No, it's not true. I didn't steal the money."

- A. He denied that he stole the money.
- B. He said that he didn't steal the money.
- C. He denied stealing the money.
- D. He denied that he stolen the money.

Câu 31 [ID: 214161] Paker: "Help me!".

- A. Paker asked not to help him.
- B. Paker asked to help me.
- C. Paker advised me to help him.
- D. Paker asked us to help him.

Câu 32 [ID: 214162] Carol: "Listen to that song!".

- A. Carol said to listen that song.
- B. Carol told us to listen to that song.
- C. Carol asked us to listen to this song.
- D. Carol talked me to listen to that song.

Câu 33 [ID: 214163] Maria: "Leave me alone!"

- A. Maria told her friend to leave her alone.
- B. Maria told her friend to leave me alone.
- C. Maria said her friend to leave me alone.
- D. Maria told her friend leaving me alone.

Câu 34 [ID: 214164] Mr Stephens: "Buy me some milk!"

- A. Mr Stephens suggested to buy him some milk.
- B. Mr Stephens asked me to buy him some milk.
- C. Mr Stephens asked to buy him some milk.
- D. Mr Stephens spoke to buy me some milk.

Câu 35 [ID: 214165] George: "Feed the cat!"

- A. George asked his girlfriend to feed the cat.
- B. George asked his girlfriend feed the cat.
- C. George asked his girlfriend feeding the cat.
- D. George asked his girlfriend fed the cat.

Câu 36 [ID: 214166] Heather: "Don't say that!"

- A. Heather tells to you not to say that.
- B. Heather told you not to say that.
- C. Heather advised you to say that.
- D. Heather ordered not you to say that.

Câu 37 [ID: 214167] You: "Come with us".

- A. They told John to come with us.
- B. They told to John to come with us.
- C. They told John to come with them.
- D. They told John came with us.

Câu 38 [ID: 214168] Tom: "Call me in the evening!"

- A. Tom told us calling him in the evening.
- B. Tom told us to called him in the evening.
- C. Tom told not us to call him in the evening.
- D. Tom told us to call him in the evening.

Câu 39 [ID: 214170] Your mother: "Come back in one hour".

- A. My mother told me come back in one hour.
- B. My mother asked me come back in one hour.
- C. My mother reminded to come back in one hour.
- D. My mother told me to come back in one hour.

Câu 40 [ID: 214171] Mrs Smith: "Don't play in front of my windows."

- A. Mrs Smith told us not to play in front of her windows.
- B. Mrs Smith told us not to play in front of my windows.
- C. Mrs Smith told us to not play in front of her windows.
- D. Mrs Smith said us not to play in front of her windows.

Câu 41 [ID: 214172] Jamei: "Don't eat so much junk food!"

- A. Jamei reminded me not to eat so much junk food.
- B. Jamei asked me to not eat so much junk food.
- C. Jamei reminded me not to ate so much junk food.
- D. Jamei says me not to eat so much junk food.

Câu 42 [ID: 214173] Walter: "Don't ring Tony on Sunday!"

- A. Walter told me don't ring Tony on Sunday.
- B. Walter told not to ring Tony on Sunday.
- C. Walter told me not ring Tony on Sunday.
- D. Walter told me not to ring Tony on Sunday.

Câu 43 [ID: 214174] Jane: "Don't watch the new film!"

- A. Jane advised me not to watch the new film.
- B. Jane advised not me to watch the new film.
- C. Jane advised me do not to watch the new film.
- D. Jane advise me not to watch the new film.

Câu 44 [ID: 214175] "Don't make noise because I am listening music now!"

- A. He asked me not to make noise because I am listening music now.
- B. He asked me not to make noise because I was listening music then.
- C. He asked me not to make noise because he was listening music then.
- D. He asked me to make noise because I was listening music then.

Câu 45 [ID: 214176] Marcel: "Don't sing this song!"

- A. Marcel asked me not to sing this song.
- B. Marcel asked me not to sing that song.
- C. Marcel said me not to sing that song.
- D. Marcel asked me not to sang that song.

Câu 46 [ID: 214177] Teacher: "Don't forget your home work!"

- A. Teacher reminded me not to forget my homework.
- B. Teacher asked me if not to forget my homework
- C. Teacher reminded whether I not to forget my homework.
- D. Teacher reminded me not to forget your home work.

Câu 47 [ID: 214179] John: "Don't shout at your son!"

- A. John asked me to not shout at my son.
- B. John asked me not to shout at my son.
- C. John asked me not to shout at your son.
- D. John wondered if I do not shout at my son.

Câu 48 [ID: 214180] Tom: "Why don't you study hard for the coming exam, Ba?"

- A. Tom advised me not to study hard for the coming exam.
- B. Tom advised me to study hard for the coming exam.
- C. Tom advised Ba not to study hard for the coming exam.
- D. Tom advised Ba to study hard for the coming exam.

Câu 49 [ID: 214181] Father: "Brush your teeth before going to bed, please".

- A. Father said to his son brushing your teeth before going to bed.
- B. Father said to his son to brush his teeth before going to bed.
- C. Father told his son to brush my teeth before going to bed.
- D. Father told his son to brush his teeth before going to bed.

Câu 50 [ID: 214182] The man: "Come in but don't bring anything".

- A. The man said to come in but not bring anything.
- B. The man told come in but not to bring anything.
- C. The man told the boy to come in but not to bring anything.
- D. The man asked to come but not to bring anything.

ĐÁP ÁN

1. A	2. A	3. C	4. A	5. A	6. D	7. B	8. B	9. D	10. A
11. B	12. B	13. C	14. A	15. D	16. A	17. A	18. B	19. C	20. A
21. B	22. C	23. D	24. B	25. A	26. D	27. A	28. A	29. C	30. C
31. D	32. B	33. A	34. B	35. A	36. B	37. C	38. D	39. D	40. A
41. A	42. D	43. A	44. C	45. B	46. A	47. B	48. D	49. D	50. C

C- THI ONLINE

Truy cập [ID: ET1139, ET1140, ET1141.](#)

GÓC GIẢI TRÍ

Hôm nay cô Mai Phur sẽ dành tặng các em một bài hát mà cô rất yêu thích. Đó là bài "Apologize". Các em cùng thưởng thức nhé!

APOLOGIZE - One Republic (ID: EG1002)

I'm holding on your rope
Got me ten feet off the ground
And I'm hearing what you say
But I just can't make a sound
You tell me that you need me
Then you go and cut me down

But wait...
You tell me that you're sorry
Didn't think I'd turn around and say...
That it's too late to apologize, it's too late
I said it's too late to apologize, it's too late

I'd take another chance, take a fall, take
a shot for you
And I need you like a heart needs a beat
(But that's nothing new)
I loved you with a fire red,
Now it's turning blue and you say

"Sorry" like the Angel Heaven let me
think was you,

But I'm afraid
It's too late to apologize, it's too late

I said it's too late to apologize, it's too late

Nắm chặt lấy sợi dây mong manh
Như thể treo mình cách mặt đất mười
thước

Rồi tôi nghe thấy tiếng em nói
Nhưng tôi không thể thốt lên lời nào
Người nói rằng người cần tôi
Sau đó người quay lưng đi và cắt lấy sợi
dây niềm tin

Nhưng đợi đã...
Người nói lời xin lỗi
Nhưng không nghĩ rằng tôi sẽ quay lại
và nói...

Rằng quá muộn để nói lời xin lỗi, quá
muộn rồi

Tôi đã bảo rằng quá muộn để nói lời xin
lỗi, quá muộn rồi

Tôi đã lại tin thêm một lần, rồi lại thất
vọng, rồi lại như bị một phát vào tim

Tôi cần người như trái tim cần nhịp đập
Nhưng rồi chẳng có điều gì xảy ra

Tôi yêu người với tình yêu rực cháy
Bây giờ thì ngọn lửa đã lụi tàn và người
nói

"Xin lỗi" tựa như một thiên thần nơi
thiên đường làm cho tôi nghĩ người như
thế

Nhưng tôi e rằng....

Đã quá muộn để nói lời xin lỗi, quá
muộn rồi

Tôi đã bảo rằng quá muộn để nói lời xin
lỗi, quá muộn rồi

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 9: ĐẢO NGỮ

A – LÝ THUYẾT

Trong tiết học này, các em sẽ được học về định nghĩa câu đảo ngữ, các dạng câu đảo ngữ: đảo ngữ với No/Not, đảo ngữ với các trạng ngữ phủ định, đảo ngữ với Only, đảo ngữ với các cụm từ có No, đảo ngữ với So/such, đảo ngữ sau các cụm trạng từ chỉ phương hướng và vị trí.....

Đây là dạng bài quan trọng trong các đề thi tiếng Anh, chúng ta cùng tìm hiểu các em nhé!

I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA (ID: EV1058)

Câu đảo ngữ là một câu trần thuật bình thường nhưng đảo trợ động từ, trạng từ hoặc động từ lên trước chủ ngữ.

Eg: Seldom do I listen to Rock music.

❖ Một số loại câu nhấn mạnh dùng đảo ngữ trong tiếng Anh thường gặp:

- too/so

Eg: He is tall → I am, too = So am I.

- either/neither:

Eg: He isn't tall → I am not, either = Neither am I.

- nor = neither:

Eg: I don't like him → Nor do I = Neither do I.

I don't like him, nor do I hate him.

II. ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI NO/NOT

No + Noun + Auxiliary + S + Verb (inf).

Not any + Noun + Auxiliary + S + Verb (inf).

Eg: I won't lend you any money from now on.

=> Not any/No money will I lend you from now on.

Not a tear did she shed when the story ended in tragedy.

III. ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI CÁC TRẠNG NGỮ PHỦ ĐỊNH

Các trạng từ phủ định dùng trong câu đảo ngữ: never, rarely, seldom, little, hardly ever.

- Rarely:

Eg: I have rarely seen such a beautiful building as Ljubljana, the capital of Slovenia.

=> Rarely have I seen such a beautiful building as Ljubljana, the capital of Slovenia.

- **Seldom:**

Eg: I seldom go to school late.

=> Seldom do I go to school late.

- **Hardly ever:**

Eg: He hardly ever speaks in the public.

=> Hardly ever does he speak in the public.

- **Never:**

Eg: She has never seen such a beautiful house in her life.

=> Never in her life has she seen such a beautiful picture.

This is the first time I have seen such an interesting film.

=> Never before have I seen such an interesting film.

IV. ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI ONLY

- **Only once:**

Eg: Only once have I met her.

- **Only later:**

Eg: Only a week later did we realize what had happened.

- **Only in this/that way:**

Eg: Only in this way can we succeed.

- **Only then:**

Eg: Only then did I realize that I had left my purpose at home.

- **Only when + clause, (inv):**

Eg: Only when I arrived at the airport, did I realize that I had left my passport at home.

- **Only if + clause:**

Eg: Only if you practice English at least 2 hours a day can you master it.

- **Only after + Noun/V-ing/clause:**

Eg: Only after a twelve hour wait, did my flight leave.

Only after posting the letter, did I realize that I had forgotten to put on a stamp.

- **Only by + noun/V-ing:**

Eg: Only by practicing English at least 2 hours a day can you master it.

- **Only with + Noun:**

Eg: Only with a big sum of money can you buy a house in Hanoi.

- **Only in + adverb of time/place:**

Eg: Only in April is there this kind of flower.

V. ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI CÁC CỤM TỪ CÓ "NO"

- **At no time:**

Eg: The outcome of the election was never in doubt.

=> At no time was the outcome of the election in doubt.

He never suspected that she was a witch.

=> At no time did he suspect that she was a witch.

- **On no account:**

Eg: You mustn't touch the switch on any account.

=> On no account must you touch the switch.

- **On no condition:**

Eg: On no condition shall we accept their proposal.

- **Under/In no circumstances:**

Eg: The money is not to be paid under any circumstances.

=> Under no circumstances is the money to be paid.

- **For no reason:**

Eg: For no reason must you play truant.

- **In no way:**

Eg: The shop can in no way be held responsible for customers' lost property.

=> In no way can the shop be held responsible for customers' lost property.

- **No longer:**

Eg: He used to smoke 20 cigarettes a day.

=> No longer does he smoke 20 cigarettes a day.

PRACTICE: (chữa trong video)

Exercise 1. Rewrite the sentence

1. A country can't be prosperous if it's not quite independent.

=> Only when _____.

2. You can drive a car only after you obtain a driving licence.

=> Only after _____.

3. He never suspected that money had been stolen.

=> At no time _____.

4. Our neighbour hasn't once invited us into his home.

=> Not once _____.

5. I have never been to Japan before.

=> Never _____.

Exercise 2. Choose the best answer

1. Only when he started working with her, _____ that she was intelligent.

A. he had realize	B. did he realize
C. he did realize	D. he realized
2. Rarely _____ such a wonderful child.

A. I have seen	B. I had seen
C. I saw	D. have I seen
3. John can solve this problem and _____.

A. Jeam do, too	B. Jeam does either
C. So does Jeam	D. Neither does Jeam
4. No longer _____ any pleasure to do this job.

A. I do have	B. do I have
C. do have I	D. I have
5. _____ has the work been so easy.

A. Never	B. only by
C. When	D. For
6. Seldom _____ a newspaper.

A. buys Anna	B. does Anna buy
C. bought Anna	D. Anna does buy
7. For no reason _____.

A. you can tell lies	B. you tell lies
C. can you tell lies	D. can you tells lies
8. _____ it started to snow, did he realize that he missed the sunny weather so much.

A. Only later	B. Only when
C. Only	D. Only in this way
9. Not once _____ into her eyes.

A. he looked	B. does he looks
C. did he look	D. he was looking
10. Never in my life _____ anyone drinking as much as you.

A. have I seened	B. have I seen
C. did I seen	D. was I seen

ĐÁP ÁN**Exercise 1:**

1. Only when a country is independent, can it be prosperous.
2. Only after you obtain a driving licence, can you drive a car.

3. At no time did he suspect that money had been stolen.
4. Not once has our neighbor invited us into his home.
5. Never before have I been to Japan.

Exercise 2:

1. B	2. D	3. C	4. B	5. A	6. B	7. C	8. B	9. C	10. B
------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	-------

VI. ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI "NO SOONER...THAN; HARDLY/BARELY/SCARCELY...THAN"

(ID: EV1059)

No sooner + had + S + P2 + than + clause
 Hardly
 Barely + had + S + P2 + when + clause
 Scarcely

- Eg: 1. I had no sooner arrived home than the phone rang.
 => No sooner had I arrived home than the phone rang.
2. I had hardly arrived home when the phone rang.
 => Hardly had I arrived home when the phone rang.
3. She just had time to put up her umbrella before the rain came down in torrents.
 => No sooner had she put up her umbrella than the rain came down in torrents.
4. She had hardly begun to speak before people started interrupting her.
 => Hardly had she begun to speak when people started interrupting her.

VII. ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI "NOT UNTIL"

Not until/till (then/after)
 Not until/till + Clause + Au + S + V

- Eg: He couldn't speak until he was 8
 => Not until he was 8, could he speak
 = It was not until he was 8 that he could speak.

VIII. ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI "NOT ONLY...BUT ALSO"

Not only + Au + S + V, but....also...
 Not only + to be + S + N/adj, but...also

- Eg: He is not only good at English but he can also draw very well.
 => Not only is he good at English but he can also draw very well.

IX. ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI "NOWHERE"

Nowhere + Aux + S + V

Eg: You won't find a more dedicated worker anywhere than Mrs Jones.

=> Nowhere will you find a more dedicated worker than Mrs Jones.

- Nowhere do I feel as comfortable as I do at home.

X. ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI SO/SUCH

1. Đảo ngữ với So

So + adj/adv + Au + S + that + clause

Eg: He worked so hard that he forgot his lunch.

=> So hard did he work that he forgot his lunch.

The play is so popular that the theatre is likely to be full every night.

=> So popular is the play that the theatre is likely to be full every night.

2. Đảo ngữ với Such:

Such + Be + Noun + that + clause

Eg: She is so beautiful that I can't take my eyes off her.

=> Such is her beauty that I can't take my eyes off her.

Her grief is so great that she almost fainted.

=> Such is her grief that she almost fainted.

XI. ĐẢO NGỮ TRONG CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN

1. Đảo ngữ trong câu điều kiện loại I.

If + S + (should) + V, S + will + V.inf

=> Should + S + V.inf, S + will + V.inf

Eg: If he comes, I'll call the police.

=> Should he come, I'll call the police.

2. Đảo ngữ trong câu điều kiện loại II

• Câu có động từ tobe:

If S + were + ..., S + would + V.inf

=> Were + S + ..., S + would + V.inf

Eg: If I were you, I wouldn't do that.

=> Were I you, I wouldn't do that.

• Câu dùng động từ thường:

If S + V.ed, S + would + V.inf
 => Were + S + to V.inf, S + would + V.inf

Eg: If I knew Portuguese, I'd speak to Ronando.

=> Were I to know Portuguese, I'd speak to Ronando.

3. Đảo ngữ trong câu điều kiện loại III

If + S + had P2, S + would have P2
 => Had + S + P2, S + would have P2

Eg: If he had trained hard, he would have won the match.

=> Had he trained hard, he would have won the match

Lưu ý: Với những câu điều kiện phủ định, khi đảo ngữ ta để NOT sau chủ ngữ.

Eg: If I hadn't seen it with my own eyes, I wouldn't have believed it.

=> Had I not seen it with my own eyes, I wouldn't have believed it.

XI. ĐẢO NGỮ SAU CÁC CỤM TRẠNG TỪ CHỈ PHƯƠNG HƯỚNG VÀ VỊ TRÍ

Khi câu bắt đầu bằng một cụm trạng từ, đặc biệt là trạng từ chỉ phương hướng và vị trí thì nội động từ thường được đảo lên trước chủ ngữ. Cách đảo ngữ này được sử dụng đặc biệt trong văn phong trang trọng hoặc văn chương.

(Place) + V + S

Eg: Here comes the train.

Above the fireplace was a portrait of Lenin.

On the table sat the cat.

Up went the price.

In an armchair sat his mother.

Lưu ý:

- Động từ TOBE thường được sử dụng trong dạng đảo ngữ này, ngoài ra ta còn dùng các động từ chuyển động như "climb, come, fly, go, hang, lie, run, sit, stand..."
- Thường chỉ dùng dạng đảo ngữ này khi động từ ở thì quá khứ đơn giản.
- Trong trường hợp đảo ngữ này, không sử dụng trợ động từ như trong câu hỏi mà dùng trực tiếp động từ đặt trước chủ ngữ.
- Không thực hiện đảo ngữ khi chủ ngữ là đại từ.

PRACTICE (chữa trong video)**Choose the best answer**

1. On the hill _____.
 A. does a big pine tree stand
 B. a big pine tree stands
 C. stands a big pine tree.
 D. a big pine tree stand
2. _____, a large area of sea would be contaminated.
 A. Did the chemical to leak
 B. Were the chemical leak
 C. Were the chemical to leak
 D. Should the chemical leak
3. _____ an emergency arise, dial 999.
 A. Had
 B. Only when
 C. Should
 D. Need
4. Hardly had we turned on the TV _____ the electricity went out.
 A. than
 B. when
 C. after
 D. that
5. Such a soft voice _____ that everyone likes her.
 A. she has
 B. does she has
 C. she have
 D. does she have
6. Were the government _____ interest rates, they would lose the election.
 A. to raise
 B. raised
 C. raising
 D. raise
7. Down _____ for three days.
 A. the rain poured
 B. did the rain pour
 C. poured the rain
 D. do the rain pour
8. _____ Henry, I might not have met you.
 A. Had it not for
 B. Hadn't it for
 C. Had it not been for
 D. Hadn't it been for
9. So heavy _____ that all the trains had to be cancelled.
 A. were the snowfall
 B. was the snowfall
 C. the snowfall was
 D. did the snowfall be
10. No sooner _____ than they started to argued.
 A. has they got married
 B. did they got married
 C. had they got married
 D. had they got marry
11. Not until it was too late _____ to call Sue.
 A. did I remember
 B. I remember
 C. do I remember
 D. that I remembered

12. Scarcely had Alan arrived in Mexico _____ he was arrested.
 A. until B. also
 C. when D. than
13. Not until he got home _____ that he had lost the key.
 A. did he realize B. does he realize
 C. he realized D. he realizes
14. _____ had we left the house than it exploded.
 A. Hardly B. No sooner
 C. Not until D. Only when
15. Not until _____ did he feel healthy again.
 A. Andrew stops smoking B. does Andrew stop smoking
 C. Andrew stopped smoking D. did Andrew stop smoking

ĐÁP ÁN

1. C	2. C	3. C	4. B	5. D	6. A	7. C	8. C
9. B	10. C	11. A	12. C	13. A	14. B	15. C	

XII. BÀI TẬP LUYỆN TẬP CÂU ĐẢO NGỮ (ID: EV1060)

1. Never _____ me again.
 A. will she love B. she loves
 C. she won't loved D. she will love
2. Not only _____ but she is also very intelligent.
 A. she is beautiful B. beautiful she is
 C. is she beautiful D. beautiful is she
3. No sooner _____ out than it rained.
 A. did I go B. I went
 C. had I gone D. I had gone
4. Seldom _____ the guitar.
 A. he plays B. does he play
 C. he doesn't play D. he does play
5. Hardly _____ a word whether son came back.
 A. couldn't she say B. she could say
 C. she couldn't say D. could she say
6. Often _____ a meeting.
 A. do we have B. we do have
 C. have we D. we have

7. Many a time _____ he wants to marry me.
A. said he
B. he said
C. has he said
D. he has said
8. Only at weekend _____ my kids to Water Park.
A. I don't take
B. do I take
C. I take
D. I do take
9. So old _____ that she couldn't dance.
A. she wasn't
B. she was
C. wasn't she
D. was she
10. _____ here yesterday, you would have met me.
A. Were you
B. You were
C. Had you been
D. You had been
11. On the battle field _____.
A. the tanks did lie
B. the tanks lay
C. did the tanks lie
D. lay the tanks.
12. At no time _____ greater opportunities.
A. did women had
B. has women had
C. does women have
D. have women had
13. Not once _____ into her eyes.
A. he looked
B. does he looked
C. did he look
D. looked he
14. _____ has the work been so easy.
A. Never
B. Only by
C. When
D. For
15. Nowhere _____ such cooperative staff.
A. you can find
B. you found
C. you could find
D. can you find
16. Only once _____ late to school.
A. he came
B. did he came
C. came he
D. did he come
17. Never before _____ in an earnest attempt to resolve their differences.
A. have the leaders of these two countries met
B. the leaders of these two countries have met
C. have the leaders of these two countries meet
D. met the leaders of these two countries

18. Not only _____ at the post office, _____ at the grocery store.
 A. does Mary work/but she also works
 B. works Mary/but she also works
 C. does Mary work/but does she also work
 D. works Mary/but does she also work
19. Seldom _____ a newspaper.
 A. buys Anna
 B. does Anna buy
 C. bought Anna
 D. Anna does buy
20. No sooner _____ the house than the phone started to ring.
 A. had she entered
 B. she had entered
 C. entered she
 D. had entered she
21. Only by saving money _____ a house.
 A. he buys
 B. he can buy
 C. can he buy
 D. buy she
22. Not even once _____ the truth.
 A. he tells
 B. he tell
 C. tells he
 D. has he told
23. Not until _____, does it begin to exhibit signs of independence from its mother.
 A. a monkey is several years old
 B. is a monkey several years old
 C. did a monkey several years old
 D. do a monkey be several years old
24. No sooner _____ than he begins to be washed.
 A. is a human being born
 B. was a human being born
 C. a human being born
 D. a human being had been born
25. Not only _____ beautiful but she is graceful as well.
 A. did she
 B. she was
 C. is she
 D. she is
26. Seldom _____ treated like that.
 A. I have been
 B. am I
 C. I am
 D. I had been
27. Over there _____ the shop that sells souvenirs.
 A. is
 B. are
 C. has
 D. have
28. Never before _____ such a disaster.
 A. they suffer
 B. they have suffered
 C. have they suffered
 D. they had suffered

29. Only if I had known the difference, _____ the more expensive car.
A. would I bought
B. I would have bought
C. would I buy
D. would I have bought
30. No longer _____ any pleasure to do this job.
A. I do have
B. do I have
C. do have I
D. I have
31. Only once a day _____ home.
A. does Mary leave
B. left Mary
C. Mary leaves
D. will Mary left
32. Out _____ when the bell rang.
A. did the children run
B. ran the children
C. run the children
D. do the children run
33. Many a time _____ this mistake.
A. he makes
B. he has made
C. has he made
D. will he make
34. Nowhere else _____.
A. they can go
B. can they go
C. they can't go
D. can't they go
35. Never _____ the exact cause of earthquakes.
A. scientists have discovered
B. did scientists discover
C. do scientists discover
D. have scientists discovered
36. Only when at home, _____ her children.
A. does she scold
B. she scolds
C. has she scolded
D. she has scolded
37. Not a penny _____ me.
A. did he give
B. he gave
C. he has given
D. he has gave
38. No longer _____ women bear a lot of children.
A. does
B. did
C. doing
D. do
39. Among them _____ several sacks of white flour.
A. was
B. is
C. be
D. are
40. On a hill in front of them _____ a great castle.
A. standing
B. stands
C. to stand
D. stood

41. "This store has such high prices."

"I agree. Never again _____ here."

A. I will shop

B. will I shop

C. I do shop

D. shop I

42. "Is this machine often in need of repair?"

"No, _____ problems to arise."

A. seldom don't we expect

B. we expect seldom

C. seldom we expect

D. seldom do we expect

43. "I can't see the stage very well from here."

"_____"

A. Neither can't I

B. Neither I can

C. I can't neither

D. Neither can I

44. "This is one of the oldest trees in the world."

"_____ such a big tree."

A. Never I have seen

B. I haven't never seen

C. Never have I seen

D. I have seen never

45. Not until the early 1900s, _____ to vote in the United States.

A. women were allowed

B. were women allowed

C. they allowed women

D. when women were allowed

46. Only recently _____ a favourite sport in the United States.

A. has jogging become

B. has become jogging

C. when jogging became

D. as jogging has become

47. "What happened to Jean's new car?"

"No sooner _____ it than someone ran into her."

A. had she bought

B. she bought

C. did she bought

D. she had bought

48. _____ a higher concentration of people than in Tokyo and Mexico City.

A. Nowhere there is

B. Nowhere there is

C. Nowhere is there

D. Nowhere there isn't

49. _____ did Jerome accept the job.

A. Only because it was interesting work,

B. Because it was an interesting work,

C. Only because it was interested work,

D. The work was interesting,

50. "I would like to apply for the sales position you advertised"
"I'm sorry. No longer _____ applications for that position."
A. are taking we
B. we are taking
C. are we taking
D. we taking
51. "Did you like your trip to Niagara Falls?"
"It was beautiful. Hardly ever _____ such a spectacular sight."
A. can see you
B. can you see
C. see you
D. you can see
52. "Can children swim in this pool?"
"Yes. However, at no time _____ alone."
A. shouldn't they swim
B. they should swim
C. should swim they
D. should they swim
53. Only during the early twentieth century, _____ in the United States.
A. liquor was prohibited then
B. that liquor was prohibited
C. when liquor was prohibited
D. was liquor prohibited.
54. "I don't like this tossed salad very well."
"Nor _____."
A. I do
B. I do either
C. do I
D. I like it either
55. Not only _____, but he also plays the piano and writes his own songs.
A. does Billy Joel sing
B. Billy Joel sings
C. If Billy Joel sings
D. what Billy Joel sings.
56. Nowhere _____ more prevalent than in warm, swampy places.
A. mosquitoes are
B. mosquitoes is
C. are mosquitoes
D. is mosquitoes
57. Only when the ground is kept moist _____ germinate.
A. grass seeds will
B. will grass seeds
C. grass seeds does
D. does grass seeds
58. Not until Columbus discovered America _____ to Europe.
A. was bananas brought
B. bananas were brought
C. were bananas brought
D. bananas was brought
59. Never again _____ Greta Garbo appear in films after his retirement in the forties.
A. was
B. do
C. is
D. did
60. Rarely _____ professional boxers remain active beyond the age thirty-five.
A. do
B. did
C. are
D. were

Câu 7 [ID: 220874] No sooner had he arrived home _____ he was called out again.

- A. when
- B. and
- C. than
- D. but

Câu 8 [ID: 220875] _____ had the restaurant opened _____ people were flocking to eat there .

- A. Hardly... than
- B. No sooner..that
- C. No sooner..than
- D. hardly.. that

Câu 9 [ID: 220876] Down _____ for three days.

- A. the rain poured
- B. did the rain pour
- C. poured the rain
- D. do the rain pour

Câu 10 [ID: 220877] Out _____ when the bell rang.

- A. did the children run
- B. ran the children
- C. run the children
- D. do the children run

Câu 11 [ID: 220878] Such _____ that he would stop at nothing.

- A. his ambition was
- B. did his ambition
- C. does his ambition
- D. was his ambition

Câu 12 [ID: 220879] Only once _____ late to school.

- A. he came
- B. did he came
- C. came he
- D. did he come

Câu 13 [ID: 220880] He no longer collects stamps as he used to. No longer _____.

- A. he collects stamps as he used to
- B. does he collect stamps as he used to
- C. does he collected stamps as he used to
- D. doesn't he collect stamps as he used to it

Câu 14 [ID: 220881] _____, a matter is formed of molecules.

- A. It doesn't matter if the complex
- B. It's not a complex matter
- C. No matter how complex it is
- D. How complex is not a matter

Câu 15 [ID: 220882] No more _____ to worry about the future sources of energy.

- A. don't we have
- B. we don't have
- C. do we have
- D. we do have

Câu 16 [ID: 220883] Hardly _____ asleep when the phone woke him up again.

- A. had the doctor fallen
- B. did the doctor fall
- C. the doctor fell
- D. the doctor has fallen

Câu 17 [ID: 220884] Not until darkness fell _____ he hadn't done half of his work.

- A. that he realized
- B. did he realize
- C. that he didn't realize
- D. didn't he realize

Câu 18 [ID: 220885] Seldom _____ of Nancy Johnson as coloured.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| A. her classmates thought | B. thought her classmates |
| C. her classmates did think | D. did her school classmates think |

Câu 19 [ID: 220886] On the hill _____ a big pine tree.

- | | |
|-----------|-------------|
| A. stands | B. stand |
| C. does | D. standing |

Câu 20 [ID: 220887] Not once _____ into her eyes.

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------|
| A. he looked | B. does he looks |
| C. did he look | D. he was looking |

Câu 21 [ID: 220888] Not until next year _____ take place.

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| A. the new tax change will | B. will the new tax change |
| C. the new tax changes | D. they change the new tax |

Câu 22 [ID: 220889] Not until a monkey is several years old _____ to exhibit signs of independence from its mother.

- | | |
|--------------|------------------|
| A. it begins | B. does it begin |
| C. and begin | D. is it begin |

Câu 23 [ID: 220890] _____ did Jerome accept the job.

- A. Only because it was interesting work.
 B. Because it was an interesting work.
 C. Only because it was interested work.
 D. The work was interesting.

Câu 24 [ID: 220924] _____ great was the destruction that the south took decades to recovered.

- | | | | |
|---------|--------|---------|-------|
| A. Very | B. Too | C. Such | D. So |
|---------|--------|---------|-------|

Câu 25 [ID: 220925] _____ when the Charges found themselves 7-0 down.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| A. Hardly had the games begun | B. Hardly the games had begun |
| C. The games had hardly begun | D. Hardly had begun the games |

Câu 26 [ID: 220926] Not until the first land plants developed _____.

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| A. land animals appeared | B. did land animals appear |
| C. would land animals appear | D. the land animals appeared |

Câu 27 [ID: 220927] Not until it was too late _____ to call Susan.

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| A. I remembered | B. did I remember |
| C. did I remembered | D. I did remember |

Câu 28 [ID: 220929] Never before _____ such a wonderful child.

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| A. I have seen | B. I had seen |
| C. I saw | D. have I seen |

Câu 29 [ID: 220930] Hardly had we settle down in our seats _____ the lights went out.

- A. than B. when C. then D. after

Câu 30 [ID: 220931] Only after checking three times _____ certain of the answer. Jim promised that never would he tell anyone else.

- A. I was B. was I C. were I D. I were

Câu 31 [ID: 220932] Only when he is here, _____.

- A. he speaks English B. does he speak English
C. he can speak English D. he does speak English

Câu 32 [ID: 220933] _____ you would have succeeded in your business.

- A. If you listened to my advice B. Were you to listen to my advice
C. Had you listened to my advice D. As long as you listened to my advice

Câu 33 [ID: 220934] She doesn't like classical music and _____.

- A. I don't, too B. I don't, either
C. neither do I D. B and C are correct

Câu 34 [ID: 220935] Little _____ what he has caused to others.

- A. does he know B. he knows
C. he can know D. he will know

Câu 35 [ID: 220936] _____ had he entered the office than he realized that he had left his wallet at home.

- A. Hardly B. Scarcely
C. No sooner D. Not only

Câu 36 [ID: 220937] Tìm lỗi sai

We cannot clean up all the polluted seas and rivers. Nor we can stop the disappearance of plants and animals.

- A. cannot B. all
C. we can D. disappearance

Câu 37 [ID: 220938] Hardly had he entered the office when he realized that he forgot his wallet.

- A. had B. the
C. when D. forgot

Câu 38 [ID: 220942] It was not until he was 30 did he get married, had a job and lived independently of his parents.

- A. It was B. did he get married
C. a job D. independently of

Câu 39 [ID: 220944] Never before has so many people in the U.S been interested in soccer.

- A. Never B. has
C. the U.S D. interested in

Câu 40 [ID: 220948] Not only he spent all his money but he also borrowed some from me.

- A. he spent B. all
C. but he also D. from

Câu 41 [ID: 220949] We couldn't relax until all the guests had left.

- A. Not until all the guests had left could we relax.
B. It wasn't until all the guests had left that we could relax.
C. It wasn't until all the guests had left could we relax.
D. A and B are correct.

Câu 42 [ID: 220950] The phone stopped ringing the moment I got downstairs.

- A. No sooner had the phone stopped ringing than I got downstairs.
B. After the phone had stopped ringing, I got downstairs.
C. Hardly had the phone stopped ringing when I got downstairs.
D. No sooner had I got downstairs than the phone stopped ringing.

Câu 43 [ID: 220952] The light failed the moment they began working

- A. But for the light failed, they would have begun work.
B. Hardly did they begin work when the light failed.
C. Hardly had they begun work when the light failed.
D. As soon as the light failed, they began work.

Câu 44 [ID: 220953] She didn't shed a tear as the play ended in tragedy.

- A. The tragedy play wasn't good for her to shed tear.
B. Without her tear, the play didn't end tragically.
C. So tragic was the play that she didn't shed a tear.
D. Not a tear did she shed when the play ended in tragedy.

Câu 45 [ID: 220955] It was not until she had arrived home _____ her appointment with the doctor.

- A. when she remembered B. that she remembered
C. and she remembered D. did she remember

Câu 46 [ID: 220957] Canada does not require that U.S citizens obtain passports to enter the country, and _____.

- A. Mexico doesn't, too B. so does Mexico
C. Mexico doesn't, either D. neither is Mexico

Câu 47 [ID: 220958] _____, he would have been able to pass the exam.

- A. If he studied harder last year
B. Provided he studied hard last year
C. Studying harder last year
D. Had he studied harder last year

D. Only by working hard

D. Rarely

D. If there were not

D. Had

- Câu 7 [ID: 225123]** _____ the film be a success, they may be rich soon.
 A. Was B. If C. Should D. B & C
- Câu 8 [ID: 225124]** _____ you change your mind, there will always be a job for you here.
 A. Had B. If C. Should D. B&C
- Câu 9 [ID: 225125]** _____, a large area of sea would be contaminated.
 A. Did the chemical to leak B. Were the chemical be leak
 C. Were the chemical to leak D. Should the chemical to leak
- Câu 10 [ID: 225126]** _____, they would face Italy in the final.
 A. Had Germany beat B. Shoud Germany to beat
 C. Were Germany to be beat D. Were Germany to beat
- Câu 11 [ID: 225127]** _____, he would not permit such bad behavior.
 A. Had Mr Morgan still be headmaster
 B. Were Mr Morgan still headmaster
 C. Was Mr Morgan still headmaster
 D. Should Mr Morgan still headmaster
- Câu 12 [ID: 225128]** _____, you would have got a high mark.
 A. Should you given it in on time B. Had you given it in on time
 C. Were you given it in on time D. Had you give it in on time
- Câu 13 [ID: 225129]** _____ a lawyer, as her parents' wishes, she would have earned a large salary.
 A. Had she became B. Had she become
 C. Were she became D. Had she to become
- Câu 14 [ID: 225130]** _____, I would have been held responsible.
 A. Had anything go wrong B. Had anything have gone wrong
 C. Were anything gone wrong D. Had anything gone wrong
- Câu 15 [ID: 225131]** _____ Henry, I might not have met you.
 A. Had it not for B. Had it not been for
 C. Had it no been for D. Had not it been for
- Câu 16 [ID: 225132]** _____ they could have saved the vessels.
 A. Should the coast guards been notified
 B. Were the coast guards to been notified
 C. Had the coast guards been notified
 D. Had been the coast guards notified
- Câu 17 [ID: 225133]** Had _____ by phone, the airline could have warned them.
 A. they confirm B. they confirmed
 C. did they confirmed D. did they confirm

Câu 18 [ID: 225134] _____ his solicitor's advice, he would have made a serious mistake.

A. But for

B. Had it not been for

C. Had not it been for

D. A & B

Câu 19 [ID: 225135] _____ did he spend all his money but she also borrowed some from me.

A. Only after

B. Not only

C. Not until

D. In any time

Câu 20 [ID: 225136] _____ had I left the office than the phone rang.

A. Hardly

B. Not till

C. No sooner

D. No longer

Câu 21 [ID: 225137] Hardly _____ the phone down when the boss rang back.

A. has I put

B. had I put

C. was I put

D. did I put

Câu 22 [ID: 225138] Not until the bell rang _____ his work.

A. did he finish

B. has he finish

C. he finished

D. he finish

Câu 23 [ID: 225139] Only after several months _____ to see the symptoms of the disease.

A. we begin

B. did we begin

C. did we begun

D. did we began

Câu 24 [ID: 225140] Never in my life _____ have I seen anyone drink as much as you.

A. have I seened

B. have I seen

C. did I seen

D. was I seen

Câu 25 [ID: 225141] Under the table _____ a sleeping dog.

A. did lied

B. did lying

C. lying

D. was lying

Câu 26 [ID: 225142] Rarely _____ been more excited.

A. was his brother

B. have his brother

C. had his brother

D. did his brother

Câu 27 [ID: 225143] Only later _____ all the facts made public.

A. did

B. were

C. has

D. was

Câu 28 [ID: 225144] _____ what would happen, I wouldn't have accepted the job.

A. Had I realize

B. Had I realized

C. If I had realized

D. B & C

Câu 29 [ID: 225145] _____ for our new products that we has to take on more staff.

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| A. So was the demand | B. Such was the demand |
| C. The demand such was | D. The demand was such |

Câu 30 [ID: 225146] Not only _____ his leg but he also injured his shoulder.

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| A. did Harry break | B. Harry break |
| C. Harry broke | D. Harry did break |

Câu 31 [ID: 225147] Little _____ suspect that the judge was the murderer.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| A. were the police | B. did the police |
| C. the police | D. had the police |

Câu 32 [ID: 225148] _____ you see Helen, could you ask her to call me?

- | | | | |
|-------|-----------|--------|----------|
| A. If | B. Should | C. Had | D. A & B |
|-------|-----------|--------|----------|

Câu 33 [ID: 225149] In no way _____ for the accident.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| A. can blamed | B. can blamed the bus |
| C. can the bus blamed be | D. can the bus be blamed |

Câu 34 [ID: 225150] So heavy _____ that all the trains had to be cancelled.

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| A. were the snowfall | B. was the snowfall |
| C. the snowfall was | D. did the snowfall was |

Câu 35 [ID: 225151] _____ interest rates they would lose the election.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| A. the government were to write | B. Had the government to write |
| C. Should the government to write | D. Were the government to write |

Câu 36 [ID: 225152] _____ had I got into the bath than someone knocked on the door.

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| A. No longer | B. No where |
| C. Hardly | D. No sooner |

Câu 37 [ID: 225153] _____ was the uncertainty that the financial markets remained close.

- | | |
|---------|----------------|
| A. So | B. No sooner |
| C. Such | D. At any time |

Câu 38 [ID: 225154] Seldom _____ so much rain in March.

- | | |
|--------------|--------------------|
| A. are there | B. is there |
| C. had there | D. have there been |

Câu 39 [ID: 225155] _____ your identity has been checked will you be allowed in.

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| A. Only when | B. Only in |
| C. Only before | D. Only then |

Câu 40 [ID: 225156] Hardly had the play started _____ there was a power failure.

- | | | | |
|--------|----------|---------|---------|
| A. but | B. until | C. than | D. when |
|--------|----------|---------|---------|

- Câu 41 [ID: 225157] Rarely _____ the Prime Minister made so inept a speech.
A. did B. has C. have D. was
- Câu 42 [ID: 225158] On no account _____ to take photographs backstage.
A. are press photographers allowed
B. have press photographers allowed
C. had press photographers allowed
D. did press photographers allowed
- Câu 43 [ID: 225159] Never before _____ so much money been spent to so little purpose!
A. did B. were C. have D. has
- Câu 44 [ID: 225160] _____ had the trial proceedings begun when the judge was taken ill.
A. No sooner B. No where
C. Hardly D. No longer
- Câu 45 [ID: 225161] Only in the last few pages of the book _____ to realise the significance of the murder.
A. you come B. do you to come
C. do you come D. did you came
- Câu 46 [ID: 225162] _____ are the demands of her job that she is rarely able to take a holiday.
A. hardly B. not only C. so D. Such
- Câu 47 [ID: 225163] Under no circumstances _____ consume alcohol.
A. audience members may B. was audience members
C. may audience members D. audience may members
- Câu 48 [ID: 225164] No sooner _____ than they started to argued.
A. has they got married B. did they got married
C. had they got marry D. had they got married
- Câu 49 [ID: 225165] At no time _____ my new car.
A. can you use B. you can use
C. was you use D. did you used
- Câu 50 [ID: 225166] Little _____ know that the police had them under surveillance.
A. have the gang B. was the gang
C. did the gang D. the gang did

ĐÁP ÁN

1. D	2. B	3. B	4. D	5. C	6. B	7. C	8. D	9. C	10. D
11. B	12. B	13. B	14. D	15. B	16. C	17. B	18. D	19. B	20. C
21. B	22. A	23. B	24. B	25. D	26. C	27. B	28. D	29. B	30. A
31. B	32. D	33. D	34. B	35. D	36. D	37. C	38. B	39. A	40. D
41. B	42. A	43. D	44. C	45. C	46. D	47. C	48. D	49. A	50. C

LUYỆN TẬP 3: (ID: ET1144)

Câu 1 [ID: 225167] Not until _____ will we consider you for the basketball team.

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| A. do you grow up | B. you grow up |
| C. are you grow up | D. should you grow up |

Câu 2 [ID: 225168] Under no circumstances _____ to enter the auditorium once the play has started.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| A. you be allowed | B. will you allow |
| C. will you be allowed | D. will you allowed |

Câu 3 [ID: 225169] Never _____ in front of a live audience again.

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| A. have he played | B. he plays |
| C. would he play | D. he would play |

Câu 4 [ID: 225170] Never before _____ such a terrible performance of Hamlet.

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| A. was I seen | B. have I seen |
| C. did I seen | D. I seen |

Câu 5 [ID: 225171] Only when someone complained at reception _____ the painting had been hung upside down.

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| A. did they realize | B. did they realized |
| C. they realize | D. had they realize |

Câu 6 [ID: 225172] Only after _____ in the room for a few minutes did I realize that everyone was staring at me.

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| A. was I | B. were I been |
| C. I had been | D. had I been |

Câu 7 [ID: 225173] Only when he tried to run _____ that he had injured his knee.

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| A. did he discovered | B. did he discover |
| C. he discovered | D. he did discover |

Câu 8 [ID: 225174] Hardly was the new park finished _____ vandals destroyed the flowerbeds.

- | | |
|-------------|----------|
| A. when | B. until |
| C. but also | D. than |

Câu 9 [ID: 225175] Under no circumstances _____ a contract you haven't read thoroughly.

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| A. you should sign | B. had you sign |
| C. are you sign | D. should you sign |

Câu 10 [ID: 225176] Not until the area _____ can construction continue.

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| A. had made safe | B. is made safe |
| C. made safe | D. makes safe |

Câu 11 [ID: 225177] In no way _____ how strongly we felt about the situation.

- A. did the announcement affected B. did the announcement affect
C. the announcement affected D. the announcement did affect

Câu 12 [ID: 225178] Seldom _____ a vintage car in quite such good condition these days.

- A. have you see B. were you see
C. you see D. do you see

Câu 13 [ID: 225179] _____ did Jerry forget my birthday, but he also forgot our wedding anniversary.

- A. No longer B. For no reason
C. Not only D. In any time

Câu 14 [ID: 225180] At no time _____ my opinion on the subject.

- A. was I asked B. has I asked
C. did I ask D. did I asked

Câu 15 [ID: 225181] _____ I checked the ticket again did I realise that I had won first prize!

- A. It was not until B. Only when
C. Only in this way D. Only with

Câu 16 [ID: 225183] _____ was the media interest in the wedding that there were over a dozen photographers.

- A. until B. Such
C. Hardly D. So

Câu 17 [ID: 225184] In no way _____ to blame for what happened.

- A. did the security guards B. have the security guards
C. was the security guards D. were the security guards

Câu 18 [ID: 225185] Not once _____ me for helping her.

- A. did the old woman thanked B. did the old woman to thank
C. the old woman thank D. did the old woman thank

Câu 19 [ID: 225186] Only after seeing the doctor _____ to leave hospital.

- A. was Theresa allowed B. did Theresa allow
C. did Theresa allowed D. Theresa was allowed

Câu 20 [ID: 225187] _____ will passengers be allowed to carry more than 2 pieces of hand luggage.

- A. On no account B. Under no circumstances
C. No sooner D. A & B

Câu 21 [ID: 225188] _____ were they late to work, but they also forgot to bring the reports.

- A. not until B. It is not until
C. Rarely D. Not only

Câu 22 [ID: 225189] At no time during the party _____ that Peter and Julie were getting married.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| A. anyone mentioned | B. did anyone mention |
| C. did anyone mentioned | D. anyone mention |

Câu 23 [ID: 225190] Scarcely had Alan arrived in Mexico _____ he was arrested.

- | | |
|----------|---------|
| A. until | B. also |
| C. when | D. than |

Câu 24 [ID: 225191] Little _____ that the driver was really an undercover police officer.

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| A. did the passengers know | B. the passengers know |
| C. did the passengers knew | D. did the passengers to know |

Câu 25 [ID: 225192] Rarely _____ anyone as charming as Mr Peterson.

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| A. you have met | B. have you meet |
| C. do you meet | D. you meet |

Câu 26 [ID: 225193] _____ should unaccompanied children be allowed to enter the pub.

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| A. Under no circumstances | B. On no account |
| C. No sooner | D. A & B |

Câu 27 [ID: 225194] Never before _____ itself facing such stiff competition.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| A. have the company founded | B. has the company found |
| C. did the company found | D. have the company found |

Câu 28 [ID: 225195] No sooner _____ than the police cars arrived.

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| A. were the alarm gone off | B. the alarm had gone off |
| C. had the alarm gone off | D. had the alarm go off |

Câu 29 [ID: 225196] _____ a country is independent can it be prosperous.

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| A. Only when | B. Only by |
| C. Only with | D. Not only |

Câu 30 [ID: 225197] Only after obtaining a driving license, _____ a car.

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| A. can you drive | B. are you drive |
| C. had you drive | D. you can drive |

Câu 31 [ID: 225198] _____ a twelve hours wait did their flight leave.

- | | |
|---------------|--------------------|
| A. Not only | B. No longer |
| C. Only after | D. On no condition |

Câu 32 [ID: 225199] At no time _____ that money had been stolen.

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| A. did he suspect | B. did he suspected |
| C. he suspect | D. was he suspected |

- Câu 33 [ID: 225200] Only later _____ that he had been deceived.
A. he did recognize
B. he recognize
C. did he recognize
D. did he recognized
- Câu 34 [ID: 225201] Never _____ such a strange house .
A. I have seen
B. has I seen
C. have I see
D. have I seen
- Câu 35 [ID: 225202] Not once _____ invited us into his home.
A. did our neighbor
B. was our neighbor
C. has our neighbor
D. have our neighbor
- Câu 36 [ID: 225203] Only after the money _____ will we dispatch.
A. has received
B. received
C. have been received
D. has been received
- Câu 37 [ID: 225204] Rarely _____ any other papers.
A. do I buy
B. I bought
C. do I to buy
D. I buy
- Câu 38 [ID: 225205] Never _____ a paper without reading the whole thing.
A. do he buy
B. does he buy
C. he buy
D. he buys
- Câu 39 [ID: 225206] _____ do we have enough time to read.
A. It was not until
B. Seldom
C. No sooner
D. Not until
- Câu 40 [ID: 225207] _____ will she ever read the editorials.
A. No sooner
B. Hardly
C. Until
D. Only when
- Câu 41 [ID: 225208] At no time _____ of the election in doubt.
A. was the outcome
B. the outcome
C. the outcome was
D. were the outcome
- Câu 42 [ID: 225209] _____ that they had to reprint the book immediately.
A. So the demand was great
B. Such great was the demand
C. So was great the demand
D. So great was the demand
- Câu 43 [ID: 225210] Seldom _____ reunited twins who do not get on well together.
A. does you find
B. you will find
C. you find
D. do you find
- Câu 44 [ID: 225211] Beside the roadside _____ a horse.
A. stood
B. did stand
C. stand did
D. was stood

Câu 45 [ID: 225212] Only by _____ English everyday can you make progress in it.

- A. to practice B. do practice
C. practicing D. practice

Câu 46 [ID: 225213] _____ before have I heard such an extraordinary story.

- A. Not till B. Never
C. Only ago D. Any longer

Câu 47 [ID: 225214] _____ could the matter be explained.

- A. Never even B. With no reason
C. In no way D. By no condition

Câu 48 [ID: 225215] Hardly had we started _____ it began to rain.

- A. when B. sooner C. than D. also

Câu 49 [ID: 225216] Seldom _____ such beautiful singing.

- A. has I heard B. have I heard
C. I have heard D. have I hear

Câu 50 [ID: 225220] Not until he got home did he realize that _____ the key.

- A. he loses B. had he lose
C. had he lost D. he had lost

ĐÁP ÁN

1. B	2. C	3. C	4. B	5. A	6. C	7. B	8. A	9. D	10. B
11. B	12. D	13. C	14. A	15. B	16. B	17. D	18. D	19. A	20. D
21. D	22. B	23. C	24. A	25. C	26. D	27. B	28. C	29. A	30. A
31. C	32. A	33. C	34. D	35. C	36. D	37. A	38. B	39. B	40. B
41. A	42. D	43. D	44. A	45. C	46. B	47. C	48. A	49. B	50. D

LUYỆN TẬP 4: (ID: ET1145)

Câu 1 [ID: 224687] _____ you would have succeeded in your business.

- A. If you listened to my advice
B. Were you to listen to my advice
C. Had you listened to my advice
D. As long as you listened to my advice

Câu 2 [ID: 224688] Little _____ what he has caused to others.

- A. does he know B. he knows
C. he can know D. he will know

Câu 3 [ID: 224689] _____ had he entered the office than he realized that he had left his wallet at home.

- A. Hardly B. Scarcely
C. No sooner D. Not only

Câu 4 [ID: 224690] _____ a week go by without some road accidents.

- A. Hardly does
- B. Seldom do
- C. Never is
- D. Infrequently do

Câu 5 [ID: 224691] It was not until she had arrived home _____ her appointment with the doctor.

- A. when she remembered
- B. that she remembered
- C. and she remembered
- D. did she remember

Câu 6 [ID: 224692] _____, he would have been able to pass the exam.

- A. If he studied harder last year
- B. Provided he studied hard last year
- C. Studying harder last year
- D. Had he studied harder last year

Câu 7 [ID: 224693] _____ will Mr. Dennis be able to regain control of the company.

- A. With hard work
- B. Despite his hard work
- C. Only if he works hardly
- D. Only by working hard

Câu 8 [ID: 224694] _____ had I arrived home than it began to rain.

- A. No sooner
- B. Hardly
- C. Scarcely
- D. Rarely

Câu 9 [ID: 224695] My father paid my fees. _____ that, I wouldn't be here now.

- A. If there were not
- B. But for
- C. Had it not been for
- D. B and C are correct

Câu 10 [ID: 224696] Only after food has been dried or canned _____.

- A. it should be stored for future use.
- B. that it should be stored for future use.
- C. should it be stored for future use.
- D. should it store for future use

Câu 11 [ID: 224697] No sooner had we arrived at the station _____ the announcement started.

- A. than
- B. when
- C. then
- D. last

Câu 12 [ID: 224698] _____ he arrived at the bus stop when the bus came.

- A. Hardly had
- B. No sooner had
- C. No longer has
- D. Not until had

Câu 13 [ID: 224699] No sooner _____ than the class started.

- A. had Max arrived
- B. does Max arrive
- C. Max arrives
- D. Max does arrive

Câu 14 [ID: 224700] Scarcely had Jake _____ the book report when Alan came in.

- | | |
|-------------|----------------|
| A. finish | B. finishing |
| C. finished | D. to finished |

Câu 15 [ID: 224701] Had they arrived at the fair earlier, they _____ what they wanted.

- | | |
|--------------|---------------------|
| A. had found | B. have found |
| C. found | D. would have found |

Câu 16 [ID: 224702] Only by working hard _____ your final exam.

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| A. will you pass | B. you will pass |
| C. did you passed | D. you passed |

Câu 17 [ID: 224703] Only when I have free time _____ television.

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| A. I watch | B. does I watch |
| C. do I watch | D. I watched |

Câu 18 [ID: 224704] Rarely _____ she made mistake since she was a manager.

- | | |
|---------|--------|
| A. have | B. has |
| C. is | D. are |

Câu 19 [ID: 224705] _____ the truth, she wouldn't have given Mark the money.

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| A. She had known | B. She has know |
| C. Had she known | D. Has she known |

Câu 20 [ID: 224706] So beautiful _____ that the Queen is envious with her.

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| A. Snow White is | B. Snow White are |
| C. is Snow White | D. are Snow White |

Câu 21 [ID: 224707] Never _____ in such a strange situation.

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| A. has I been | B. have I been |
| C. am I been | D. I have been |

Câu 22 [ID: 224708] Seldom _____ dinner together.

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| A. do Mark and Juliet have | B. does Mark and Juliet have |
| C. is Mark and Juliet have | D. are Mark and Juliet have |

Câu 23 [ID: 224709] Hardly _____ his wife presents on her birthday.

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| A. did James given | B. does James give |
| C. had James given | D. do James give |

Câu 24 [ID: 224710] Scarcely _____ when the rain became much more heavier.

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| A. have I come in | B. had I come in |
| C. I have come in | D. I came in |

Câu 25 [ID: 224711] Only then _____ the letter from my son.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| A. do I receive | B. did I receive |
| C. have I received | D. has I received |

Câu 26 [ID: 224712] No sooner _____ than Mary came over.

A. have John gone out B. had John gone out

C. has John gone out D. John has gone out

Câu 27 [ID: 224713] So frightened _____ the film that I couldn't sleep yesterday.

A. is B. are C. was D. have

Câu 28 [ID: 224714] Not only _____ well but he also plays musical instruments perfectly.

A. does he sing B. he sings

C. he does sing D. sings he

Câu 29 [ID: 224715] Seldom _____ a newspaper.

A. buys Anna B. does Anna buy

C. bought Anna D. Anna does buy

Câu 30 [ID: 224716] Not only _____ at the post office _____ at the grocery store.

A. does Mary work/but she also works B. works Mary/but she also works

C. does Mary work/but does she also work D. Mary work/but also she works

Câu 31 [ID: 224717] No sooner _____ the house than the phone started to ring.

A. had she entered B. she had entered

C. entered she D. had entered she

Câu 32 [ID: 224718] Only by saving money _____ a house.

A. he buys B. he can buy

C. can he buy D. buy he

Câu 33 [ID: 224719] Not even once _____ the truth.

A. he tells B. does he tell

C. tells he D. has he tell

Câu 34 [ID: 224720] Choose the correct inverted form.

A. Into the room came the teachers.

B. Not only lazy she is but she is naughty.

C. No sooner had he drunk a cup of coffee than he asked another.

D. A and C are correct.

Câu 35 [ID: 224721] Not only _____ beautiful but she is graceful as well.

A. did she B. she was

C. is she D. she is

Câu 36 [ID: 224723] Seldom _____ treated like that.

A. I have been B. am I

C. I am D. I had been

Câu 37 [ID: 224724] Over there _____ the shop that sells souvenirs.

- A. is B. are C. has D. have

Câu 38 [ID: 224725] Never before _____ such a disaster.

- A. they suffer B. they have suffered
C. had they suffered D. they had suffered

Câu 39 [ID: 224726] Only if I had known the difference _____ the more expensive car.

- A. would I bought B. I would have bought
C. would I buy D. would I have bought

Câu 40 [ID: 224727] Neither Mary nor her friends _____ going to the party.

- A. is B. are C. was D. A or B

Câu 41 [ID: 224728] Only by working three jobs _____ able to support his large family.

- A. he was B. he is
C. he's being D. was he

Câu 42 [ID: 224729] Not until Andrew stopped smoking _____ healthy again.

- A. did he feel B. that he started to feel
C. then he felt D. that he did feel

Câu 43 [ID: 224730] _____ you see Frank at the conference, give him my regards.

- A. Should B. Would C. Might D. Could

Câu 44 [ID: 224731] So _____ that she licked the plate clean.

- A. being hungry B. great her hunger
C. hungry was she D. had she hunger

Câu 45 [ID: 224732] _____ the medicine than she began to feel better.

- A. Not until she swallowed B. Hardly did she swallow
C. No sooner had she swallowed D. Having swallowed

Câu 46 [ID: 224733] Only by speaking more _____ improve your fluency in English.

- A. you are able to B. is it possible to
C. does D. will it

Câu 47 [ID: 224734] Never _____ to such a fantastic restaurant.

- A. John had been B. were John
C. did John be D. has John been

Câu 48 [ID: 224735] In no way _____ to be associated with this project.

- A. was I to want B. am I want
C. do I want D. I want

Câu 49 [ID: 224736] No sooner _____ dinner than the ceiling crashed onto the dining table.

- A. did they ate B. had they ate
C. has they eaten D. had they eaten

Câu 50 [ID: 224737] _____ had I finished writing my essay when the examiner announced the end of the exam.

A. No sooner

B. Scarcely

C. Only

D. Never

ĐÁP ÁN

1. C	2. A	3. C	4. A	5. B	6. D	7. D	8. A	9. D	10. C
11. A	12. A	13. A	14. C	15. D	16. A	17. C	18. B	19. C	20. C
21. B	22. A	23. B	24. B	25. B	26. B	27. C	28. A	29. B	30. A
31. A	32. C	33. B	34. D	35. C	36. B	37. A	38. C	39. D	40. B
41. D	42. A	43. A	44. C	45. C	46. B	47. D	48. C	49. D	50. B

LUYỆN TẬP 5: (ID: ET1146)

Câu 1 [ID: 225066] _____ do I leave my house so early.

A. Not until

B. Seldom

C. Only when

D. No sooner

Câu 2 [ID: 225067] _____ do people appreciate this musician's talent.

A. Not until

B. Not sooner

C. In any time

D. Rarely

Câu 3 [ID: 225068] _____ would we understand what had happened that night.

A. Only when

B. Only later

C. Only by

D. Only if

Câu 4 [ID: 225069] Nowhere _____ such rude people before.

A. has they met

B. have they meet

C. had they met

D. they had met

Câu 5 [ID: 225070] _____ did he understand about the situation.

A. Only when

B. Only after

C. By no condition

D. Little

Câu 6 [ID: 225071] On no account _____ the children go on their own.

A. was

B. should

C. are

D. be

Câu 7 [ID: 225072] _____ that I was speaking to someone as important as Professor Sims.

A. Little has I known

B. Little did I know

C. Little I knew

D. I knew little

Câu 8 [ID: 225073] In no way _____ question his honesty, although I think that he made some wrong decisions.

A. did I ever

B. I ever did

C. had I ever

D. I had ever

Câu 9 [ID: 225074] Hardly _____ we were told that it would soon be time for lunch.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| A. we had finished breakfast that | B. had we finished breakfast that |
| C. had we finished breakfast when | D. we had finished breakfast when |

Câu 10 [ID: 225075] At no time before I accepted the job _____ that I would have to do so much travelling around the country.

- | | |
|------------------|---------------|
| A. did they told | B. I was told |
| C. did I tell | D. was I told |

Câu 11 [ID: 225076] Never before _____ so happy.

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| A. had she been | B. were she |
| C. does she | D. she had been |

Câu 12 [ID: 225077] Never _____ such nonsense!

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| A. am I to hear | B. I hear |
| C. was I heard | D. have I heard |

Câu 13 [ID: 225078] Never in my life _____ such a mess.

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| A. were I seen | B. has I seen |
| C. have I seen | D. I saw |

Câu 14 [ID: 225079] _____ have our profits been as high as they are this year.

- | | |
|----------------|--------------------|
| A. Only before | B. Never |
| C. In any time | D. By no condition |

Câu 15 [ID: 225080] Never again _____ her own judgment when buying antique.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| A. would she trust | B. she will trust |
| C. she would have trusted | D. did she trusted |

Câu 16 [ID: 225081] Never before _____ on such a sumptuous celebration.

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| A. did the firm laid | B. the firm laid |
| C. will the firm lay | D. had the firm laid |

Câu 17 [ID: 225082] _____ have I come across such a horrifying film.

- | | |
|---------------|-------------|
| A. Only ago | B. Never |
| C. Any longer | D. Not till |

Câu 18 [ID: 225083] Never _____ by a Shakespeare production.

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| A. have I been so moved | B. have I been such moved |
| C. were I been so moved | D. I have been so moved |

Câu 19 [ID: 225084] Not for one moment _____ the consequences would be so far reaching.

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| A. did I thought | B. I thought |
| C. did I think | D. has I thought |

- Câu 20 [ID: 225085] _____ had I tasted such a wonderful combination of flavours.
A. Only by
B. Only after
C. Never before
D. Not until
- Câu 21 [ID: 225086] _____ can Keith be held responsible for the accident.
A. Only if
B. Only ago
C. By no condition
D. In no way
- Câu 22 [ID: 225087] In no way _____ to blame for the disaster.
A. are the themselves children
B. are the children themselves
C. has the children themselves
D. was the children themselves
- Câu 23 [ID: 225088] In no way _____ confirmed by the report.
A. should the existence of extraterrestrial life
B. will the existence of extraterrestrial life
C. is the existence of extraterrestrial life
D. have the existence of extraterrestrial life
- Câu 24 [ID: 225089] At no time _____ how to operate the machine.
A. did I shown
B. was I to shown
C. was I shown
D. has I shown
- Câu 25 [ID: 225090] At no time _____ that he was a witch.
A. he suspect
B. was he suspect
C. did he suspect
D. he suspected
- Câu 26 [ID: 225091] At no time _____ in a state of change.
A. has the English language not been
B. has the English language to be
C. have the English language not been
D. the English language not been
- Câu 27 [ID: 225092] _____ will Miss Weaver be offered the job.
A. Any longer
B. Never even
C. Under no circumstances
D. With no reason
- Câu 28 [ID: 225093] Under no circumstances _____ money to us by post.
A. you send
B. should you send
C. you sent
D. had you send
- Câu 29 [ID: 225094] Under no circumstance _____ tickets.
A. are we exchange
B. can we exchange
C. had we exchange
D. we exchange
- Câu 30 [ID: 225095] On no account _____ all that way to visit him again.
A. has I gone
B. will I go
C. I go
D. will I to go

Câu 31 [ID: 225096] _____ is he your friend, but he's mine too.

- A. Any longer
- B. Not only
- C. With no reason
- D. No matter where

Câu 32 [ID: 225097] Not only _____ tickets for the afternoon performance but he also booked for the evening performance as well.

- A. he book
- B. did he book
- C. did he booked
- D. have he booked

Câu 33 [ID: 225098] Not only _____ a thousand pounds' worth of electrical goods, they also left the flat in an awful mess.

- A. did the burglars stole
- B. did the burglars steal
- C. have the burglars stole
- D. had the burglars stole

Câu 34 [ID: 225099] _____ was Tom late, but he had left all his books behind.

- A. At any time
- B. Only before
- C. It is not until
- D. Not only

Câu 35 [ID: 225101] Not only _____ your posture but you will also improve your acting ability on this course.

- A. will you enhanced
- B. will you enhance
- C. are you enhance
- D. have you enhance

Câu 36 [ID: 225102] Not for one moment _____ his suggestion.

- A. is it worth considering
- B. did it worth considering
- C. is it worth consider
- D. were it worth considering

Câu 37 [ID: 225103] Not a tear _____ when the story ended in tragedy.

- A. was she shed
- B. did she shedded
- C. did she shed
- D. she shed

Câu 38 [ID: 225104] _____ did the manager offer an apology.

- A. It is not until
- B. Not once
- C. Only ago
- D. Only if

Câu 39 [ID: 225105] Not a sound _____ as she crept upstairs.

- A. did she make
- B. did she made
- C. was she make
- D. have she made

Câu 40 [ID: 225106] Not until _____ did he think about having a holiday abroad.

- A. did he retired
- B. he retired
- C. did he retire
- D. he retires

Câu 41 [ID: 225107] _____ I got home did I realize how dangerous the situation had been.

- A. Only later
- B. Only when
- C. Only then
- D. Only by

Câu 42 [ID: 225108] _____ that did the Agriculture Minister admit defeat.

- A. Only later B. Only when
C. Only after D. Hardly

Câu 43 [ID: 225109] Only after seeing Hamlet on the stage _____ it.

- A. have I understand B. was I understand
C. did I understood D. did I understand

Câu 44 [ID: 225110] _____ they had finished eating did they get round to business.

- A. Only later B. Only in
C. Only after D. Only by

Câu 45 [ID: 225111] Only after they waited for twelve hours _____.

- A. did their flight leave B. did their flight left
C. their flight leave D. their flight left

Câu 46 [ID: 225112] Only after that _____ who she was.

- A. have I realize B. did I realize
C. did I realized D. I realize

Câu 47 [ID: 225113] _____ using force could the door be opened.

- A. Only later B. Only in that way
C. Only by D. Only once

Câu 48 [ID: 225114] Only when _____ did I agree.

- A. did Tom apologized B. Tom apologized
C. did Tom apologize D. Tom apologizes

Câu 49 [ID: 225115] Only when you buy all twelve books at the same time _____ the 40% discount.

- A. will you get B. can you get
C. are you get D. A & B

Câu 50 [ID: 225116] _____ training hard can you become a good athlete.

- A. Not only B. Only later
C. Only by D. Not until

ĐÁP ÁN

1. B	2. D	3. B	4. C	5. D	6. B	7. B	8. A	9. C	10. D
11. A	12. D	13. C	14. B	15. A	16. D	17. B	18. A	19. C	20. C
21. D	22. B	23. C	24. C	25. C	26. A	27. C	28. B	29. B	30. B
31. B	32. B	33. B	34. D	35. B	36. A	37. C	38. B	39. A	40. B
41. B	42. C	43. D	44. C	45. A	46. B	47. C	48. B	49. D	50. C

C- THI ONLINE

Truy cập ID: ET1147, ET1148, ET1149.

GÓC GIẢI TRÍ

Các em oi, chúng ta đã đi được 2/3 chặng đường rồi, các em đang cảm thấy như thế nào? Có em nào cảm thấy chán nản rồi không? Có em nào cảm thấy con đường đến thành công sao mà gian nan thế không? Các em ạ, con đường đến với thành công không bao giờ là dễ dàng cả, vậy nên các em đừng vội nản lòng nhé! Hôm nay cô trò mình hãy cùng nghe chia sẻ 8 bí mật để thành công của Richard St. John:

8 BÍ MẬT ĐỂ THÀNH CÔNG (ID: EG1003)

This is really a two-hour presentation I give to high school students, cut down to three minutes. And it all started one day on a plane, on my way to TED, seven years ago. And in the seat next to me was a high school student, a teenager, and she came from a really poor family. And she wanted to make something of her life, and she asked me a simple little question. She said, "What leads to success?" And I felt really badly, because I couldn't give her a good answer.

So I get off the plane, and I come to TED. And I think, jeez, I'm in the middle of a room of successful people! So why don't I ask them what helped them succeed, and pass it on to kids? So here we are, seven years, 500 interviews later, and I'm going to tell you what really leads to success and makes TEDsters tick.

And the first thing is passion. Freeman Thomas says, "I'm driven by my passion." TEDsters do it for love; they don't do it for money. Carol Coletta says, "I would pay someone to do what I do." And the interesting thing is: if you do it for love, the money comes anyway.

Work! Rupert Murdoch said to me, "It's all hard work. Nothing comes easily. But I have a lot of fun." Did he say fun? Rupert? Yes! TEDsters do have fun working. And they work hard. I figured, they're not workaholics. They're workafrolics.

Đây là một thuyết trình dài đến 2 tiếng cho các học sinh cấp 3, được rút xuống thành 3 phút. Và tất cả bắt đầu vào một ngày cách đây 7 năm, tôi đang ở trên một chuyến bay đến TED. Lúc đó, ngồi cạnh tôi là một học sinh cấp 3, một thiếu niên và một cô bé xuất thân từ một gia đình rất nghèo. Và cô bé muốn làm được điều gì đó trong cuộc đời của mình, cô đã hỏi tôi một câu hỏi nhỏ đơn giản: "Điều gì dẫn đến thành công?" Và tôi đã cảm thấy rất tệ, vì tôi đã không thể cho cô bé một câu trả lời thỏa đáng.

Nên khi tôi rời khỏi máy bay và đến TED. Tôi nghĩ, ừ nhỉ, mình đang ở giữa một căn phòng đầy những người thành công! Vậy tại sao mình không hỏi điều gì đã giúp họ thành công và truyền đạt lại cho các bạn trẻ? Vì vậy chúng ta có mặt ở đây, sau 7 năm với 500 cuộc phỏng vấn, tôi sẽ kể với các bạn điều gì thực sự dẫn tới thành công và tạo hứng khởi cho những nhà diễn thuyết ở TED.

Đầu tiên đó là đam mê. Freeman Thomas nói rằng, "Tôi bị dẫn dắt bởi niềm đam mê." Những nhà diễn thuyết ở TED làm việc vì niềm đam mê chứ không phải vì tiền. Carol Coletta nói, "Tôi hoàn toàn có thể trả tiền cho ai đó để làm việc của tôi." Và điều thú vị là: nếu các bạn làm việc vì đam mê, tiền bạc sẽ tự nhiên đến với bạn.

Làm việc! Rupert Murdoch đã nói với tôi, "Tất cả là nhờ sự chăm chỉ. Không có thứ gì đến dễ dàng. Nhưng tôi đã có rất nhiều niềm vui." Rupert? Có phải ông đã nói đến niềm vui? Vâng! Những nhà diễn thuyết ở TED luôn làm việc một cách vui vẻ. Và họ đều rất chăm chỉ. Tôi khám phá ra,

Good! Alex Garden says, "To be successful, put your nose down in something and get damn good at it." There's no magic; it's practice, practice, practice.

And it's focus. Norman Jewison said to me, "I think it all has to do with focusing yourself on one thing."

And push! David Gallo says, "Push yourself. Physically, mentally, you've got to push, push, push." You've got to push through shyness and self-doubt. Goldie Hawn says, "I always had self-doubts. I wasn't good enough; I wasn't smart enough. I didn't think I'd make it." Now it's not always easy to push yourself, and that's why they invented mothers. Frank Gehry said to me, "My mother pushed me."

Serve! Sherwin Nuland says, "It was a privilege to serve as a doctor." A lot of kids want to be millionaires. The first thing I say is: "OK, well you can't serve yourself; you've got to serve others something of value. Because that's the way people really get rich."

Ideas! TEDster Bill Gates says, "I had an idea: founding the first micro-computer software company." I'd say it was a pretty good idea. And there's no magic to creativity in coming up with ideas — it's just doing some very simple things. And I give lots of evidence.

họ không phải là những người tham công tiếc việc. Họ là những người say mê công việc.

Làm thật tốt! Alex Garden nói, "Để thành công hãy thực sự làm việc và phải làm thật tốt." Không có điều thần kì ở đây, chỉ là luyện tập, luyện tập và luyện tập.

Và tiếp theo là tập trung. Norman Jewison đã nói với tôi, "Tôi nghĩ tất cả những điều phải làm là hướng bản thân vào một điều gì đó"

Và sự động viên! David Gallo nói, "Hãy động viên bản thân. Cả về thể xác, tinh thần, bạn phải luôn tự động viên, động viên, động viên" Bạn phải tự động viên mình vượt qua sự xấu hổ và thiếu tự tin. Goldie Hawn nói, "Tôi đã có lúc rất thiếu tự tin. Tôi không đủ tốt, tôi không đủ thông minh. Tôi không nghĩ mình đã có thể làm được". Bây giờ, đúng là không dễ để luôn tự động viên bản thân, và đó là lý do tại sao người ta tạo ra các bà mẹ. Frank Gehry đã nói với tôi, "Mẹ tôi luôn thúc đẩy tôi."

Phụng sự! Sherwin Nuland nói, "Hãy coi việc phụng sự như một bác sĩ là một đặc ân". Có rất nhiều bạn trẻ muốn trở thành triệu phú. Và điều đầu tiên tôi nói với họ là, "Được thôi, bạn không thể lúc nào cũng chỉ vì bản thân mình, bạn phải cho người ta thứ gì đó có giá trị. Bởi vì đó là cách mà mọi người thực sự làm giàu."

Những ý tưởng. Một nhà diễn thuyết của TED, Bill Gates nói rằng, "Tôi đã có một ý tưởng — thành lập công ty phần mềm máy vi tính đầu tiên." Tôi phải nói đó là một ý tưởng khá tuyệt. Không gì là thần kì về sự sáng tạo đi lên từ ý tưởng, đó chỉ là làm những thứ rất đơn giản. Và tôi đã đưa ra rất nhiều dẫn chứng.

Persist! Joe Kraus says, "Persistence is the number one reason for our success." You've got to persist through failure. You've got to persist through crap! Which of course means "Criticism, Rejection, Assholes and Pressure". So, the answer to this question is simple: Pay 4,000 bucks and come to TED. Or failing that, do the eight things — and trust me, these are the big eight things that lead to success.

Thank you TEDsters for all your interviews!

Bền bỉ. Joe Kraus nói, "Sự bền bỉ là nguyên do số một cho sự thành công của chúng ta." Bạn phải bền bỉ với cả những thất bại. Bạn phải bền bỉ với cả những điều vớ vẩn! Những thứ kiểu như "Sự chỉ trích, sự chối bỏ, những tên khốn và áp lực." Và câu trả lời lớn cho câu hỏi này rất đơn giản: Hãy trả 4,000 đô và đến TED. Nếu không, hãy thực hiện 8 điều trên - và tin tôi đi, đó là tám điều lớn nhất dẫn đến thành công.

Cảm ơn những nhà diễn thuyết của TED đã tham gia cuộc phỏng vấn.

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 10: CÂU HỎI ĐUÔI

A – LÝ THUYẾT

Trong tiết học này, các em sẽ được học về bản chất, định nghĩa câu hỏi đuôi, những nội dung cấu trúc cơ bản. Ngoài ra còn có những trường hợp, những lưu ý đặc biệt trong cấu trúc câu hỏi đuôi, buộc các em phải ghi nhớ, học thuộc.

Đây là dạng bài quan trọng trong các đề thi tiếng Anh, chúng ta cùng tìm hiểu các em nhé!

I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA CÂU HỎI ĐUÔI (ID: EV1061)

Câu hỏi đuôi là câu hỏi ngắn ở cuối câu trần thuật, ngược lại với vế câu đằng trước.

Eg: You're tall, aren't you?

❖ Nguyên tắc thành lập câu hỏi đuôi:

- Vế đằng trước là khẳng định thì phần đuôi là phủ định

Eg: You play the guitar, don't you?

- Vế đằng trước là phủ định thì phần đuôi là khẳng định

Eg: You didn't do your homework, did you?

II. CÂU HỎI ĐUÔI VỚI CÁC THÌ

Thì	Động từ Tobe	Động từ thường
Hiện tại đơn, hiện tại tiếp diễn	- He is handsome, isn't he? - You aren't studying, are you? - I am late, aren't I?	- They like me, don't they? - She doesn't love you, does she?
Quá khứ đơn, quá khứ tiếp diễn	- He was reading, wasn't he? - They weren't surprised, were they?	- He didn't come here, did he? - You came late, did you?
Thì tương lai đơn	- She will be loved, won't she? - It won't rain, will it? - We shall go out tonight, shan't we?	
Hiện tại hoàn thành; hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn	- He hasn't been here all week, has he? - They have left, haven't they? - She has studied well, hasn't she?	
Quá khứ hoàn thành; quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn	- They had been working hard, hadn't they? - He hadn't met you before, had he?	

III. CÂU HỎI ĐUÔI VỚI ĐỘNG TỪ KHUYẾT THIỂU

Động từ khuyết thiếu	Ví dụ
Can	- He can speak English, can't he? - You can't run fast, can you?
Must	- We must be patient, mustn't we? - All visitors mustn't report to reception, must they?
Should	- I should keep silence, shouldn't I? - I shouldn't do it again, should I?
Ought to	- He ought to do that, oughtn't he? - Children oughtn't to be able to read by the age of 7, ought they?
May	- You may see me tomorrow, mayn't you? - He mayn't be a good father, may he?
Might	- You might join me for dinner, mightn't you? - He mightn't get there in time, might he?

IV. NHỮNG LƯU Ý QUAN TRỌNG TRONG CẤU TRÚC CÂU HỎI ĐUÔI

- Ở phần câu hỏi đuôi phủ định, ta bắt buộc phải dùng dạng viết tắt, không được dùng 'Not'.

Eg: You are a student, aren't you?

- Câu hỏi đuôi của "I am" là "aren't I"?

Eg: I am going to do it again, aren't I?

- Đối với câu mệnh lệnh, thì câu hỏi đuôi sẽ là "will +you?"

Eg: Close the door, will you?

Don't be late, will you?

- Câu giới thiệu dùng Let's +V.inf, câu hỏi đuôi là "Shall we?"

Eg: Let's go for a picnic, shall we?

Tuy nhiên: Let me do..., will you?

- Chủ ngữ là "nothing, anything, everything, something....." thì câu hỏi đuôi dùng "it".

Eg: Everything is ok, isn't it?

Nothing gives you more pleasure than listening to music, does it?

- Chủ ngữ là những đại từ bất định "everyone, someone, anyone, no one, nobody..." câu hỏi đuôi là "they".

Eg: Somebody wanted a drink, didn't they?

Nobody phoned, did they?

- Trong câu có các trạng từ phủ định và bán phủ định như: "never, seldom, hardly, scarcely, little...; nothing, nobody, no one..." thì phần hỏi đuôi sẽ ở dạng khẳng định.

Eg: He seldom drinks wine, does he?

You hardly call each other, do you?

- "This/That..." → ...it?
- "These/Those" → ...they?

Eg: This isn't your bag, is it?

These are 3 oranges, aren't they?

- Chủ từ là mệnh đề danh từ, dùng "it" trong câu hỏi đuôi.

Eg: What you have said is wrong, isn't it?

- Câu đầu có "It seems that + mệnh đề", lấy mệnh đề làm câu hỏi đuôi.

Eg: It seems that you are right, aren't you?

- Câu đầu là "I wish", dùng "may" trong câu hỏi đuôi.

Eg: I wish to study English, may I?

- Chủ từ là "One", dùng "you" hoặc "one" trong câu hỏi đuôi.

Eg: One can be one's master, can't you/one?

- Câu cảm thán, lấy danh từ trong câu đổi thành đại từ, và dùng "is, am, are"

Eg: What a beautiful dress, isn't it?

How intelligent you are, aren't you?

- Câu đầu có "Must":

- Must chỉ sự cần thiết: => dùng needn't

Eg: They must study hard, needn't they?

- Must chỉ sự cấm đoán: => dùng mustn't

Eg: You mustn't come late, must you?

- Câu đầu có "I + các động từ sau: think, believe, suppose, figure, assume, fancy, imagine, reckon, expect, seem, feel" + mệnh đề phụ, lấy mệnh đề phụ làm câu hỏi đuôi.

Eg: I think he will come here, won't he?

I don't believe Mary can do it, can she?

- Used to → didn't.....?

Eg: She used to live here, didn't she?

- Had better → mượn trợ động từ HAD để lập câu hỏi đuôi.

Eg: He'd better stay, hadn't he?

➤ Would rather → mượn trợ động từ "would" để lập câu hỏi đuôi.

Eg: You'd rather go, wouldn't you?

❖ Một số ví dụ:

1. She is collecting stickers,.....?

- A. doesn't she B. is she C. isn't she D. does she

2. We often watch TV in the afternoon,.....?

- A. often we B. watch we C. do we D. don't we

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. Đáp án C

Vế trước chia ở thì hiện tại tiếp diễn, có động từ tobe là "is" nên phần câu hỏi đuôi sẽ ở thể phủ định "isn't she".

Dịch: Cô ấy đang sưu tập các nhãn dán phải không?

2. Đáp án D

Vế trước chia ở thì hiện tại đơn, ở thể khẳng định, chủ ngữ là "We" nên câu hỏi đuôi sẽ ở thể phủ định "don't we".

Dịch: Chúng ta thường xem TV vào buổi chiều đúng không?

❖ Một số ví dụ khác (chứa trong video)

3. You have cleaned your bike, _____?

- A. haven't you B. have you C. will you D. don't you

4. John and Max don't like Maths, _____?

- A. do John and Max B. do them C. do they D. don't they

5. Lan enjoys watching TV after dinner, _____?

- A. don't she B. doesn't she C. don't Lan D. doesn't Lan

6. Tam didn't go to school yesterday, _____?

- A. did she B. did Tam C. didn't she D. didn't Tam

7. No one is a better cook than my mother, _____?

- A. isn't it B. aren't they C. is it D. are they

8. Do it right now, _____?

- A. don't you B. doesn't it C. don't it D. will you

9. There are no easy ways to succeed, _____?

- A. aren't they B. aren't there C. are they D. are there

10. She seldom goes to library, _____?

- A. doesn't she B. doesn't it C. does she D. does it

11. They are going home from school, _____?

- A. aren't they B. don't they C. won't they D. are they

12. Mary didn't do her homework last Monday, _____?
 A. did Mary B. didn't Mary C. did she D. didn't she
13. He could have bought a new car, _____?
 A. didn't he B. did him C. couldn't he D. could him
14. I'm clever, _____?
 A. amnot I B. aren't I C. aren't you D. am I
15. You have never been in Italy, _____?
 A. don't you B. haven't you C. do you D. have you
16. No one died in the accident, _____?
 A. didn't they B. didn't it C. did they D. did it
17. That is your umbrella, _____?
 A. isn't it B. isn't that C. are your D. are you
18. Let's go out for a walk, _____?
 A. will you B. shall you C. shall we D. do we
19. Tom won't be here late, _____?
 A. won't Tom B. will not he C. will he D. won't he
20. I am not a nurse, _____?
 A. am I B. amnot I C. are I D. aren't I

ĐÁP ÁN

3. A	4. C	5. B	6. A	7. D	8. D	9. D	10. C	11. A
12. C	13. C	14. B	15. D	16. C	17. A	18. C	19. C	20. A

B – LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1 (ID: ET1050)

Câu 1 [ID: 303305] Lan enjoys watching TV after dinner, _____?

- A. does not Lan B. does not she C. doesn't Lan D. doesn't she

Câu 2 [ID: 303306] You have heard about that, _____?

- A. don't you B. haven't you C. do not you D. have you

Câu 3 [ID: 303307] He didn't have to speak to me, _____?

- A. did he B. did him C. didn't he D. didn't him

Câu 4 [ID: 303308] Come and see me tomorrow, _____?

- A. don't you B. do you C. won't you D. will you

Câu 5 [ID: 303309] He used to beat his wife, _____?

- A. used not he B. used he C. didn't he D. did he

Câu 6 [ID: 303310] She came very late, _____?

- A. did she B. didn't she C. came she D. came not she

Câu 7 [ID: 303311] I'd better go, _____?

- A. hadn't I B. hadn't you C. didn't I D. had I

Câu 8 [ID: 303312] There's an examination tomorrow, _____?

- A. isn't there B. isn't it C. aren't there D. aren't they

Câu 9 [ID: 303313] No one is better cook than his mother, _____?

- A. is she B. isn't she C. are they D. aren't they

Câu 10 [ID: 303314] He seldom goes to the library, _____?

- A. doesn't he B. is he C. does he D. isn't he

Câu 11 [ID: 303315] Let's go for a long walk, _____?

- A. will we B. shall we C. don't you D. do you

Câu 12 [ID: 303316] I think he will join us, _____?

- A. doesn't he B. won't he C. will he D. don't I

Câu 13 [ID: 303317] The film is good, _____?

- A. is it B. are they C. isn't it D. aren't they

Câu 14 [ID: 303318] You are going to the party, _____?

- A. are you B. aren't you C. don't you D. do you

Câu 15 [ID: 303319] He can speak English, _____?

- A. can he B. can't he C. can't him D. could he

Câu 16 [ID: 303320] Tam didn't go to school yesterday, _____?

- A. didn't he B. did he C. didn't Tam D. did Tam

Câu 17 [ID: 303321] They'll buy a new computer, _____?

- A. will they B. will not they C. won't they D. do they

Câu 18 [ID: 303583] You can't play tennis today, _____?

- A. can't you B. can you C. don't you D. aren't you

Câu 19 [ID: 303584] She's been studying English for two years, _____?

- A. isn't she B. has she C. hasn't she D. is she

Câu 20 [ID: 303639] You've never been in Italy, _____?

- A. have you B. haven't you C. have not you D. never you

Câu 21 [ID: 303641] That's Bob, _____?

- A. isn't that B. is that C. aren't they D. isn't it

Câu 22 [ID: 303642] I'm supposed to be here, _____?

- A. am not I B. am I C. aren't you D. aren't I

- Câu 23 [ID: 303643] I'm supposed to be here, _____?
 A. do you B. don't you C. are you D. aren't you
- Câu 24 [ID: 303644] Lan speaks Japanese very well, _____?
 A. does she B. doesn't she C. is she D. isn't she
- Câu 25 [ID: 303645] John has worked hard, _____?
 A. does he B. has he C. hasn't he D. doesn't he
- Câu 26 [ID: 303646] Tim has three exercises to do, _____?
 A. hasn't he B. hasn't Tim C. doesn't Tim D. doesn't he
- Câu 27 [ID: 303647] They invited him to the party, _____?
 A. do they B. don't they C. didn't they D. did they
- Câu 28 [ID: 303648] Your brother doesn't like watching TV, _____?
 A. does he B. doesn't he C. isn't he D. is he
- Câu 29 [ID: 303650] Mary is reading a book in her room, _____?
 A. is she B. isn't she C. does she D. doesn't she
- Câu 30 [ID: 303651] Let's listen to the radio, _____?
 A. don't we B. don't you C. will we D. shall we
- Câu 31 [ID: 303652] Turn off the television, _____?
 A. don't you B. will you C. do you D. won't you
- Câu 32 [ID: 303653] Nothing could be done, _____?
 A. couldn't they B. couldn't it C. could they D. could it
- Câu 33 [ID: 303654] Everybody is here, _____?
 A. isn't it B. is it C. aren't they D. are they
- Câu 34 [ID: 303655] We must hurry, _____?
 A. must we B. needn't we C. do we D. don't we
- Câu 35 [ID: 303656] You must keep silence in class, _____ you?
 A. don't you B. mustn't you C. do you D. must you
- Câu 36 [ID: 303657] They are leaving here tomorrow _____?
 A. aren't they B. will they C. are they D. won't they
- Câu 37 [ID: 303658] Somebody has left these socks on the bathroom floor, _____?
 A. have they B. haven't they C. has he D. hasn't he
- Câu 38 [ID: 303303659] James owns a restaurant, _____?
 A. does he B. is he C. doesn't he D. didn't he
- Câu 39 [ID: 303660] You aren't too busy to talk, _____?
 A. are you B. have you C. aren't you D. do you

Câu 40 [ID: 303661] The ticket to London doesn't cost a lot, _____?

- A. do they B. does it C. is it D. isn't it

Câu 41 [ID: 303662] You don't need me any more, _____?

- A. do I B. don't I C. do you D. don't you

Câu 42 [ID: 303663] We should follow the traffic rules strictly, _____?

- A. should we B. shouldn't we C. should not we D. shouldn't us

Câu 43 [ID: 303664] Your mother has read these fairy tales for you many times, _____?

- A. hasn't she B. has she C. doesn't she D. does she

Câu 44 [ID: 303665] Nothing is wrong, _____?

- A. is it B. isn't it C. aren't they D. are they

Câu 45 [ID: 303666] Going swimming in the summer is never boring, _____?

- A. isn't it B. is it C. doesn't it D. does it

Câu 46 [ID: 303667] He didn't recognize me, _____?

- A. didn't he B. did he C. didn't him D. did him

Câu 47 [ID: 303668] Don't talk in class, _____?

- A. do you B. don't you C. will you D. won't you

Câu 48 [ID: 303669] This picture is yours, _____?

- A. is this B. isn't this C. is it D. isn't it

Câu 49 [ID: 303670] You took some photos on the beach, _____?

- A. didn't you B. did you C. didn't they D. did they

Câu 50 [ID: 303671] Elizabeth is a dentist, _____?

- A. is she B. isn't she
C. is Elizabeth D. isn't Elizabeth

ĐÁP ÁN

1. D	2. B	3. A	4. D	5. C	6. B	7. A	8. A	9. C	10. C
11. B	12. B	13. C	14. B	15. B	16. B	17. C	18. B	19. C	20. A
21. D	22. D	23. A	24. B	25. C	26. D	27. C	28. A	29. B	30. D
31. B	32. D	33. C	34. B	35. B	36. A	37. B	38. C	39. A	40. B
41. C	42. B	43. A	44. A	45. B	46. B	47. C	48. D	49. A	50. B

LUYỆN TẬP 2 (ID: ET1051)

Câu 1 [ID: 303672] Nobody likes the play, _____?

- A. do they B. don't they C. does it D. doesn't it

Câu 2 [ID: 303673] That isn't Bill driving, _____?

- A. isn't it B. is it C. is he D. isn't he

Câu 3 [ID: 303674] Don't leave anything behind, _____?

- A. do you B. don't you C. won't you D. will you

Câu 4 [ID: 303675] Nobody called the phone, _____?

- A. didn't it B. did it C. didn't they D. did they

Câu 5 [ID: 303676] You have never been to Paris, _____?

- A. haven't you B. have you C. don't you D. do you

Câu 6 [ID: 303677] Those aren't Fred's books, _____?

- A. are those B. aren't those C. are they D. aren't they

Câu 7 [ID: 303678] This bridge is not very safe, _____?

- A. isn't this B. is this C. is it D. isn't it

Câu 8 [ID: 303679] He'd better stop smoking, _____?

- A. does he B. doesn't he C. had he D. hadn't he

Câu 9 [ID: 303680] You need to stay longer, _____?

- A. needn't you B. need you C. do you D. don't you

Câu 10 [ID: 303681] There are many religions in Malaysia, _____?

- A. aren't there B. are there C. aren't they D. are they

Câu 11 [ID: 303682] His children may swim, _____?

- A. may not he B. may not they C. mayn't he D. mayn't they

Câu 12 [ID: 303683] Nam and Binh have to study harder, _____?

- A. haven't they B. hasn't he C. doesn't he D. don't they

Câu 13 [ID: 303684] Ba's village lies near the foot of the mountain, _____?

- A. does he B. doesn't he C. doesn't it D. does it

Câu 14 [ID: 303685] Let's forget unhappy things, _____?

- A. shall we B. will we C. won't we D. shan't we

Câu 15 [ID: 303686] You need finish your homework before going to bed, _____?

- A. needn't you B. need you C. don't you D. do you

Câu 16 [ID: 303687] Someone feels tired after the trip, _____?

- A. doesn't it B. does it C. don't they D. do they

Câu 17 [ID: 303688] He will arrive soon, _____?

- A. won't he B. will he C. does he D. doesn't he

Câu 18 [ID: 303689] Go and buy me some aspirins, _____?

- A. do you B. don't you C. will you D. won't you

Câu 19 [ID: 303690] We shall give them away, _____?

- A. will we B. shall not we C. won't we D. shan't we

Câu 20 [ID: 303691] Your brother's here, _____?

- A. is he B. isn't he C. are your D. aren't your

Câu 21 [ID: 303692] Mary wasn't angry, _____?

- A. was she B. is she C. wasn't she D. was Mary

Câu 22 [ID: 303693] He hardly ever makes a mistake, _____?

- A. does he B. doesn't he C. has he D. hasn't he

Câu 23 [ID: 303694] What a lovely day today, _____?

- A. is it B. isn't it C. is today D. isn't today

Câu 24 [ID: 303695] I think that her voice is beautiful, _____?

- A. don't I B. do I C. isn't it D. is it

Câu 25 [ID: 303696] I'm right, _____?

- A. amnot I B. aren't I C. are you D. aren't you

Câu 26 [ID: 303697] They seldom visit you, _____?

- A. don't they B. do they C. are they D. aren't they

Câu 27 [ID: 303698] You had many cars, _____?

- A. hadn't you B. had you C. didn't you D. did you

Câu 28 [ID: 303699] That house has been built since January, _____?

- A. doesn't it B. does it C. hasn't it D. has it

Câu 29 [ID: 303700] Tan and Ba are playing sports now, _____?

- A. are they B. aren't they C. is he D. isn't he

Câu 30 [ID: 303701] Everybody looked so miserable, _____?

- A. didn't they B. did they C. did he D. didn't he

ĐÁP ÁN

1. A	2. B	3. D	4. C	5. B	6. C	7. C	8. D	9. D	10. A
11. D	12. D	13. C	14. A	15. A	16. C	17. A	18. C	19. D	20. B
21. A	22. A	23. B	24. C	25. B	26. B	27. C	28. C	29. B	30. A

C- THI ONLINE

Truy cập [ID: ET1152, ET1153, ET1154.](#)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 11: GIẢ ĐỊNH CÁCH

A – LÝ THUYẾT

Trong tiết học này, các em sẽ được học về định nghĩa câu giả định, các động từ giả định, tính từ giả định, danh từ giả định. Bên cạnh đó, các em cũng được học về câu điều ước Wish và If only, cấu trúc câu giả định trong câu điều kiện, cấu trúc câu giả định dùng với "It is time" và "as if, as though".

Đây là dạng bài quan trọng trong các đề thi tiếng Anh và cũng khá khó, chúng ta cùng tìm hiểu các em nhé!

I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA CÂU GIẢ ĐỊNH (ID: EV1062)

- Câu giả định là loại câu mà đối tượng thứ nhất muốn đối tượng thứ hai làm việc gì.
- Câu giả định có tính chất cầu khiến chứ không mang tính ép buộc như câu mệnh lệnh.

II. ĐỘNG TỪ GIẢ ĐỊNH:

Các động từ đòi hỏi mệnh đề sau phải ở dạng giả định:

advise	demand	prefer	require
ask	insist	propose	suggest
command	move: thúc giục	recommend	stipulate
decree	order	request	urge

Cấu trúc giả định:

$S1 + V1 \text{ that } S2 + (\text{should}) + V.\text{inf}$

Eg: The doctor suggests that she give up smoking.

Lưu ý:

- Trong câu giả định, mệnh đề 2 bắt buộc phải có "that".
- Động từ sau chủ ngữ 2 ở dạng nguyên thể không "to".
- Nếu muốn thành lập thể phủ định đặt "not" sau S2, trước nguyên thể không "to".

Eg: My boss required that we not use the office phone for personal calls.

Lưu ý: Những động từ có thể dùng giả định đằng sau hoặc có thể dùng trong cấu trúc "V + O + to V": ask, order, require, urge.

Eg: We ask that she be present.

We ask her to be present.

III. TÍNH TỪ GIẢ ĐỊNH

Các tính từ đòi hỏi mệnh đề sau phải ở dạng giả định:

advised	important	recommended
critical	mandatory	required
crucial	necessary	suggested
essential	obligatory	urgent
imperative	proposed	vital

Cấu trúc giả định:

It+ tobe+ adj + that + S2+ (should) + V.inf

Eg: It is necessary that he register the subjects before the term begins.

It is important that she should meet the doctor immediately.

It has been proposed that we not change the topic.

IV. DANH TỪ GIẢ ĐỊNH

Các danh từ xuất phát từ những động từ và tính từ trên đều buộc mệnh đề sau nó phải ở dạng giả định:

advice	demand	preference	requirement
asking	insistence	proposal	stipulation
command	move	recommendation	suggestion
decree	order	request	urge

Cấu trúc giả định:

N + that+ S2 + (should) + V.inf

Eg: The proposal that drinking be banned in public areas has been criticized by many people.

It is a recommendation from a doctor that the patient stop smoking.

He made a suggestion that his wife not go to work.

V. CÂU ĐIỀU ƯỚC WISH - IF ONLY

A. Wish

Wish dùng ở hiện tại có nghĩa là muốn làm gì

- wish = want = would like + (sb) + to do st

Eg: I wish to pass the entrance exam.

I wish you to become a good teacher.

- wish somebody something:

Eg: I wish you happy birthday.

"Wish" là giả định cách khi nó diễn tả ước muốn trái ngược lại với hiện tại, quá khứ.

1. Câu điều ước không có thực ở hiện tại

Eg: I don't know the answer.

→ I wish I knew the answer.

Form: wish (that) + S + V.ed

Lưu ý: trong câu "wish" không có thật ở hiện tại, dùng "were" nếu là động từ tobe cho tất cả các ngôi.

Eg: I wish I were rich.

2. Câu điều ước không có thực ở quá khứ

Eg: I didn't go to his party.

→ I wish I had gone to his party.

Form: wish (that) + S + had P2

3. Câu ước thể hiện sự phàn nàn hoặc muốn ai đó làm gì.

Eg: I wish they would stop making noise.

I wish it would stop raining hard in summer.

Form: wish (that) + B + would do st

B. If only: giả như

Cách dùng tương tự "I wish" nhưng mang nghĩa trang trọng hơn.

Eg: If only I were the best student in the class.

You are driving too dangerously. If only you would drive slowly.

VI. CÂU GIẢ ĐỊNH DÙNG "WOULD RATHER"

1. Đề nghị ai đó làm gì một cách lịch sự ở hiện tại

S1 + would rather + S2 + did st

Eg: A: "Would you mind if I smoke?"

B: "I'd rather you didn't smoke".

I'd rather you didn't talk in class now.

Jane would rather it were not winter now.

2. Diễn tả sự việc trái ngược với thực tế ở quá khứ

S1 + would rather + S2 + had P2

Eg: I'd rather they had prepared more food last week.

Bob would rather his wife hadn't divorced him.

VII. CẤU TRÚC GIẢ ĐỊNH TRONG CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN

1. Câu điều kiện loại 2: diễn tả điều không có thực trong hiện tại

If S + V.ed/were, S + would/could/might + V.inf

Eg: I work at night, so I can't attend evening classes.

→ If I didn't work at night, I could attend evening classes.

2. Câu điều kiện loại 3: diễn tả điều không có thực ở quá khứ

If S + had P2, S+ would/could/might + have + P2

Eg: I didn't catch the plane. I didn't meet him there.

→ If I had caught the plane, I would have met him there.

3. Câu điều kiện trộn

If S+ had P2, S+ would/could/might + V.inf

Eg: I didn't change my job. I am poor now.

If S + had P2, S + would/could/might + V.inf

Eg: If I had changed my job, I would be rich now

VIII. CÂU GIẢ ĐỊNH DÙNG VỚI "IT'S TIME"

1. Trái ngược với hiện tại

It's time/high time/about time + S + V.ed

(Đã đến lúc ai đó làm gì, thực tế chưa làm)

Eg: It's time you concentrated on learning English.

The exam is coming. It's time they worked hard.

It's time something was done to prevent pollution.

2. Trái ngược với quá khứ

It was time/high time/about time + S + had P2

Eg: It was time they had left for their office.

It was high time he had gone to college.

IX. CÂU GIẢ ĐỊNH DÙNG VỚI "AS IF/AS THOUGH"

1. Diễn đạt hành động không có thật ở hiện tại

As if/As though + S + V.ed/were

Eg: It's very cold today. It looks as if/as though it were autumn now.

He isn't my father. He is talking as if he were my father.

2. Diễn đạt hành động không có thật ở quá khứ

As if/As though + S + had P2

Eg: The whole were seriously damaged. It looks as if it had been destroyed by bombs.

He talked as if he had gone to London.

❖ **Trường hợp đặc biệt:** "As if/As though" mô tả hành động có thật

Eg: It looks as if it is going to rain.

He appears running from a fierce dog.

→ It looks as if he is running from a fierce dog.

Để làm được dạng bài này, các em cần hiểu được bản chất của câu giả định. Đó là diễn tả một điều không có thật ở hiện tại hoặc quá khứ và chúng ta có hiện tượng lùi một thì đối với cấu trúc câu giả định. Điều này được thể hiện rất rõ trong câu điều kiện, câu điều ước, và một số cấu trúc câu đặc biệt: would rather, it's time, as if/as though. Ngoài ra, các em cần nắm được cấu trúc câu giả định "that should" được dùng với các động từ, tính từ và danh từ đặc biệt đã được nêu trong bài học.

Một số ví dụ :

1. It's important that he _____ to take her medicine twice a day
 A. remember B. remembers C. to remember D. remembered
2. She was absent. I wish she _____ the conference
 A. would attend B. attended C. have attended D. had attended

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. Đáp án A

Trong câu có tính từ giả định "important" nên ta sau "that" ta dùng động từ nguyên mẫu

Dịch: Nó rất quan trọng rằng anh ta nhớ uống thuốc hai lần một ngày

2. Đáp án D

Câu đầu tiên nói về một tình huống thực tế trong quá khứ "She was absent" nên ta dùng cấu trúc câu điều ước trái ngược với quá khứ, động từ chia ở thì quá khứ hoàn thành

Dịch: Cô ta đã vắng mặt. Tôi ước cô ta đã tham dự cuộc hội thảo.

Một số ví dụ khác (chứa trong video)

3. Mrs. Mary demanded that the heater _____ immediately. Her apartment was freezing.
 A. repaired B. be repaired C. repair D. repairing
4. I like this coat. If it _____ cheaper, I would buy it.
 A. is B. would be C. were D. had been
5. I wish you _____ borrow my things without permission.
 A. don't B. won't C. shouldn't D. wouldn't
6. They treat her as if she _____ their daughter.
 A. is B. was C. were D. has been
7. It is time you _____ a better job.
 A. find B. found C. had found D. would find
8. I wish I _____ to him yesterday
 A. talked B. would talk C. talk D. had talked
9. If only I _____ how to find her now!
 A. know B. knew C. had known D. would know
10. He suggested that I _____ ready by eight o'clock.
 A. am B. were C. had been D. be
11. The requirement that he _____ work will be hard to meet.
 A. will find B. finds C. find D. found
12. I don't understand this point of grammar. I wish I _____ it better.
 A. understood B. would understand
 C. had understood D. understand
13. I miss my friends. I wish my friends _____ here right now.
 A. were B. would be C. had been D. be
14. It's high time he _____ smoking.
 A. stop B. stops C. stopped D. had stopped
15. She described that place as if she _____ it before.
 A. visited B. has visited C. had visited D. were visiting
16. If you had asked him, he _____ able to help you.
 A. was B. had been C. would be D. would have been
17. If he _____ us, we wouldn't have finished our work so quickly.
 A. hasn't helped B. didn't help
 C. hadn't helped D. wouldn't help

18. I should never have said that. I wish I _____ that.
 A. didn't say B. wouldn't say C. hadn't said D. not say
19. I cannot sleep. The dog next door is making too much noise. I wish it _____ quiet.
 A. kept B. would keep C. had kept D. were kept
20. It is imperative _____ what to do when there is a fire.
 A. he must know about B. that everyone know
 C. that he knew D. we knew

ĐÁP ÁN

3. B	4. C	5. D	6. C	7. B	8. D	9. B	10. D	11. C
12. A	13. A	14. C	15. C	16. D	17. C	18. C	19. B	20. B

B - LUYỆN TẬP**LUYỆN TẬP 1 (ID: ET1155)**

Câu 1 [ID: 217949] I wish I _____ so much.

- A. didn't eaten B. hadn't eaten C. do not eat D. won't eat

Câu 2 [ID: 217950] Had it not been for your help, I _____.

- A. would get lost B. got lost
 C. would have got lost D. had got lost

Câu 3 [ID: 217951] I wish I _____ applied for the job.

- A. will B. should C. had D. have

Câu 4 [ID: 217953] If Margaret hadn't been wearing a seat belt, she _____ injured.

- A. has been B. would has been
 C. would be D. would have been

Câu 5 [ID: 217956] If the driver in front _____ so suddenly, the accident wouldn't have happened.

- A. hasn't stopped B. hadn't stopped C. didn't stop D. don't stop

Câu 6 [ID: 217960] If you didn't do this, you _____ punished.

- A. are B. will be C. should be D. would be

Câu 7 [ID: 217961] They helped me a lot. I don't know what I _____ without their help.

- A. have done B. had done C. would have done D. will do

Câu 8 [ID: 217962] I wish you _____ something instead of just sitting and doing nothing.

- A. do B. should C. will do D. would do

Câu 9 [ID: 217963] I wish Sarah _____ here now.

- A. is B. were C. would be D. will be

Câu 10 [ID: 217967] I wish I _____ to the party last night.

- A. went B. go C. had gone D. have gone

Câu 11 [ID: 217970] She wishes she _____ a doctor in the future.

- A. is B. were C. will be D. would be

Câu 12 [ID: 217972] If only _____ taller, I might be better at basketball.

- A. I am B. I were C. I be D. I have been

Câu 13 [ID: 217975] I suggest that he _____.

- A. study B. studies C. studying D. to study

Câu 14 [ID: 217976] Is it essential that we _____ there?

- A. be B. are C. being D. will be

Câu 15 [ID: 217977] Don recommended that you _____ the committee.

- A. are joining B. join C. joined D. had joined

Câu 16 [ID: 218116] When I stopped talking, Sam finished my sentence for me as though he _____ my mind.

- A. would read B. had read C. reads D. can read

Câu 17 [ID: 218117] It is important that he _____ to study often.

- A. tries B. tried C. try D. trying

Câu 18 [ID: 218118] Dr. Smith asked that Mark _____ his research paper before the end of the month.

- A. submit B. submitted C. submitting D. be submitted

Câu 19 [ID: 218119] Donna requested Frank _____ to the party.

- A. came B. comes C. come D. coming

Câu 20 [ID: 218120] If you _____, I would have brought my friends over to your house this evening to watch TV, but I didn't want to bother you.

- A. have studied B. studied
C. hadn't been studying D. didn't study

Câu 21 [ID: 218121] I wish I _____ you some money for your rent, but I'm broke myself.

- A. can lend B. would lend C. could lend D. will lend

Câu 22 [ID: 218124] If it weren't working for an accounting firm, I _____ in a bank.

- A. work B. will work
C. have worked D. would be working

Câu 23 [ID: 218127] If there _____ the ricefields could have been more productive.

- A. had been enough water B. were enough water
C. would be enough water D. are enough water

Câu 24 [ID: 218129] The teacher insists that her students _____ on time.

- A. are B. being C. be D. were

Câu 25 [ID: 218133] Jake recommended that Susan _____ immediately.

- A. hire B. hires C. hired D. be hired

Câu 26 [ID: 218137] _____ she agreed, you would have done it.

- A. If B. Had C. Should D. Would

Câu 27 [ID: 218138] If he hadn't wasted too much time, he _____ in his examination.

- A. would fail B. wouldn't fail
C. wouldn't have failed D. won't fail

Câu 28 [ID: 218140] If you had the chance, _____ you go fishing?

- A. did B. may C. would D. do

Câu 29 [ID: 218142] Christine demanded that I _____ to take part in the negotiations.

- A. allow B. be allowed C. allowing D. allowed

Câu 30 [ID: 218143] We suggested that you _____ to the organization.

- A. admit B. admitted C. be admitted D. admitting

Câu 31 [ID: 218145] It is important that you _____ there when he gets off the plane.

- A. stands B. are standing C. will stand D. be standing

Câu 32 [ID: 218149] I wish _____ his address

- A. I knew B. I knows C. I have known D. I would know

Câu 33 [ID: 302739] Would you mind not bringing your dog into the restaurant?

=> I'd rather you _____ your dog into the restaurant.

- A. not bring B. did not bring C. bring D. brought

Câu 34 [ID: 302746] It is very important that all employees _____ in their proper uniforms before 6:30 a.m.

- A. are dressed B. will be dressed C. be dressed D. were dressed

Câu 35 [ID: 302760] I can't stand him. He always talks as though he _____ everything.

- A. knew B. knows C. know D. known

Câu 36 [ID: 302772] I enjoyed the movie very much. I wish I _____ the book from which it was made.

- A. have read B. had read C. should have read D. read

Câu 37 [ID: 302785] If there were no subjunctive mood, English _____ much easier.

- A. will be B. could have been C. would have been D. would be

Câu 38 [ID: 302798] The coach insisted that Fabio _____ the center position.

- A. play B. plays C. played D. to play

Câu 39 [ID: 302802] The law requires that everyone _____ his car checked at least once a month.

- A. has B. have C. had D. will have

Câu 40 [ID: 302807] We might have failed if you _____ us a helping hand.

- A. have not given B. would not give C. had not given D. did not give

Câu 41 [ID: 302812] – “What will you do during winter vacation?” – “I don’t know, but it’s about time _____ something.”

- A. I decided B. I’ll decide C. I’d decided D. I’m deciding

Câu 42 [ID: 302822] The two strangers talked as if they _____ friends for years.

- A. should be B. had been C. have been D. were

Câu 43 [ID: 302827] My suggestion is that the sick boy _____ to hospital as soon as possible.

- A. is taken B. must be taken C. be taken D. has to be taken

Câu 44 [ID: 302834] The coach wishes the ruby team _____ more motivated.

- A. was B. were C. would be D. would have been

Câu 45 [ID: 302838] If only Judhead _____ a little more responsible in his choice of courses!

- A. was B. were C. is D. are

Câu 46 [ID: 302840] It’s time the children _____ to bed.

- A. have gone B. to go C. go D. went

Câu 47 [ID: 302841] I suggest that you _____ the tickets in advance.

- A. book B. booked C. booking D. to book

Câu 48 [ID: 302842] The guard at the gate insisted that everybody _____ the rules.

- A. obeys B. obey C. will obey D. would obey

Câu 49 [ID: 302843] I _____ her if I thought she would understand.

- A. would tell B. will tell C. would have told D. tell

Câu 50 [ID: 302844] You are late. If you _____ a few minutes earlier, you _____ him.

- A. came/would meet B. had come/would have met
C. come/will meet D. had come/would meet

ĐÁP ÁN

1. B	2. C	3. C	4. D	5. B	6. D	7. C	8. D	9. B	10. C
11. D	12. B	13. A	14. A	15. B	16. B	17. C	18. A	19. C	20. C
21. C	22. D	23. A	24. C	25. D	26. B	27. C	28. C	29. B	30. C
31. D	32. A	33. B	34. C	35. A	36. B	37. D	38. A	39. B	40. C
41. A	42. B	43. C	44. B	45. B	46. D	47. A	48. B	49. A	50. A

LUYỆN TẬP 2: (ID: ET1156)

Câu 1 [ID: 302889] I demand that he _____ immediately

- A. apologize B. will apologize C. apologizes D. has apologize

Câu 2 [ID: 302890] It is necessary that everything _____ ready by two o’clock tomorrow.

- A. is B. are C. be D. will be

Câu 3 [ID: 302891] I like this coat. If it _____ cheaper, I would buy it.

- A. is B. be C. was D. were

Câu 4 [ID: 302892] He insisted that he _____ really very tired and that he _____ to have a rest

- A. was/be allowed B. was/must be allowed
C. should be/must be allowed D. should be/be allowed

Câu 5 [ID: 302893] She didn't come to his birthday party yesterday. He wishes she _____.

- A. has come B. came C. had come D. would come

Câu 6 [ID: 302894] John behaved as if he _____ himself at the party.

- A. had been enjoying B. was enjoying
C. enjoyed D. enjoy

Câu 7 [ID: 302895] It's a pity you missed many lessons.

→ I'd rather you _____ so many lessons.

- A. had missed B. missed C. didn't miss D. hadn't missed

Câu 8 [ID: 302896] I said that her cooking was terrible. I wish I _____ that.

- A. didn't say B. hadn't said
C. wouldn't say D. wouldn't have said

Câu 9 [ID: 302897] He likes to swim. He wishes he _____ near the sea.

- A. lives B. lived C. had lived D. would live

Câu 10 [ID: 302898] It is strange that he _____ so upset about such a trifle, isn't it?

- A. were B. shall be C. should be D. have been

Câu 11 [ID: 302899] We should really be working now. → It's time we _____.

- A. were working B. work C. be working D. will work

Câu 12 [ID: 302900] If I _____ you, I would call him.

- A. am B. were C. was D. had been

Câu 13 [ID: 302901] It is advisable that you _____ your application as soon as possible.

- A. submit B. will submit
C. submitted D. should have submitted

Câu 14 [ID: 302905] They disagree on everything and fight all the time. They wish they _____ married.

- A. didn't get B. hadn't got
C. wouldn't get D. wouldn't have got

Câu 15 [ID: 302906] Take an umbrella. It looks as if it _____ rain.

- A. is going to B. was going to C. were going to D. might be

Câu 16 [ID: 302909] She described that place as if she _____ it before.

- A. visited B. has visited C. had visited D. were visiting

Câu 17 [ID: 302911] It's high time he _____ smoking.

- A. stop B. stops C. stopped D. had stopped

Câu 18 [ID: 302913] If only I _____ how to find her now!

- A. know B. knew C. had known D. would know

Câu 19 [ID: 302917] She suggested that we _____ in the lobby of the hotel at 9:00 a.m.

- A. shall meet B. will meet
C. should meet D. would have met

Câu 20 [ID: 302922] If she _____ yesterday, she would come here with us tomorrow night.

- A. finished it B. finish it
C. have finished it D. had finished it

Câu 21 [ID: 302925] If I had taken that English course, I _____ much progress.

- A. would have made B. would make
C. made D. will make

Câu 22 [ID: 302927] They recommend that she _____ to a ski resort in Spain.

- A. will go B. goes C. go D. should have gone

Câu 23 [ID: 302929] The doctor insisted that she _____ at the hospital.

- A. stay B. stays C. will stay D. has stayed

Câu 24 [ID: 302932] If I _____ enough money, I could have stayed at a five-star hotel during my vacation.

- A. had B. had had C. have D. have had

Câu 25 [ID: 302934] Their trip to China was very interesting. I wish I _____ there with them.

- A. could go B. might go C. had gone D. went

Câu 26 [ID: 302937] She misses him. She wishes he _____ her a letter.

- A. has sent B. will send
C. would send D. would have sent

Câu 27 [ID: 302940] They treat her as if she _____ their daughter.

- A. is B. are C. be D. were

Câu 28 [ID: 302944] I cannot sleep. The dog next door is making too much noise. I wish it _____ quiet.

- A. kept B. had kept
C. would keep D. would have kept

Câu 29 [ID: 302947] She would be disappointed if we _____ her a present.

- A. won't bring B. wouldn't bring C. didn't bring D. hadn't brought

Câu 30 [ID: 302951] He enjoyed talking to them. He wished they _____ so quickly.

- A. left B. had left C. did not leave D. had not left

ĐÁP ÁN

1. A	2. C	3. D	4. D	5. C	6. A	7. D	8. B	9. B	10. C
11. A	12. B	13. A	14. B	15. A	16. C	17. C	18. B	19. C	20. D
21. A	22. C	23. A	24. B	25. C	26. C	27. D	28. A	29. C	30. D

C- THI ONLINE

Truy cập ☒ ID: ET1157, ET1158, ET1159.

GÓC GIẢI TRÍ

Kết thúc bài học ngày hôm nay các em có cảm thấy mệt không? Cô hy vọng là không. Hôm nay, cô sẽ dành tặng các em một bài hát tiếng Anh mà cô rất tâm đắc, đặc biệt là những lúc cô thấy mệt mỏi, cần thêm sức mạnh để tiếp tục làm việc. Đó là bài hát "Stronger" của Kelly Clarkson. Các em cùng lắng nghe nhé!

Stronger – Kelly Clarkson (ID: EG1004)

You know the bed feels warmer

Sleeping here alone

You know I dream in color

And do the things I want

You think you got the best of me

Think you had the last laugh

Bet you think that everything good is gone

Think you left me broken down

Think that I'd come running back

Baby you don't know me, 'cause you're dead wrong

[Chorus]*

What doesn't kill you makes you stronger
Stand a little taller

Doesn't mean I'm lonely when I'm alone

What doesn't kill you makes a fighter

Footsteps even lighter

Doesn't mean I'm over cause you're gone

What doesn't kill you makes you stronger, stronger

Just me, myself and I

You heard that I was starting over with someone new

They told you I was moving on over you

You didn't think that I'd come back

I'd come back swinging

You tried to break me, but you see

Anh biết đấy, chiếc giường có cảm giác ấm áp hơn

Khi chỉ mình tôi ngủ lại nơi đây

Anh biết tôi mơ những giấc mơ nhiệm màu

Và làm những gì tôi muốn

Anh nghĩ anh có được những điều tốt đẹp nhất của tôi

Anh nghĩ rằng anh đã đúng

Tôi cá là anh nghĩ mọi chuyện tốt đẹp đều đã tiêu tan

Anh nghĩ anh đã làm tôi sụp đổ

Anh nghĩ tôi sẽ quay về với anh

Cung à anh chẳng hiểu gì về tôi cả, anh lầm to rồi

[Điệp khúc]

Những gì không giết chết được bạn sẽ làm bạn mạnh mẽ hơn

Ngẩng cao đầu hơn một chút

Tôi một mình không có nghĩa là tôi cô đơn

Những gì không giết chết được bạn sẽ khiến bạn thành một chiến binh

Bước chân cũng nhẹ nhõm hơn

Anh ra đi không có nghĩa là cuộc đời tôi sẽ chấm dứt

Những gì không giết chết được bạn sẽ làm bạn mạnh mẽ hơn, mạnh mẽ hơn

Chỉ tôi, bản thân tôi và chính tôi

Tôi một mình không có nghĩa là tôi cô đơn

Họ kể cho anh rằng tôi đã bước tiếp và vượt qua khỏi hình bóng anh

Anh đâu ngờ rằng tôi sẽ quay lại

Tôi sẽ quay trở lại

Anh cố gắng làm tổn thương tôi, nhưng anh sẽ thấy

[Chorus]*

Thanks to you I got a new thing started
Thanks to you I'm not a broken hearted
Thanks to you I'm finally thinking 'bout
me

You know in the end the day you left
was just my beginning
In the end...

[Chorus]*

(lặp lại điệp khúc)

Nhờ anh tôi đã có một khởi đầu mới
Nhờ anh tôi không phải kẻ bị tổn thương
Nhờ anh mà tôi cuối cùng cũng suy nghĩ
cho bản thân

Anh biết đấy, sự kết thúc lúc anh rời đi
chỉ là sự khởi đầu của tôi

Đến cuối cùng...

(lặp lại điệp khúc)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 12: LIÊN TỪ VÀ CÁC DẠNG MỆNH ĐỀ

BÀI 1: MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ

A – LÝ THUYẾT

Trong tiết học này, chúng ta sẽ đi sâu vào tìm hiểu mệnh đề quan hệ: đại từ quan hệ, trạng từ quan hệ, phân biệt mệnh đề quan hệ giới hạn và mệnh đề quan hệ không giới hạn, các trường hợp giản lược mệnh đề quan hệ.

Đây là dạng bài quan trọng trong các đề thi tiếng Anh và cũng khá khó, chúng ta cùng tìm hiểu các em nhé!

I. CÁC LOẠI MỆNH ĐỀ TRONG TIẾNG ANH: (ID: EV1063)

Có 3 loại mệnh đề:

1. Mệnh đề danh từ (Noun clauses):

Eg: I don't understand *what the teacher said*.

That I dislike him is clear.

Whether she loves me or not is unknown.

2. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ (adverbial clauses):

Eg: I won't leave *until he answers my question*.

I will call him *once I have finished my job*.

3. Mệnh đề quan hệ (relative clauses):

Mệnh đề quan hệ còn được gọi là mệnh đề tính ngữ (adjective clause) bổ nghĩa cho danh từ và đứng ngay sau danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa cho.

Eg: The man *who lent me this book* is my father's friend.

She is talking to the man *who lent me this book*.

II. ĐẠI TỪ QUAN HỆ

1. Đại từ quan hệ chỉ người:

- **who** - thay thế cho chủ ngữ,
- **whom** - thay thế cho tân ngữ,
- **whose + N** - thay thế cho sở hữu cách.

Eg: The girl *who loves me* is a teacher.

The girl *whom I love* is a teacher.

The girl *whose sister loves me* is a teacher.

That is the girl *whose sister I love*.

2. Đại từ quan hệ chỉ vật:

- **which** - thay thế cho cả chủ ngữ và tân ngữ,
- **whose/of which** – thay thế cho sở hữu cách.

Eg: The language *which we are learning* is the most popular in the world. (which là tân ngữ).

We are learning the language *which is the most popular in the world*. (which là chủ ngữ).

The house is now in bad condition. Its roof was blown off by the hurricane is now in bad condition.

=> The house *whose roof/the roof of which was blown off by the hurricane* is now in bad condition.

- **That**: Dùng cho cả người và vật, thay thế cho cả chủ ngữ và tân ngữ

❖ Các trường hợp dùng "that" :

- Để thay thế cho cụm danh từ bao gồm cả người và vật

Eg: He told me about the places and people *that he had seen in London*.

- Dùng với so sánh hơn nhất, "the first", "the last"

Eg: She was the first *that broke the silence*.

- Dùng "that" sau các đại từ bất định: anything, everything, nothing.....

Eg: He just said *anything that came into his head*.

- Sau các từ "all, little, none, only" thì chỉ dùng "that".

Eg: *All that I can do for you is to leave you alone*.

❖ Các trường hợp không dùng "that" :

- "That" không được thay thế cho sở hữu cách: whose, of which.

- Khi đưa giới từ lên trước đại từ quan hệ thì không dùng "that" được.

Eg: The man whom/that we are talking about is my teacher.

Nhưng: The man about whom we are talking is my teacher.

❖ Mệnh đề quan hệ giới hạn & Mệnh đề quan hệ không giới hạn:

- Mệnh đề quan hệ giới hạn: Đây là loại mệnh đề cần thiết vì tiền ngữ chưa xác định, không có nó câu sẽ không đủ nghĩa.

Eg: The man *who/that* invented the steam engine was a Scottish scientist.

- Mệnh đề quan hệ không giới hạn: Đây là loại mệnh đề không cần thiết vì tiền ngữ đã được xác định, không có nó câu vẫn đủ nghĩa.

Eg: James Watt, *who* invented the steam engine, was a Scottish scientist.

- Dùng mệnh đề quan hệ không giới hạn trong các trường hợp sau:

- Danh từ riêng (Proper noun).

- Tính từ sở hữu + N (Eg: my teacher, my friends...).

- Tính từ chỉ định: this, that, these, those.

• **Lưu ý:**

- Không được dùng THAT trong mệnh đề quan hệ không giới hạn.
- Mệnh đề quan hệ không giới hạn được ngăn với mệnh đề chính bằng các dấu phẩy.

❖ **Mệnh đề nối tiếp:** đứng sau dấu phẩy, thay thế cho cả mệnh đề phía trước.

Eg: He always tells lie, which makes her sad.

= That he always tells lies makes her sad.

❖ **Các cụm từ chỉ số lượng:**

Eg: I tried on three pairs of shoes. None of the shoes fitted me.

=> I try on three pairs of shoes, none of which fitted me.

Mary has three brothers. All of them are married.

=> Mary has three brothers, all of whom are married.

They asked me a lot of questions. I couldn't answer most of them.

=> They asked me a lot of questions, most of which I couldn't answer.

III. TRẠNG TỪ QUAN HỆ

1. Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn: *where*

Where = in/on/at + which: thay thế cho danh từ chỉ nơi chốn, địa điểm

Eg1: This is the house. We used to live in the house

=> This is the house *which* we used to live *in*.

=> This is the house *in which* we used to live.

=> This is the house *where* we used to live.

Eg2: I'm calling from the bar. The bar is very noisy.

=> The bar *which* I'm calling *from* is very noisy.

=> The bar *from which* I'm calling is very noisy.

=> The bar *where* I'm calling is very noisy.

2. Trạng từ chỉ thời gian: *when*

When = in/on/at + which: thay thế cho danh từ chỉ thời gian

Eg: He was born on the day. His father was away on that day.

=> He was born on the day *when* his father was away.

The days *on which/when* I lived far from home were the saddest ones.

3. Trạng từ chỉ nguyên nhân: *why*

why = for which: thay thế cho danh từ chỉ nguyên nhân (the reason, the cause)

Eg: Please tell me the reason *why* you are so sad.

The reason *why* I came late this morning was that my alarm clock didn't go off.

IV. GIẢN LƯỢC MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ (ID : EV1064)

1. Dùng cụm Ving: Dùng cho các mệnh đề chủ động

Eg: The man who is standing there is my brother.

=> The man standing there is my brother.

The girl who bought this cat is beautiful.

=> The girl buying this cat is beautiful.

The students who don't do their homework will be punished.

=> The students not doing their homework will be punished.

Lưu ý:

Khi đại từ quan hệ thay thế cho tân ngữ, không giản mệnh đề quan hệ được, chỉ có thể lược bỏ đại từ quan hệ.

Eg: The man whom I am talking about is handsome.

=> The man I am talking about is handsome.

2. Dùng P2: cho các mệnh đề bị động.

Eg: I like books which were written by Nguyen Du.

=> I like books written by Nguyen Du.

3. Dùng cụm to - inf:

Dùng khi danh từ đứng trước có các chữ sau đây bổ nghĩa:

- The + so sánh hơn nhất, the first, the second..., the only, the next, the last.....

Eg: This is the only student who can do the problem.

=> This is the only student to do the problem.

- Động từ "have/had"

Eg: I have many homework that I must do.

=> I have many homework to do.

- Đầu câu có HERE, THERE

Eg: There are six letters which have to be written today.

=> There are six letters to be written today.

Lưu ý:

- Nếu trước đại từ quan hệ có giới từ thì phải đem xuống cuối câu

Eg: We have a rack which we hang our coat on.

=> We have a rack to hang our coat on.

- Nếu chủ ngữ 2 mệnh đề khác nhau thì thêm cụm " for sb" trước " to inf":

Eg: We have some picture books that children can read.

=> We have some picture books for children to read.

4. Dùng cụm danh từ - noun phrase (đồng chủ ngữ)

Dùng khi mệnh đề tính từ có dạng:

Who/which + BE + Danh từ/Tính từ/Cụm danh từ/Cụm trạng từ

Eg: Football, which is a popular sport, is very good for health.

=> Football, a popular sport, is very good for health.

Do you like the book which is on the table?

=> Do you like the book on the table?

❖ Một số ví dụ luyện tập

1. She gives her children everything they want.

A. that

B. who

C. whom

D. what

2. Colin told me about his new neighbor, speaks French and Italian.

A. who

B. whom

C. which

D. whose

Giải thích chi tiết :

1. Đáp án A

"everything" là một đại từ bất định, nên ta sẽ dùng đại từ quan hệ "that" để thay thế cho nó.

Dịch: Cô ấy dành cho con mọi thứ chúng muốn.

2. Ở đây, ta cần một đại từ quan hệ thay thế cho "his new neighbor" (danh từ chỉ người). Hơn nữa, sau chỗ trống là động từ chính "speak" nên sẽ cần một từ đóng vai trò là chủ ngữ. Do đó, ta chọn "who"

Dịch: Colin kể cho tôi về người hàng xóm mới của anh ta, người mà nói được tiếng Pháp và tiếng Ý.

Để làm được dạng bài này, các em cần xác định được: đây là loại mệnh đề giới hạn hay không giới hạn, từ cần điền thay thế cho cả mệnh đề hay thay thế cho từ nào trong mệnh đề trước, là từ chỉ vật hay chỉ người, đóng vai trò là chủ ngữ, hay tân ngữ, hay tính từ sở hữu, từ đó chọn được đáp án đúng nhất.

Một số ví dụ khác (chứa trong video)

3. The population of London ____ was one of the largest cities in the world, is falling now.

A. which

B. what

C. where

D. ,which

4. What was the name of the girl _____ passport was stolen?

A. whose

B. who

C. which

D. when

5. Nora is the only person _____ me.

A. understands

B. to understand

C. understanding

D. understood

6. This is an awful film. It is the worst _____ I have never seen.
A. who B. that C. what D. whom
7. The hotel _____ we stayed was not clean.
A. who B. that C. where D. when
8. The reason _____ I phoned him was to invite him to a party.
A. what B. whose C. why D. which
9. There is a good restaurant _____ seafood.
A. eats B. eating C. to eat D. eaten
10. The sun _____ is one of millions of stars in the universe, provides us with heat and light.
A. that B. ,which C. that D. which
11. Do you know the boy _____ the window last night?
A. who broke B. who breaks C. has broken D. broke
12. Norman has sent them two letters, neither of _____ they have received.
A. that B. which C. whom D. whose
13. The books _____ by To Hoai are interesting.
A. writes B. wrote C. written D. writing
14. This is the place _____ I met my wife.
A. what B. where C. which D. that
15. The woman thanked the doctor _____ treatment had cured her.
A. whose B. of which C. of whom D. who
16. Those _____ had studied hard passed their exams.
A. what B. who C. whom D. that
17. My wife, _____ is a doctor, works at Community Hospital.
A. who B. which C. whom D. whose
18. She told me her address _____ I wrote on a piece of paper.
A. what B. which C. when D. where
19. Do you know the girl to _____ Tom is talking?
A. whom B. who C. which D. whose
20. The stories _____ Tom tells are usually very funny.
A. when B. that C. where D. who

ĐÁP ÁN

3. D	4. A	5. B	6. B	7. C	8. C	9. A	10. B	11. A
12. B	13. C	14. B	15. A	16. D	17. A	18. B	19. A	20. B

Exercise 2: Change each of these clauses to a reduced relative clause

1. The gentleman who lives next door to me is a well-known orator.
2. All the astronauts who are orbiting the earth in space capsules are weightless.
3. Trains which leave from this station take an hour to get to London.
4. John is the youngest person who takes part in the race.
5. The vegetable which are sold in this shop are grown without chemicals.

Exercise 3. Rewrite the sentences using relative clauses

1. The children like the funny stories. Their grandmother tells them those stories every evening.
2. Mr. John is an engineer. We play with his daughter every day.
3. He didn't receive the letter. I sent him the letter last January.
4. His father is a bank manager. This makes it easy for him to have a good job.
5. Can you understand the question? He asked you the question last time.
6. I don't remember the man. You said you met him at the canteen last week.
7. I lent you a book. Nam Cao wrote it.
8. This is the shop. I bought my bike in that shop.
9. The children often go swimming on Sundays. They have much free time then.
10. They are looking for the man and his dog. They have lost the way in the forest.

ĐÁP ÁN**Exercise 2:**

1. The gentleman living next door to me is a well-known orator.
2. All the astronauts orbiting the earth in space capsules are weightless.
3. Trains leaving from this station take an hour to get to London.
4. John is the youngest person to take part in the race.
5. The vegetable sold in this shop are grown without chemicals.

Exercise 3:

1. The children like the funny stories which their grandmother tells them every evening.
2. Mr. John, whose daughter we play with every day, is an engineer.
3. He didn't receive the letter which I sent him last January.
4. His father is a bank manager, which makes it easy for him to have a good job.
5. Can you understand the question which he asked you last time?
6. I don't remember the man whom you said you met at the canteen last week.
7. I lent you a book which Nam Cao wrote.
8. This is the shop where I bought my bike.

9. The children often go swimming on Sundays when they have much free time.
 10. They are looking for the man and his dog that have lost the way in the forest.

Khi làm bài tập giản lược mệnh đề quan hệ, các em cần xác định được đó là mệnh đề chủ động (dùng V-ing để rút gọn) hay mệnh đề bị động (dùng P2 để rút gọn) hay là dùng to-inf, dùng cụm danh từ... Còn khi dùng mệnh đề quan hệ để nối hai câu, các em cần xác định được mối liên hệ giữa hai câu đó, dùng đại từ quan hệ hay trạng từ quan hệ nào là phù hợp.

B - LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1: (ID: ET1160)

Câu 1 [ID: 214210] The woman next to my door is going to spend a few weeks in Sweden _____ her daughter lives.

- A. which B. where C. which D. that

Câu 2 [ID: 214212] I can't remember the name of the garage _____ we had the car repaired.

- A. where B. that C. which D. X

Câu 3 [ID: 214213] It was an awful experience. It was the worst thing _____ has ever happened to me.

- A. X B. ,which C. that D. which

Câu 4 [ID: 214215] The party _____ we went to last night was not very enjoyable.

- A. which B. that C. where D. A and B

Câu 5 [ID: 214219] He likes to tell people about his problems. He will talk to _____ will listen to him.

- A. that B. who C. whoever D. whom

Câu 6 [ID: 214220] At the end of this month, scientists at the institute will conduct their AIDS research, the results of _____ will be published within 6 months.

- A. which B. that C. whom D. whose

Câu 7 [ID: 214221] The whole world is hoping for the time _____ a cure for cancer will be discovered.

- A. whenever B. when C. X D. that

Câu 8 [ID: 214223] The physician's office usually has a laboratory _____ a variety of medical tests can be done.

- A. that B. which C. where D. who

Câu 9 [ID: 214224] In traditional medicine a healer is someone _____ may use a combination of ritual and remedies to treat a sick person.

- A. whom B. that C. whose D. no answer is correct

Câu 10 [ID: 214225] There are many languages used around the world today _____ do not have a form of writing.

- A. which B. when C. ,which D. whose

Câu 11 [ID: 214226] There are five flights going to Chicago everyday. I don't care which one we take. We can take _____ fits best with our schedule.

- A. whoever B. whenever C. whatever D. whichever

Câu 12 [ID: 214228] The company hired ten new employees, some of _____ are well-trained.

- A. who B. whom C. which D. that

Câu 13 [ID: 214229] The boys tennis over there are my new neighbors.

- A. who plays B. that playing
C. who are playing D. are playing

Câu 14 [ID: 214231] Simon is the man _____ Mary loves.

- A. who B. which C. whom D. A & B

Câu 15 [ID: 214233] Only one of the people _____ work in the company is qualified.

- A. what B. which C. who D. where

Câu 16 [ID: 214234] She is the one _____ I told you about.

- A. what B. which C. whose D. who

Câu 17 [ID: 214236] The magazine _____ you lent me is interesting.

- A. what B. which C. whom D. whose

Câu 18 [ID: 214257] The boy _____ sat next to you is my friend.

- A. who B. which C. whom D. whose

Câu 19 [ID: 214258] We are using books _____ were printed last year.

- A. what B. who C. which D. whose

Câu 20 [ID: 214259] The painting _____ Ms. Wallace bought was very expensive.

- A. whom B. whose C. which D. where

Câu 21 [ID: 214260] The homeless people _____ story appeared in the paper last week have now found a place to live.

- A. who B. whom C. that D. whose

Câu 22 [ID: 214262] Were the Wright brothers the ones _____ built the first aeroplane?

- A. which B. whom C. whose D. that

Câu 23 [ID: 214263] I don't like stories _____ have unhappy endings.

- A. where B. which C. they D. who

Câu 24 [ID: 214264] The periodic table contains all the elements, _____ has a particular atomic weight and atomic number.

- A. which of each B. each of which C. which each D. each

Câu 25 [ID: 214265] Ansel Adams was a landscape photographer _____ photographs of the western United States show nature on a grand scale.

- A. whose B. of whom C. of his D. his

Câu 26 [ID: 214266] Jan didn't check she had enough petrol before she left, _____ was careless of her.

- A. what B. it C. that D. which

Câu 27 [ID: 214267] This is a town _____ many people live.

- A. in which B. which C. at which D. on which

Câu 28 [ID: 214268] Julie, _____ is your sister, lives far away.

- A. which B. who C. whom D. she

Câu 29 [ID: 214269] I see some girls _____ are pretty.

- A. whom B. which C. who D. they

Câu 30 [ID: 214270] Give back the money _____ you took.

- A. it B. who C. whom D. which

Câu 31 [ID: 214271] He was killed by a man _____ friends we know.

- A. whose B. which C. whom D. that

Câu 32 [ID: 214272] He spoke to the messengers with _____ you were leaving.

- A. which B. whom C. whose D. that

Câu 33 [ID: 214273] We captured a town _____ is in Spain.

- A. whom B. where C. which D. it

Câu 34 [ID: 214274] The farmers _____ we saw were in the field.

- A. whose B. which C. they D. whom

Câu 35 [ID: 214275] The women _____ I gave the money were glad.

- A. to whom B. to that C. for whom D. for that

Câu 36 [ID: 214276] I know a boy _____ name is John.

- A. who B. whose C. whom D. that

Câu 37 [ID: 214277] The man _____ you sent to the general has reported the victory.

- A. whose B. which C. whom D. he

Câu 38 [ID: 214279] The people _____ courage you praised are now citizens.

- A. whose B. which C. whom D. that

Câu 39 [ID: 214281] Those towns _____ you were looking at in Gaul are small.

- A. who B. where C. which D. whom

Câu 40 [ID: 534656] This is the girl _____ I talked yesterday.

- A. whom B. who C. about who D. about whom

LUYỆN TẬP 2: (ID: ET1161)

A. whose B. who C. whom D. which

Câu 13 [ID: 218233] Tom made a number of suggestions, most of _____ were very helpful.

- A. them B. which C. that D. B & C

Câu 14 [ID: 218234] Alaska _____ my brother lives, is the largest state in the United States.

- A. which B. where C. , where D. All are correct

Câu 15 [ID: 218235] Tell me the reason _____ you were absent yesterday.

- A. where B. when C. why D. that

Câu 16 [ID: 214278] I saw those slaves _____ had been led to the city.

- A. whose B. which C. whom D. who

Câu 17 [ID: 214280] You folks _____ live in farmhouses do not like the life of the city.

- A. whose B. who C. they D. which

Câu 18 [ID: 214286] Did you see the men _____ I gave the money?

- A. to whom B. which C. from whom D. to that

Câu 19 [ID: 214288] The man _____ spoke to John is my brother.

- A. whom B. who C. whose D. which

Câu 20 [ID: 214289] I must thank the man from _____ I got the present.

- A. who B. whom C. that D. which

Câu 21 [ID: 214290] It is a car _____ I bought last year.

- A. whom B. who C. which D. whose

Câu 22 [ID: 214291] He is the man _____ son is a doctor.

- A. whom B. which C. who D. whose

Câu 23 [ID: 218216] I come from a city _____ is located in the southern part of the country.

- A. who B. which C. that D. B & C

Câu 24 [ID: 218219] That's the woman to _____ Jim used to be married.

- A. who B. whom C. which D. that

Câu 25 [ID: 218221] He is the boy _____ is my best friend.

- A. that B. whom C. who D. A & C

Câu 26 [ID: 218227] I talked to a woman _____ car had broken down on the way to the party.

- A. which B. who C. whose D. whom

Câu 27 [ID: 218230] The concert _____ we are looking forward is next Saturday.

- A. which B. that C. whom D. A & B

Câu 28 [ID: 218236] There was a time _____ dinosaurs dominated the earth.

- A. which B. when C. that D. A & B

Câu 29 [ID: 218237] The house in _____ I was born and grew up was destroyed in an earthquake ten years ago.

- A. which B. where C. that D. All are correct

Câu 30 [ID: 218238] Summer is the time of the year _____ the weather is the hottest.

A. when

B. which

C. that

D. B & C

ĐÁP ÁN

1. C	2. D	3. D	4. C	5. D	6. B'	7. B	8. A	9. B	10. A
11. B	12. C	13. B	14. C	15. C	16. D	17. B	18. A	19. B	20. B
21. C	22. D	23. D	24. B	25. D	26. C	27. D	28. B	29. A	30. A

LUYỆN TẬP 3: (ID: ET1162)

Câu 1 [ID:214209] There is a good restaurant _____ seafood.

A. to eat

B. eating

C. ate

D. eat

Câu 2 [ID: 214227] English is an important language _____.

A. to master

B. mastering

C. mastered

D. master

Câu 3 [ID: 214230] He read The Old Man and The Sea, a novel _____ by Ernest Hemingway.

A. written

B. writing

C. which written

D. that wrote

Câu 4 [ID: 214237] The man _____ there is my brother.

A. standing

B. to stand

C. stand

D. stood

Câu 5 [ID: 214238] I like books _____ by Nguyen Du.

A. write

B. written

C. to write

D. writing

Câu 6 [ID: 214239] This is the only student _____ this exercise.

A. do

B. done

C. did

D. to do

Câu 7 [ID: 214240] A girl _____ at a pub has won a lottery.

A. working

B. to work

C. works

D. who work

Câu 8 [ID: 214241] The book _____ is mine.

A. whose on the table

B. is on the table

C. which on the table

D. on the table

Câu 9 [ID: 214242] He is the only men _____ this problem.

A. to solve

B. solving

C. solved

D. solve

Câu 10 [ID: 214243] A woman _____ told all her husband's personal secrets.

A. was angry at her husband

B. angry at her husband

C. she angry at her husband

D. angrying at her husband

Câu 11 [ID: 214244] There are six letters _____ today.

A. write

B. writing

C. to be written

D. wrote

Câu 12 [ID: 214245] Today, the number of people _____ from AIDS is finally decreasing.

A. died

B. dying

C. they die

D. to die

Câu 13 [ID: 214246] The man _____ to Jane is handsome.

- A. talking B. is talking C. talked D. to talking

Câu 14 [ID: 214247] The ideas _____ in that book are interesting.

- A. which presented B. presenting C. to present D. presented

Câu 15 [ID: 214248] My grandmother, _____, never goes out of the house.

- A. old and sick B. is old and sick C. who old and sick D. A & C

Câu 16 [ID: 214249] I was awakened by the sound of a laughter _____ from the next room.

- A. come B. comes C. came D. coming

Câu 17 [ID: 214250] A person _____ in a shop is call a shop assistant.

- A. serving B. who serve C. served D. to server

Câu 18 [ID: 214251] The house _____ now belongs to Mr. Jonh.

- A. build B. is built C. buiding D. built

Câu 19 [ID: 214252] The car _____ on the street is broken.

- A. leave B. leaving C. left D. to leave

Câu 20 [ID: 214253] The men _____ for you comes from Japan.

- A. wait B. to wait C. waiting D. waited

Câu 21 [ID: 214254] The teacher punishes anyone _____ the rules.

- A. who break B. breaks C. broke D. breaking

Câu 22 [ID: 214255] The house _____ in red is where John lives.

- A. paint B. painted C. to paint D. painting

Câu 23 [ID: 214256] People _____ are expected to be formally dressed for the occasion.

- A. invited B. invite C. to invite D. inviting

Câu 24 [ID: 214292] The woman _____ next door is a famous singer.

- A. lives B. who live C. living D. that living

Câu 25 [ID: 214293] The house _____ in the storm has now been rebuilt.

- A. destroyed B. destroying
C. which destroyed D. that is destroyed

Câu 26 [ID: 214295] Tom was the last _____ the classroom yesterday.

- A. to leave B. leaving C. left D. leaves

Câu 27 [ID: 214296] Linda was the last student _____ at the oral exam.

- A. to be asked B. asking C. asks D. to ask

Câu 28 [ID: 218220] The people _____ for the bus in the rain are getting wet

- A. waiting B. to wait C. waited D. wait

Câu 29 [ID: 218222] I have a message for people _____ by the traffic chaos.

- A. to delay B. who delay C. delayed D. delaying

Câu 44 [ID: 218273] Is that the same film _____ we watched last year?

- A. when B. which C. why D. who

Câu 45 [ID: 218274] The girl _____ I borrowed the dictionary asked me to use it carefully.

- A. whose B. from whom C. from whose D. whom

Câu 46 [ID: 218275] The pupils _____ we took to the amusement park behaved themselves very well.

- A. whose B. with whom C. whom D. which

Câu 47 [ID: 218276] Bournemouth, _____ we are going to visit next summer, is a real paradise for the retired.

- A. that B. what C. which D. in which

Câu 48 [ID: 218277] Thatcher, _____ birthplace was above a shop in the small English town of Grantham, became Prime Minister of Britain four years after she had become the leader of the Conservative Party in 1975.

- A. where B. whose C. in which D. which

Câu 49 [ID: 218278] First jeans, _____ became fashionable for women after they saw them in Vogue magazine, were made by two Americans, Jacob Davis and Levi Strauss.

- A. that B. whose C. of which D. which

Câu 50 [ID: 218280] Felix Hoffman, a 29-year-old chemist _____ worked for the German company Bayer, invented the drug Aspirin in April 1879.

- A. where B. whose C. whom D. who

ĐÁP ÁN

1. A	2. A	3. A	4. A	5. B	6. D	7. A	8. D	9. A	10. B
11. C	12. B	13. A	14. D	15. A	16. D	17. A	18. D	19. C	20. C
21. D	22. B	23. A	24. C	25. A	26. A	27. A	28. A	29. C	30. B
31. C	32. C	33. A	34. D	35. B	36. C	37. B	38. D	39. A	40. A
41. C	42. C	43. A	44. B	45. B	46. C	47. C	48. B	49. D	50. D

LUYỆN TẬP 4 (ID: ET1163)

Câu 1 [ID: 218279] The first television picture _____ John Logie Baird transmitted on 25 November, 1905 was a boy _____ worked in the office next to Baird's workroom in London.

- A. which/whom B. who/which C. that/whose D. that/who

Câu 2 [ID: 218281] Joyce Bews, _____ was born and grew up in Portsmouth on the south coast of England, _____ she still lives, was 100 last year.

- A. that/in which B. who/where C. that/where D. who/that

Câu 3 [ID: 218350] This man studies biology. What do you call him?

- A. What do you call a man who studies biology?
- B. What do you call a man, who studies biology?
- C. What do you call a man studies biology?
- D. What do you call a man whom studies biology?

Câu 4 [ID: 218351] Hemingway developed a very concise writing style. His name is well-known throughout the world.

- A. Hemingway, his name is well-known throughout the world, developed a very concise writing style.
- B. Hemingway, whose is name well-known throughout the world, developed a very concise writing style.
- C. Hemingway, whose name is well-known throughout the world, developed a very concise writing style.
- D. Hemingway, who developed a very concise writing style, his name is well-known throughout the world.

Câu 5 [ID: 218352] This is the battle field. The soldiers fought there.

- A. This is the battle field which the soldiers fought.
- B. This is the battle field that the soldiers fought.
- C. This is the battle field where the soldiers fought there.
- D. This is the battle field where the soldiers fought.

Câu 6 [ID: 218353] He was born in 1983. There was a severe drought that year.

- A. He was born in 1983 when there was a severe drought.
- B. He was born in 1983 when was there a severe drought.
- C. When there was a severe drought in 1983 he was born.
- D. He was born in 1983, there was a severe drought when.

Câu 7 [ID: 218354] John Montagu was an English Earl. He invented the sandwich.

- A. John Montagu, whose invented the sandwich, was an English Earl.
- B. John Montagu, who invented the sandwich, was an English Earl.
- C. John Montagu, that invented the sandwich, was an English Earl.
- D. John Montagu, invented the sandwich, was an English Earl.

Câu 8 [ID: 218355] Flies, which come mostly in the summer, carry diseases.

- A. Flies, to come mostly in the summer, carry diseases.
- B. Flies, come mostly in the summer, carry diseases.
- C. Flies, coming mostly in the summer, carry diseases.
- D. Flies, that come mostly in the summer, carry diseases.

Câu 9 [ID: 218356] There was a candle which burnt in the room.

- A. There was a candle burning in the room.
- B. There was a candle burnt in the room.
- C. There was a candle to burn in the room.
- D. There was a candle to be burnt in the room.

Câu 10 [ID: 218357] I see a boy who is running in the street.

- A. I see a boy running in the street.
- B. I see a boy to running in the street.
- C. I see a boy to run in the street.
- D. None is correct.

Câu 11 [ID: 218358] He drew from the bag a watch which had been given for his birthday.

- A. He drew from the bag a watch given for his birthday.
- B. He drew from the bag a watch been given for his birthday.
- C. He drew from the bag a watch had given for his birthday.
- D. He drew from the hag a watch had been given for his birthday.

Câu 12 [ID: 218359] One of the drivers who was brought by Steward came over to me.

- A. One of the drivers that were brought by Steward came over to me.
- B. One of the drivers was brought by Steward came over to me.
- C. One of the drivers brought by Steward came over to me.
- D. One of the drivers bring by Steward came over to me.

Câu 13 [ID: 218360] We are talking about the girl who used to be a Miss World.

- A. The girl about whom we are talking used to be a Miss World.
- B. We hardly know a girl who used to be a Miss World.
- C. The girl who used to be a Miss World said that she knew you.
- D. We know the girl who used to be a Miss World.

Câu 14 [ID: 218361] He told her about the book. He liked it best.

- A. He told her about the book which he liked it best.
- B. He told her about the book which he liked best.
- C. He told her about the book whom he liked best.
- D. He told her about the book whose he liked best.

Câu 15 [ID: 218362] The old man is working in this factory. I borrowed his bicycle yesterday.

- A. The old man is working in this factory which I borrowed his bicycle yesterday.
- B. The old man whom is working in this factory I borrowed his bicycle yesterday.
- C. The old man whom I borrowed his bicycle yesterday is working in this factory.
- D. The old man whose bicycle I borrowed yesterday is working in this factory.

Câu 16 [ID: 218363] This is my opinion. You can do nothing to change it.

- A. You can do nothing to change it my mind.
- B. There's nothing you can do to change my mind.
- C. There's nothing can be done except changing my mind.
- D. You can do everything to change it my mind.

Câu 17 [ID: 218364] The man is my teacher. I am grateful to him.

- A. The man whom I grateful to him is my teacher.
- B. The man whom I am grateful to is my teacher
- C. The man is my teacher who I am grateful.
- D. The man to him I am grateful is my teacher.

Câu 18 [ID: 218365] Ngoc is friendly. We are talking about her.

- A. Ngoc, we are talking about, is friendly.
- B. Ngoc, whom we are talking about, is friendly
- C. Ngoc, about her we are talking, is friendly.
- D. Ngoc, whom we are talking, is friendly.

Câu 19 [ID: 218366] A pilot is a person who flies an aircraft.

- A. A person who called a pilot flies an aircraft.
- B. A pilot is someone who flies an aircraft.
- C. A person that flies an aircraft is called a pilot.
- D. Both B and C are correct.

Câu 20 [ID: 218367] That is the student. I borrowed his book last week.

- A. That is the student I borrowed whose book last week.
- B. The student whose book I borrowed that is.
- C. That is the student, whose book I borrowed last week
- D. That is the student whose book I borrowed last week.

Câu 21 [ID: 218368] We like the computer. We bought it yesterday.

- A. We like the computer which we bought it yesterday
- B. We like the computer we bought which yesterday
- C. We like the computer we bought yesterday.
- D. The computer we like we bought yesterday.

Câu 22 [ID: 218376] Dr. Sales is the person _____.

- A. I don't have much confidence.
- B. in whom I don't have much confidence.
- C. whom I don't have much confidence in him.
- D. in that I don't have much confidence.

Câu 23 [ID: 218326] The old lady _____ we were travelling told us her life story.

- A. of whom B. with whom C. whose D. whom

Câu 24 [ID: 218327] She says the exam, _____ she took yesterday, was full of hard questions.

- A. which B. of which C. whom D. of whose

Câu 25 [ID: 218328] I called my cousin, _____ is a mechanic, to fix my car, was broken.

- A. who/which B. that/all of which C. who/all of which D. who/what

Câu 26 [ID: 218329] My only blue tie, _____ Richard wants to wear, is really an expensive one.

- A. that B. whose C. which D. whom

Câu 27 [ID: 218330] This is the village _____ my family and I lived for six year.

- A. in which B. that C. on which D. in where

Câu 28 [ID: 218331] She is a famous actress _____ everybody admires.

- A. to whom B. whom C. to which D. of whom

Câu 29 [ID: 218333] Justine, _____ parents live in Christchurch, has gone to Southampton.

- A. whom B. which C. to whom D. whose

Câu 30 [ID: 218335] The old building _____ was behind the local church fell down.

- A. of which B. which C. whose D. whom

ĐÁP ÁN

1. D	2. B	3. A	4. C	5. D	6. A	7. B	8. C	9. A	10. A
11. A	12. C	13. A	14. B	15. D	16. B	17. B	18. B	19. D	20. D
21. C	22. B	23. B	24. A	25. A	26. C	27. A	28. B	29. D	30. B

C- THI ONLINE

Truy cập ☒ ID: ET1164, ET1165, ET1166.

BÀI 2: CÁC DẠNG MỆNH ĐỀ

A – LÝ THUYẾT (ID: EV1065)

Trong tiết học này, các em sẽ được học về các dạng mệnh đề trong tiếng Anh: mệnh đề danh từ, mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian, mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích, mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nguyên nhân, kết quả, ... và cấu trúc đối lập.

Đây là dạng bài quan trọng trong các đề thi tiếng Anh và cũng khá khó, chúng ta cùng tìm hiểu các em nhé!

MỆNH ĐỀ DANH TỪ

I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA

Mệnh đề danh từ là mệnh đề có thể đóng vai trò như một danh từ trong câu.

Eg: I don't understand what the teacher said.

Đặc điểm của mệnh đề danh từ:

Mệnh đề này thường bắt đầu bằng if, whether và các từ để hỏi như what, why, when, where, ... và từ that.

II. CHỨC NĂNG CỦA MỆNH ĐỀ DANH TỪ

- Mệnh đề danh ngữ làm chủ ngữ trong câu

Where/when/why/what/that...+ S + V + V (số ít).

Eg: That she comes late surprises me.

Why she is absent is nothing to me.

When he leaves is up to me.

- Mệnh đề danh ngữ làm tân ngữ sau động từ

S + V + what/ where/ when/why/ that.....+ S + V

Eg: I don't know what she wants.

They think that they are wrong.

Can you show me where they are now?

- Mệnh đề danh ngữ làm tân ngữ sau giới từ

S + V/be adj+ prep+ where/what/when/why/that....+ S + V.

Eg: Their decision depends on what they think.

He is interested in how we could do that.

- Mệnh đề danh ngữ làm bổ ngữ cho chủ ngữ

S + to be + what/ where/when/why/that....+ S + V

Eg: The problem is where you are now.

The main point of the speech is why people should do the morning exercise.

III. MỆNH ĐỀ DANH TỪ RÚT GỌN

Mệnh đề danh ngữ có thể được rút gọn khi:

- Mệnh đề danh ngữ đứng ở vị trí tân ngữ.
- Mệnh đề danh ngữ và mệnh đề chính có chung chủ ngữ. Khi đó, mệnh đề danh ngữ được rút gọn thành dạng: S + V + Wh...+ to V

Eg: She didn't know how much coffee she had to make for the meeting.

→ She didn't know how much coffee to make for the meeting.

MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ

Các dạng mệnh đề trạng ngữ:

- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ kết quả
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nguyên nhân
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ quan hệ tương phản/nhượng bộ
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thể cách
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ điều kiện
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ so sánh

I. MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ CHỈ THỜI GIAN

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian thường bắt đầu bằng:

- before, after: trước, sau
- as soon as: ngay sau khi,
- while: trong khi,
- when, as: khi,
- until/till: mãi cho đến khi,
- once: khi mà, mỗi khi,
- by, by the time: ngay khi

Before/by/by the time:

Eg: I'll have finished my work *by the time/before* you come back.

I had finished my work *before/by/by the time* I went home.

= After I had finished my work, I went home.

As soon as:

Eg: I'll leave *as soon as* I finish my work.

✓ When/As/While

Cách dùng của "when/as":

- When + QKĐ, QKĐ:

Eg: When I was young, I liked to eat ice-cream.

- When + QKĐ, QKTD:

Eg: I was reading when he came.

- QKĐ + when + QKHT

Eg: He came when everyone had left

- When + HTĐ, TLĐ

Eg: When you become an adult, you will know the truth.

Cách dùng while:

- While + HTTD, HTTD (while + QKTD, QKTD)

Eg: While we are studying, they are hanging out.

I was learning while my father was watching TV.

- While + QKTD, QKĐ

Eg: While they were having lunch, she said nothing to him.

➤ Lưu ý: Phân biệt giữa while và during

- While (Conjunction) + Clause

- During (Preposition) + Noun/V-ing

Eg: During lunch, she said nothing to him.

✓ Until/till + clause: cho tới khi

Eg: I'll wait here until you come back.

✓ Once + clause = when : một khi

Eg: Once I have finished my exercises, I'll go out.

✓ Not until/Only when/Only after + clause, inversion.

Eg: Only when he came into light, did I recognize him.

II. MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ CHỈ MỤC ĐÍCH

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích là mệnh đề xác định mục đích mà hành động của mệnh đề chính xảy ra.

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích thường được bắt đầu bằng:

- lest (kẻo mà);

Eg: We left the house early *lest* we would miss the train.

- **for fear that (vì sợ rằng)**

Eg: I closed the window *for fear that* the baby should catch cold.

- **so that; in order that:**

Eg: She is studying hard *so that/in order that* she can pass the upcoming exam.

- **Lưu ý:** Để diễn tả chỉ mục đích chúng ta còn có thể sử dụng các từ hoặc cụm từ sau:

✓ in order to/so as to + V.inf

Eg: She is studying hard *in order to* pass the upcoming exam.

✓ in order for sb/sth to do sth:

Eg: We prepare everything *in order for them to* finish the job quickly.

✓ With a view to V - ing/not V - ing

Eg: *With a view to passing* the upcoming exam, she is studying hard.

III. MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ CHỈ KẾT QUẢ

Mệnh đề chỉ kết quả là những mệnh đề bổ nghĩa cho mệnh đề chính bằng cách xác định kết quả.

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ kết quả được bắt đầu bằng:

✓ so (vì vậy),

✓ so... that, such..... that (quá ... đến nỗi)

Eg: She had studied hard *so* she pass the exam successfully.

❖ Các cấu trúc của “so.... that” và “such.... that”

- **S + tobe/verb + so + adj/adv + that + clause**

Eg: The coffee is so hot that we can't drink it.

He swam so strongly that he won the first prize.

- **S + tobe + such + (a/an) + adj + N + that + clause**

Eg: It is such hot coffee that we can't drink it.

He was such a strong swimmer that he won the first prize.

- **Lưu ý:**

Với cấu trúc “so ... that” khi chuyển thành “such ...that” , ta biến động từ chính thành danh từ, chuyển trạng từ thành tính từ.

Eg: He *drives so carelessly* that he has many accidents.

→ He is *such a carless driver* that he has many accidents.

- **S + tobe + so + adj + a/an + singular noun + that + clause**

Eg: It is so nice a dog that she always take it out for a walk.

Vận dụng:

Eg: She types so careful that she never makes any mistakes.

→ She is such a careful typist that she never make any mistakes.

→ She is so careful a typist that she never make any mistakes.

- **S + V + so + many/few + plural noun + that + clause**

Eg: She has so many friends that she can't remember their birthdays.

So few students registered for the class that it was cancelled.

- **S + V + so + much/little + uncountable noun + that + clause**

Eg: My mother has so little free time that she never watches TV at night.

They spent so much money that they got broken.

IV. MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ CHỈ NGUYÊN NHÂN

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nguyên nhân thường bắt đầu bằng:

- Because: Bởi vì

- Since: Bởi vì

- As: Bởi vì

- For: Bởi vì

✓ Since:

- Since + QKD, HTHT: Kể từ khi

- Since + HTĐ/HTTD, clause: Bởi vì

Eg: Since you're in a hurry, we'd better start now.

✓ As:

- As + Clause = Like + N: giống

- As = when: khi

- As = because: bởi vì

Eg: As we've been married for 3 years, it's time to think about having a baby.

✓ Because = For + clause:

Eg: Because it rained heavily, the flight was delayed.

➤ Lưu ý:

1. **Due to = because of (prep) + Noun: bởi vì**

Eg: Because of the heavy rain, the flight was delayed.

Due to the fact that it rained heavily, the flight was delayed.

2. **Thanks to sb/st**

Owing to sb/st

Eg: The baby is awake thanks to you and your shouting.

3. Seeing that/Now that: thấy rằng, giờ thì

Eg: Seeing that/Now that it rained heavily, she stayed at home.

V. MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ CHỈ THỂ CÁCH

✓ As & Like: Như là

- As + Mệnh đề:

Eg: When in Rome, do as Romans do.

- Like + tân ngữ:

Eg: Do like me. (= Do as I do)

✓ Phân biệt Alike và Unlike:

- Alike: giống nhau

Eg: The twins look/are alike.

- Unlike + noun:

Eg: Unlike other classmates, I chose to study French.

✓ As if/As though: Câu giả định (như thể là)

Eg: He talks/is talking as if he were my father.

VI. MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ CHỈ SỰ NHƯỢNG BỘ/TƯƠNG PHẢN

- While/Whereas + Mệnh đề 1, Mệnh đề 2

Eg: He learns hard whereas his friends don't.

- Although/Though/Even though + Mệnh đề/PII (giảm mệnh đề)

Eg: Although published late, the book received great feedback.

Though it rained heavily, we came to class on time

- Despite/In spite of + Noun/V-ing, clause

Eg: Despite coming late, he wasn't punished.

Though it rained heavily, we came to class on time.

→ Despite the heavy rain, we came to class on time.

Lưu ý: Chỉ dùng được V - ing khi V - ing và mệnh đề có cùng chủ ngữ.

VII. CẤU TRÚC ĐỐI LẬP

✓ However + adj/adv + S + verb

Eg: However hard he tried, he failed the exam.

✓ Adj/adv + as + S + verb

Eg: However hard he tried, he failed the exam.

→ Hard as he tried, he failed the exam.

✓ No matter

- No matter how = however : dù thế nào đi chăng nữa
Eg: No matter how hard he tried, he failed the exam.
- No matter who = whoever: cho dù bất kỳ ai
Eg: No matter who you are, I still believe in you.
= Whoever you are, I still believe in you.
- No matter what = whatever : dù bất cứ điều gì
Eg: No matter what happens, smile and pass it.
= Whatever happens, smile and pass it.
- No matter where = wherever: bất cứ nơi đâu
Eg: No matter where/wherever you go, your family is still in your heart.

❖ Một số ví dụ luyện tập: (chứa trong video)

- _____ he always did well on his English tests, his parents were not surprised that he got an A.
A. When B. While C. Whereas D. Since
- _____ he thinks he's smart, he isn't.
A. Although B. Because C. Despite D. As
- The bridge was _____ low that the lorry couldn't go under it.
A. so B. such C. too D. as
- _____ she is late for the lesson, she gets bad mark for the essay.
A. So that B. Because C. Although D. Because of
- _____ she got up late, she missed the train.
A. Whenever B. So that C. Seeing that D. Owing to
- The man died _____ he got a serious disease.
A. as B. although C. where D. despite
- They stared at me _____ I were a very strange person.
A. as if B. so that C. although D. despite
- The librarian arranges the books according to their content _____ people can find them easily.
A. so that B. since C. when D. whereas
- You should say goodbye to your brother _____ you leave for Europe
A. After B. before C. Since D. while
- Many people gathered in front of the building _____ they could see the President clearly.
A. as if B. where C. in order that D. because

11. He doesn't understand _____ he doesn't speak French very well
 A. although B. thanks to C. despite D. because
12. _____ chatting online can be beneficial, it is certainly not the same as real interaction with human beings.
 A. Where B. Because C. Although D. No matter how
13. She signed the contract _____ she found some points that she was still confused
 A. although B. because C. as if D. despite
14. Her company was bankrupt _____ the country suffered from the Economic crisis.
 A. because B. so that C. although D. whereas
15. It was raining _____ they were discussing about the solution to the problem of air pollution.
 A. before B. while C. still D. whereas
16. _____ the exercises are very hard, they still do well.
 A. Because B. Even though C. So that D. Seeing that
17. I want to see him _____ he comes back.
 A. but B. as if C. as soon as D. only after
18. I will keep studying hard _____ I pass the exam.
 A. because B. until C. wherever D. in order to
19. The situation is quite serious; just _____ we heard yesterday.
 A. like B. as C. as if D. alike
20. John and Paul are so _____ that people are always confusing them.
 A. alike B. unlike C. like D. dislike

ĐÁP ÁN

1. D	2. A	3. A	4. B	5. C	6. A	7. A	8. A	9. B	10. C
11. D	12. C	13. A	14. A	15. B	16. B	17. C	18. B	19. B	20. A

Để làm được tốt bài tập ở phần này, các em cần nắm chắc được các loại mệnh đề trong tiếng Anh, xác định xem câu đó thuộc loại nào. Thông thường, các em phải hiểu được nghĩa của câu để chọn được đáp án đúng nhất.

A. although B. whether C. as if D. even

A. although B. whether C. as if D. even

Câu 16 [ID: 219296] My mother looks _____ she is tired. Perhaps she didn't sleep well last night.

- A. like B. although C. until D. as if

Câu 17 [ID: 219297] Our teacher speaks slowly _____ we may understand him.

- A. because B. in order to C. so that D. or

Câu 18 [ID: 219308] We keep our bread in the fridge _____ it doesn't go bad.

- A. since B. so that C. although D. after

Câu 19 [ID: 219309] _____ these cars are cheap, they last a long time.

- A. Because B. In order that C. Although D. After

Câu 20 [ID: 219310] You should give the iron time to heat up _____ you iron your clothes.

- A. because B. so that C. even though D. before

Câu 21 [ID: 219311] You need good shoes to go hiking in the mountains _____ the ground is rough and hard.

- A. because B. so that C. before D. even though

Câu 22 [ID: 219312] Hockey players wear lots of protective clothing _____ they don't get hurt.

- A. because of B. after C. in order that D. though

Câu 23 [ID: 219313] _____ he is tired, he can't work longer.

- A. Because B. Even though C. Although D. Beside

Câu 24 [ID: 219316] _____ he is so busy with his work, he always finds time to go to the concert every week.

- A. If B. Since C. Although D. Because

Câu 25 [ID: 219544] I haven't seen Tom _____ he gave me this book.

- A. since B. for C. until D. Before

Câu 26 [ID: 219546] _____ he has a headache, he has to take an aspirin.

- A. How B. Because C. Where D. Although

Câu 27 [ID: 219547] He had left _____ I came.

- A. when B. while C. since D. by the time

Câu 28 [ID: 219549] Our visit to Japan was delayed _____ my wife's illness.

- A. because B. because of C. thanks to D. Though

Câu 29 [ID: 219552] The flight had to be delayed _____ the bad weather.

- A. because B. due to
C. because of D. B and C are correct

Câu 30 [ID: 219553] _____ she's busy, she still helps you.

- A. Although B. Because C. Since D. As

Câu 31 [ID: 219555] Take a map with you _____ you lose your way.

- A. in case B. so C. because D. although

Câu 32 [ID: 219557] I couldn't unlock it _____ I had the wrong key.

- A. because B. so that C. although D. so

Câu 33 [ID: 219558] He agreed to go climbing _____ he hated heights.

- A. although B. in case C. since D. because

Câu 34 [ID: 219559] He got a new alarm clock _____ he'd get up on time.

- A. although B. so that C. since D. so

Câu 35 [ID: 219560] He hasn't written to us _____ he left.

- A. as long as B. since C. by the time D. as soon as

Câu 36 [ID: 219563] _____ rain or snow, there are always more than fifty thousand fans at the football games.

- A. Despite B. Although C. Because D. Since

Câu 37 [ID: 219565] The gate was shut _____ the cows won't get out of the cage.

- A. so as to B. in order to C. so as not D. so that

Câu 38 [ID: 219567] He works hard _____ help his family.

- A. so as that B. in order to
C. in order that D. A & B are correct

Câu 39 [ID: 219568] We moved to the front row _____ we could see and hear better.

- A. so B. so that C. such D. such that

Câu 40 [ID: 219569] Mozart could write music _____ he was only five.

- A. because B. despite C. when D. However

Câu 41 [ID: 219570] I made a mistake _____ I was tired.

- A. though B. so that C. because D. If

Câu 42 [ID: 219571] I will wait _____ he comes.

- A. however B. until C. so that D. In spite of

Câu 43 [ID: 219572] _____ a headache, he enjoyed the film.

- A. Although B. In spite of C. Because of D. However

Câu 44 [ID: 219574] My sister will take the plane _____ she dislikes flying.

- A. because B. so that C. although D. before

Câu 45 [ID: 219580] _____ he wasn't ready in time, we went without him.

- A. When B. Moreover C. As D. So

Câu 46 [ID: 219583] _____ it was late, we decided to take a taxi home.

- A. Because B. Since
C. As D. All are correct

Câu 47 [ID: 219586] You shouldn't drive _____ drinking alcohol.

- A. if B. after C. even though D. in order that

Câu 48 [ID: 219588] _____ the dolphin lives in the sea, it is not a fish – it's a mammal.

- A. Whether B. So that C. Although D. After

Câu 49 [ID: 219595] He went to bed _____ he was sleepy.

- A. because B. so that C. because of D. although

Câu 50 [ID: 219597] She took a computer course _____ she could get a better job.

- A. so that B. as if C. if D. though

ĐÁP ÁN

1. B	2. B	3. D	4. B	5. B	6. B	7. B	8. A	9. C	10. A
11. C	12. D	13. B	14. C	15. A	16. D	17. C	18. B	19. C	20. D
21. A	22. C	23. A	24. C	25. A	26. B	27. D	28. B	29. D	30. A
31. A	32. A	33. A	34. B	35. B	36. A	37. D	38. B	39. B	40. C
41. C	42. B	43. B	44. C	45. C	46. D	47. B	48. C	49. A	50. A

LUYỆN TẬP 2 (ID: ET1168)

Câu 1 [ID: 219261] He ran _____ fast _____ I couldn't catch him.

- A. such/that B. very/that C. too/to D. so/that

Câu 2. [ID: 219264] _____ Jack has a master's degree, he works as a store clerk.

- A. Because of B. So that C. Where D. Though

Câu 3 [ID: 219265]. We took many pictures _____ the cloudy sky.

- A. despite of B. even though C. despite D. because

Câu 4 [ID: 219267]. She got the job _____ the fact that she had very little experience.

- A. although B. because of C. despite D. Because

Câu 5 [ID: 219271]. My sister's hand-writing is always so neat, _____ mine is a total mess.

- A. although B. nonetheless C. otherwise D. Whereas

Câu 6 [ID: 219272]. They like to keep their old houses rather than building the new ones _____ it is very hard and expensive to maintain them.

- A. because of B. even though
C. on the contrary D. for example

Câu 7 [ID: 219273]. Continued high-blood pressure is dangerous _____ it can increase the risk of heart disease and stroke.

- A. however B. so that C. as D. for instance

Câu 8 [ID: 219277] _____ vaccination has eliminated naturally occurring polio in North and South America, rare cases continue to occur in developing countries of Africa.

- A. However B. Although C. As a result of D. Hence

Câu 9 [ID: 219281] _____ how long you've been using tobacco, you can still overcome your addiction to smoking.

- A. Regarding B. Although C. No matter D. Even though

Câu 10 [ID: 219282] _____ they tried hard, the students could not complete the project in time as they were lacking in skills and knowledge.

- A. Although B. As C. Since D. Despite

Câu 11 [ID: 219283] _____ you fail, you will have the satisfaction of knowing that you tried.

- A. Whereas B. Unlike C. Provided D. Even if

Câu 12 [ID: 219285] _____ a person tries very hard to suppress the obsession, it continues to reoccur in an uncontrollable fashion.

- A. No matter B. Besides C. Even though D. Therefore

Câu 13 [ID: 219286] Smallpox was eventually declared eradicated in 1980, _____ a vigorous campaign of immunization by the World Health Organization.

- A. nevertheless B. thanks to C. now that D. in spite of

Câu 14 [ID: 219289] Telecare is a telephone support service in the US which provides contact with people who are alone and isolated _____ they are aged or have disabilities.

- A. in contrast to B. because C. on grounds of D. despite

Câu 15 [ID: 219291] Businesses are failing _____ a lack of trained workers and people to buy products.

- A. in addition B. because of C. in spite of D. Thus

Câu 16 [ID: 219296] While eating sweets, the brain instantly releases endorphins which make us feel happy and reduce pain; _____ many pediatricians give sweets to children while giving injections.

- A. that's why B. nonetheless C. as long as D. since

Câu 17 [ID: 219297] Employees need to continually expand their job skills _____ they can achieve their full personal potential.

- A. so that B. in case C. otherwise D. in addition to

Câu 18 [ID: 219308] A violation of the law, _____ how slight, is a crime and therefore punishable.

- A. even though B. no matter C. however D. thereby

Câu 19 [ID: 219309] Food producers claim that adding fiber to foods is difficult _____ it changes the qualities of the food.

- A. in order that B. whereas C. since D. nevertheless

Câu 20 [ID: 219310] Have you any idea _____?

- A. how fast does light go B. how soon light goes
C. how soon does light go D. how fast light goes

Câu 21 [ID: 21911] _____ surprised me most _____ to see some of the village people seating on the benches at the end of the room.

- A. What/was B. What/were C. That/were D. That/was

Câu 22 [ID: 219312] He asked me where _____.

- A. did I live B. I lived C. did I lived D. that I lived

Câu 23 [ID: 219313] I wonder _____ it is true or not.

- A. if B. whether C. that D. what

Câu 24 [ID: 219316] _____ he will attend the meeting is certain

- A. That B. What C. Which D. Whether

Câu 25 [ID: 219544] We moved to the front row _____ we could see and hear better

- A. so B. so that C. such that D. in order

Câu 26 [ID: 219546] _____ a headache, he enjoyed the film.

- A. Although B. In spite of C. Despite of D. However

Câu 27 [ID: 219547] _____ the exercises are very hard, they still do well.

- A. Because B. Even though C. Despite D. Because of

Câu 28 [ID: 219549] Our seats were _____ far from the stage that we couldn't see the actors and actresses clearly.

- A. very B. too C. so D. such

Câu 29 [ID: 219552] We couldn't go out because the weather was so bad

- A. It was so bad a weather that we couldn't go out.
B. It was such a bad weather that we couldn't go out.
C. It was so bad that we couldn't go out.
D. It was such bad weather that we couldn't go out.

Câu 30 [ID: 219553] It was so late that nothing could be done.

- A. It was too late for nothing to be done.
B. It was too late for anything to be done.
C. It was such late that nothing could be done.
D. It was so late that nothing to be done.

ĐÁP ÁN

1. D	2. D	3. C	4. C	5. D	6. B	7. C	8. B	9. C	10. A
11. D	12. C	13. B	14. B	15. B	16. A	17. A	18. B	19. C	20. D
21. A	22. B	23. B	24. A	25. B	26. B	27. B	28. C	29. D	30. B

C- THI ONLINE

Truy cập [ID: ET1169, ET1170, ET1171.](#)

BÀI 3: LIÊN TỪ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ LIÊN KẾT

A – LÝ THUYẾT (ID: EV1066)

Trong tiết học này, các em sẽ được học về định nghĩa liên từ, các loại liên từ trong tiếng Anh: liên từ kết hợp, liên từ tương hỗ, liên từ phụ thuộc, định nghĩa trạng từ liên kết, các loại trạng từ liên kết.

Đây là dạng bài quan trọng trong các đề thi tiếng Anh và cũng khá khó, chúng ta cùng tìm hiểu các em nhé!

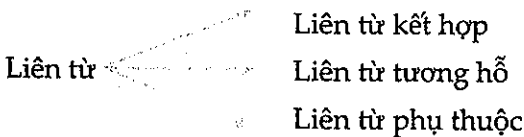
LIÊN TỪ

I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA

Liên từ là từ dùng để nối hai phần, hai mệnh đề ở trong câu lại với nhau.

Eg: This shop opens at 6 a.m and (it) closes at 7 p.m

II. PHÂN LOẠI LIÊN TỪ



1. Liên từ kết hợp

Dùng loại liên từ này để nối những các từ loại hoặc cụm từ/nhóm từ cùng một loại, hoặc những mệnh đề ngang hàng nhau (tính từ với tính từ, danh từ với danh từ ...)

Liên từ kết hợp gồm:

- but = yet:

Eg: He is intelligent *but* very lazy.

She says she does not love me, *yet* I still love her.

- and:

Eg: She is a good *and* loyal wife.

- or:

Eg: We have to work hard, *or* we will fail the exam.

- nor:

Eg: That is not what I meant to say, *nor* should you interpret my statement as an admission of guilt.

- for:

Eg: He will surely succeed, *for* he works hard.

- so:

Eg: I want to work as an interpreter in the future, *so* I am studying Russian at university.

2. Liên từ tương hỗ

- both ... and...

Eg: She is *both* beautiful *and* intelligent.

Both my brother *and* my friend like English.

- not only ... but also...

Eg: He did the exercise *not only* quickly *but also* correctly.

I like playing *not only* tennis *but also* football.

- either ... or ...

Eg: *Either* I *or* he is wrong.

I have *either* houses *or* cars.

- neither...nor....

Eg: He drinks *neither* wine *nor* beer.

Neither I *nor* he likes watching movies.

- whether ... or

Eg: I wonder *whether* he loves me *or* not.

3. Liên từ phụ thuộc

Loại liên từ phụ thuộc nối kết các nhóm từ, cụm từ hoặc mệnh đề có chức năng khác nhau - mệnh đề phụ với mệnh đề chính trong câu.

- after: sau khi

Eg: *After* the train left, we went home.

- before: trước khi

Eg: I tried to finish my homework *before* my father came home.

- as soon as: ngay khi

Eg: Write to me as soon as you can.

- as = when: khi

Eg: *When/As* you visit Berlin, send me a postcard.

- since: từ khi

Eg: I haven't seen him *since* he left his hometown to pursue his dream.

- as = since = because: bởi vì

Eg: *As/Since/Because* you couldn't see the film, we'll tell you something about it.

- until: cho đến khi

Eg: He didn't notice anything strange until he heard a noise from upstairs.

- while: trong khi
Eg: Don't talk while you eat.
- whereas: trong khi (trái ngược)
Eg: He learns hard whereas his friends don't.
- although/though/even though: mặc dù
Eg: *Although* it was after midnight, we did not feel tired.
- even if: kể cả khi
Eg: *Even if* you are confident in your ability, never ever underestimate your opponents.
- if/unless: nếu/nếu không
Eg: Her baby cannot fall asleep *unless* she stays in the room.
- as long as: miễn là
Eg: I will lend you my car *as long as* you promise to drive carefully.
- in case: phòng khi
Eg: *In case* it will rain, please take an umbrella when you go out.
- so that/in order that: để
Eg: We left early *so that* we wouldn't be caught in the traffic jam.

TRẠNG TỪ LIÊN KẾT

Trạng từ liên kết là những trạng từ dùng để nối những ý tưởng, những mệnh đề trong một đoạn văn.

1. Từ nối dùng để thêm thông tin

- In addition: Thêm vào đó
- Furthermore: Hơn nữa, thêm nữa
- Moreover: Hơn nữa
- Additionally: Thêm vào đó
- Also: Hơn nữa
- Again: Lại nữa
- Besides: Ngoài ra
- What's more: Hơn nữa

Lưu ý: Phân biệt "Besides" & "Beside":

- Besides: Ngoài ra
- Beside = next to = close to = by: bên cạnh
Eg: I really want to go to the party. *Besides*, it is close to/beside my house.

2. Từ nối chỉ nguyên nhân, kết quả

- As a result: Kết quả là
- As a consequence: Kết quả là

- Accordingly: Theo như
- Resultedly: Kết quả là
- Consequentl: Do đó
- Therefore: Do đó
- Hence/thus: Do đó

3. Từ nối chỉ sự đối lập

- However: tuy nhiên
- Nevertheless: tuy nhiên
- Nonetheless: tuy nhiên
- In contrast: Trái lại
- On the contrary: Trái lại
- Notwithstanding: tuy nhiên,
- Still/yet: ấy thế mà,
- On the other hand: mặt khác
- Otherwise: nếu không thì

Eg: My teacher helped me a lot. Otherwise, I wouldn't have passed the exam.

4. Từ nối mang nghĩa nhấn mạnh:

- In fact: thực ra
- In practice: thực tế là
- In theory: theo lý thuyết
- Indeed: thực sự là

Eg: He is a hard-working employee. Indeed, he works ten hours a day

5. Từ nối đưa ra kết luận

- After all: sau tất cả
- At last, finally: cuối cùng
- In brief: nói chung
- In conclusion: kết luận lại thì
- On the whole: nói chung
- To conclude: để kết luận
- To summarize: Tóm lại

❖ Một số ví dụ luyện tập: (chứa trong video)

1. Who wrote you this love letter? - I'm not sure. I think it was _____ Michael _____ Paul.
 A. both...and B. either...or C. neither...nor D. not...only

2. _____ Linda _____ Helen called to say sorry. I'm very sad and frustrated.
 A. Both...and
 B. Either...or
 C. Neither...nor
 D. Not only...but also
3. _____ Ryan _____ Susie have disappointed me. They didn't come to my birthday party.
 A. Both...and
 B. Either...or
 C. Neither...nor
 D. Not only...but also
4. I've just eaten dinner _____ I'm not hungry
 A. so
 B. and
 C. but
 D. or
5. _____ she was very tired, she helped her brother with his homework.
 A. Because
 B. Whether
 C. Although
 D. So
6. Tom has a computer, _____ he doesn't use it.
 A. or
 B. as
 C. because
 D. but
7. _____ they live near us, we can see them very often.
 A. So
 B. As
 C. Though
 D. Even
8. He is a very weak president; _____ most people support him.
 A. otherwise
 B. indeed
 C. nevertheless
 D. namely
9. You need to work harder. _____, you'll get fired.
 A. Otherwise
 B. Moreover
 C. In brief
 D. Nevertheless
10. John has very little money; _____, his brother Jacob is a millionaire.
 A. in contrast
 B. nonetheless
 C. similarly
 D. for example
11. It's late. You should go to bed now _____ you'll be tired tomorrow.
 A. or
 B. but
 C. and
 D. so
12. I won't be home for Christmas _____ I will be there for New Year's.
 A. or
 B. but
 C. and
 D. so
13. You should _____ disrespect _____ deceive your friends.
 A. both...and
 B. either...or
 C. neither...nor
 D. not only...but also
14. I will take you _____ to the cinema _____ to the theatre. That's a promise.
 A. both...and
 B. either...or
 C. neither...nor
 D. not only...but also
15. She is a very smart woman; _____, it is not at all surprising that she got the job.
 A. nevertheless
 B. similarly
 C. therefore
 D. in conclusion

16. We wanted to go to the beach; _____, it started to rain and we stayed at home.
 A. otherwise B. however C. namely D. as a result
17. He tried his best; _____, he couldn't pass the exam.
 A. still B. otherwise C. subsequently D. consequently
18. Lan woke up late _____ she didn't have time for breakfast
 A. so B. since C. as D. though
19. I like fish _____ I don't like catching them myself.
 A. or B. but C. so D. and
20. I totally disagree with his interpretation; _____, he's no authority on the subject.
 A. then B. besides C. nevertheless D. for instance

ĐÁP ÁN

1. B	2. C	3. A	4. A	5. C	6. D	7. B	8. C	9. A	10. A
11. A	12. B	13. C	14. A	15. C	16. B	17. A	18. A	19. B	20. B

Exercise 2. Choose a conjunctive adverb that best completes each sentences

1. Buying and living in a 200-year-old house would be interesting; _____, it would probably be very expensive to maintain.
2. You'll have to start taking better care of your body and stop smoking; _____, you'll die early.
3. Thao had a bad experience shopping at that store; _____, she decided never to shop there again.
4. Growing apples is an interesting hobby which provides me with a lot of pleasure; _____, I don't need to buy apples at the store.
5. Patricia and Karl lost interest in each other; _____, they both agreed to a divorce.
6. The jury found the man found guilty on all charges of murder; _____, he was sentenced to life in prison.
7. I would like to see the new exhibit; _____, there might not be enough time to do that.
8. My friend, Jeff, wants to ask Wanda out on a date; _____, he's too nervous.
9. Golf is a very fun sport; _____, it's very expensive.
10. You should buy these boots while they're on sale; _____, you'll have to pay full price next week.

ĐÁP ÁN

1. on the other hand
 2. otherwise
 3. consequently
 4. furthermore

5. consequently
6. therefore
7. however
8. however
9. on the other hand
10. otherwise

Để làm được tốt bài tập ở phần này, các em cần ghi nhớ các loại liên từ và trạng từ liên kết mà cô đã nêu ở trên. Khi làm bài tập, các em cần xác định xem chỗ cần điền là liên từ hay trạng từ liên kết, nó thuộc loại nào trong các loại cô đã dạy, từ đó, chọn từ phù hợp nhất.

B - LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1: (ID: ET1172)

Câu 1 [ID: 219262] I dropped my cell phone and it broke. _____, I need to either buy a new one or borrow yours.

- A. In spite of B. Likewise C. Furthermore D. Therefore

Câu 2 [ID: 219263] I can't help you with your homework because I am not very good at geometry. _____, I know someone who can.

- A. However B. For example C. In addition D. Subsequently

Câu 3 [ID: 219268] Jeremy is very active and enjoys exercising; _____, Chris sits on his couch all day playing video games.

- A. Similarly B. For example
C. In addition D. On the other hand

Câu 4 [ID: 219269] My sister is a very kind and generous person. _____, she helps me with my homework and drives me to basketball practice.

- A. However B. But C. Thanks to D. For example

Câu 5 [ID: 219270] Which of the following prepositional phrases CAN NOT be used in the following sentence?

Cathy is sick; _____, she came to school today.

- A. Nevertheless B. Still C. As a result D. Despite that

Câu 6 [ID: 219274] Mr Young is not only healthy _____ also cheerful.

- A. and B. both C. but D. with

Câu 7 [ID: 219275] The class discussion was short. _____, we gained some new knowledge from it.

- A. However B. Moreover C. Although D. Therefore

A. however B. therefore C. but D. despite

A. However B. Moreover C. Whenever D. Beside

A. and B. so that C. if D. or

A. however B. but C. although D. and

A. Therefore B. But C. However D. Although

A. so B. but C. however D. and

A. so B. but C. however D. because

A. so B. however C. but D. and

A. Therefore B. However C. But D. Because

A. Because B. therefore C. But D. however

A. in addition B. because C. Nonetheless D. Despite

A. Unless B. Instead C. Otherwise D. Therefore

A. In addition B. Moreover C. Furthermore D. All are correct

A. In addition B. Moreover C. Furthermore D. All are correct

A. Except for B. Such as C. Lest D. Unless

Câu 23 [ID: 220568] Johnny Pacheco has a creative talent as a composer; _____, he is a successful arranger.

- A. owing to B. now that C. though D. moreover

Câu 24 [ID: 220580] He should not have used office property. _____, he ought not to have been in the building at all outside office hours.

- A. In addition to B. Owing to C. So that D. Furthermore

Câu 25 [ID: 220590] _____ motor vehicles are the most preferable way of transport, they are also the major contributor to global warming.

- A. Whereas B. On the other hand C. On the contrary D. Whenever

Câu 26 [ID: 220596] During the war of 1812, the Royal Navy had more ships than the U.S. Navy; _____, they were able to maintain a tight blockade on American waters and transport British Army troops to American shores.

- A. nonetheless B. otherwise C. by contrast D. therefore

Câu 27 [ID: 220604] Several years ago, a tobacco company attempted to sell a cigarette that made no smoke; _____, people who tested that product did not like the way it tasted.

- A. however B. despite C. because D. on account of

Câu 28 [ID: 220611] Since the 1970s, psychoanalysis has become less popular; _____, some people still prefer this kind of treatment.

- A. however B. despite C. now that D. likewise

Câu 29 [ID: 220622] It must be kept in mind that there is no secret of success _____ hard work.

- A. though B. since C. no matter D. but

Câu 30 [ID: 220628] Since the 1970s, psychoanalysis has become less popular; _____, some people still prefer this kind of treatment.

- A. however B. despite C. now that D. likewise

Câu 31 [ID: 220643] Many countries that promised to give food to Ethiopia failed to do so _____ its involvement in a border war with Eritre.

- A. instead B. as a result of C. however D. due to the fact that

Câu 32 [ID: 220644] The government should be in the business of ensuring a decent quality of life for its citizens; _____, it should invest the social sector to enable the citizens to function at their optimal level.

- A. instead of B. in other words C. apart from D. but for

Câu 33 [ID: 220649] In some parts of the world the poor are going without food _____ the rich live in luxury.

- A. in case B. yet C. in order to D. despite

Câu 34 [ID: 220667] She was aware of the fact that she was not responsible for her parents' state of mind, _____ was she responsible for the state of their marriage.

- A. either B. nor C. and D. so

Câu 35 [ID: 220700] In March of 1999, more than 130 nations signed a United Nations Treaty banning land mines; _____, the United States, Russia and China did not sign.

- A. therefore B. instead C. thus D. however

Câu 36 [ID: 220701] He was an absolute failure in medical school, so he decided to try law _____.

- A. therefore B. instead C. nonetheless D. however

Câu 37 [ID: 220702] Margaret Mead once observed, "Never doubt that a small group of thoughtful, committed citizens can change the world. _____, it's the only thing that ever has."

- A. In fact B. Moreover C. Although D. Hence

Câu 38 [ID: 220679] It was difficult to deliver the letter _____ the sender had written the wrong address on the envelop.

- A. because B. despite C. though D. because of

Câu 39 [ID: 220680] _____ it rained heavily, we enjoyed our holiday.

- A. Because of B. Because C. Despite D. Though

Câu 40 [ID: 220688] I knew they were talking about me _____ they stopped when I entered the room.

- A. therefore B. despite C. so that D. because

Câu 41 [ID: 220696] Wine will spoil if exposed to light; _____, wine bottles are usually green or yellow.

- A. furthermore B. despite C. therefore D. instead

Câu 42 [ID: 220751] The meeting was _____ productive _____ ended as schedule.

- A. not only ... and yet B. both ... and
C. both ... as well as D. not only ... but also

Câu 43 [ID: 220659] _____ children get older, their questions get harder to answer.

- A. As B. Because of C. However D. In case

Câu 44 [ID: 220665] _____ teaching, my father has always been involved in public affairs.

- A. In addition B. Similarly C. No matter D. As well as

Câu 45 [ID: 308344] Bernie had seniority; _____, he was laid off.

- A. however B. therefore C. accordingly D. moreover

Câu 46 [ID: 308345] Studies seem to suggest that bright blue and bright yellow are the most visible and _____ the safest colors for vehicles.

- A. in addition B. consequently C. therefore D. however

Câu 47 [ID: 308346] Jen's tire was flat; _____, we called a tow truck.

- A. thus B. furthermore C. yet D. additionally

Câu 48 [ID: 308347] You really don't need new shoes; _____, you don't have any money.

- A. nevertheless B. as a result C. moreover D. likewise

Câu 49 [ID: 308349] He tried his best; _____, he couldn't pass the exam.

- A. still B. otherwise C. besides D. nevertheless

Câu 50 [ID: 308350] I don't like her face; _____, she smokes, which is something I hate.

- A. thus B. hence C. yet D. also

ĐÁP ÁN

1. D	2. A	3. D	4. D	5. C	6. C	7. A	8. A	9. B	10. D
11. B	12. C	13. C	14. A	15. C	16. B	17. B	18. C	19. C	20. D
21. D	22. A	23. D	24. D	25. A	26. D	27. A	28. A	29. D	30. A
31. B	32. B	33. B	34. B	35. D	36. B	37. A	38. A	39. D	40. D
41. C	42. D	43. A	44. D	45. A	46. C	47. A	48. C	49. B	50. D

LUYỆN TẬP 2 (ID: ET1173)

Câu 1 [ID: 220697] Alcohol can delay your reaction times; _____, you should never drink and drive.

- A. furthermore B. despite C. therefore D. instead

Câu 2 [ID: 220698] _____ we have talked about the dangers of smoking to the students before, I think the information bears being repeated.

- A. Moreover B. Although C. Hence D. Whereas

Câu 3 [ID: 220704] She studied all night to prepare; _____ the test.

- A. otherwise; she had failed B. otherwise, she would fail
C. otherwise, she will have failed D. otherwise, she would have failed

Câu 4 [ID: 219279] _____ she spoke slowly, I couldn't understand her.

- A. Since B. Although C. If D. As

Câu 5 [ID: 219300] Minh had a terrible headache. _____, he went to school.

- A. Therefore B. But C. However D. Although

Câu 6 [ID: 220712] There is no more food left. _____, there is plenty of drinks.

- A. In addition B. Although C. However D. Therefore

Câu 7 [ID: 220713] The Interact Club has done well to help the poor. _____ the Welfare Club has done well too.

- A. Nevertheless B. However C. Hence D. Similarly

Câu 8 [ID: 220714] No one expected _____ Felix _____ Ben to be selected. They must be extremely happy.

- A. neither ... nor B. both ... and C. both ... or D. not only ... and

Câu 23 [ID: 308342] I bought that car. It looked good and, _____, it was reasonably priced.

- A. moreover B. nevertheless C. however D. therefore

Câu 24 [ID: 308343] Lucie was a terrible employee; _____ she got promoted.

- A. in addition B. otherwise C. furthermore D. nevertheless

Câu 25 [ID: 308348] It was a hot day; _____, we closed all the windows and turned on the air conditioner and all the fans.

- A. therefore B. on the contrary C. for example D. also

Câu 26 [ID: 308351] He is great tennis player; _____, he couldn't beat Roger Federer.

- A. besides B. nevertheless C. also D. for example

Câu 27 [ID: 308352] I really don't know why he came; _____, I would tell you.

- A. otherwise B. in contrast C. therefore D. similarly

Câu 28 [ID: 308353] George makes a lot of money; _____, he's a very stingy person.

- A. besides B. nevertheless C. consequently D. moreover

Câu 29 [ID: 308354] Please be on time; _____ try to be early.

- A. however B. as soon as C. moreover D. accordingly

Câu 30 [ID: 308355] Our company expanded; _____ we hired new personnel.

- A. otherwise B. however C. therefore D. moreover

ĐÁP ÁN

1. C	2. B	3. D	4. B	5. C	6. C	7. D	8. B	9. C	10. A
11. A	12. D	13. A	14. B	15. A	16. C	17. B	18. A	19. B	20. C
21. B	22. C	23. A	24. D	25. A	26. B	27. A	28. B	29. C	30. C

C- THI ONLINE

Truy cập [ID: ET1174, ET1175, ET1176](#).

GÓC GIẢI TRÍ

Các em ơi, vậy là chúng ta đã gần đến đích rồi. Cô mong là các em không bỏ sót một phần kiến thức nào cả, vì mỗi kiến thức, dù là cơ bản hay nâng cao, là dễ hay khó, thì nó đều quan trọng đối với hành trang tri thức của mỗi chúng ta. Bởi chính những cái bé nhỏ đôi khi lại là thứ làm nên giá trị của những điều lớn lao. Đó cũng là ý nghĩa của câu chuyện mà cô sẽ kể cho các em hôm nay. Câu chuyện tuy ngắn nhưng lại chứa đựng một ý nghĩa vô cùng lớn lao. Chúng ta cùng suy ngẫm các em nhé !

COST OF THE BELL

Everyday, a shepherd used to take his cows for grazing. He had tied a bell to each of the cows he had so that he could know where they were grazing. The best cow had a costly bell tied around her neck.

One day, a stranger was going through the pasture. Seeing the costly bell around the cow's neck, he went to the shepherd and asked if he would sell the bell.

Out of greed, the shepherd sold the bell. But now he could not know where his best cow was grazing.

On getting an opportunity, the stranger stole the cow. Thus, the shepherd lost his best cow just because of his greed.

GIÁ CỦA CÁI CHUÔNG

Mỗi ngày, người chăn cừu dẫn bò của anh ta đi ăn cỏ. Anh gắn chuông cho mỗi con bò để biết được chúng đang ở đâu. Con bò tốt nhất được đeo một cái chuông đắt nhất quanh cổ.

Một ngày nọ, một người lạ đi qua đồng cỏ. Nhìn thấy cái chuông có giá trị trên cổ con bò, người đó đi đến chỗ người chăn cừu và đề nghị anh ta bán cái chuông.

Vì lòng tham, người chăn cừu đã bán cái chuông. Nhưng bây giờ anh ta lại không biết con bò của mình đang ở đâu.

Có được cơ hội, người lạ đã ăn cắp con bò. Vì vậy người chăn cừu đã mất con bò tốt nhất chỉ vì lòng tham của mình.

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 13: CHỨC NĂNG GIAO TIẾP

A – LÝ THUYẾT

Trong tiết học này, các em sẽ được học về các mẫu câu như câu yêu cầu, câu đề nghị, câu xin phép, lời mời, lời khuyên, lời gợi ý, lời cảnh báo, lời khen, lời xin lỗi, lời cảm ơn và một số mẫu câu khác và lời đáp cho từng mẫu câu đó.

Đây là dạng bài quan trọng trong các đề thi tiếng Anh, chúng ta cùng tìm hiểu các em nhé!

I. CÂU YÊU CẦU (ID: EV1067)

Cùng hình thức với nguyên mẫu

Eg: Hurry!

- Wait!
- Do hurry up!
- Don't talk!
- Eat your dinner, boys!!
- Be quiet, Tom.

Tobe + to V

Eg: You are to report for duty immediately.

Can/Could/Would/Will (not) you (please)

Eg: Can you stop talking to listen for a few minutes?

- Could/Would you (possibly) show me the way to the nearest supermarket?
- Couldn't you wait 5 minutes?
- You couldn't wait 5 minutes, could you?
- Will you shut the door for me?
- Shut the door, will you?

Would/Do you mind V-ing...?

Eg: Do you mind lending me a hand?

- Would you mind informing me the meeting time with the Dean, please?

Perhaps ...

Eg: Perhaps you would let me know when the train leaves.

Is it all right if you...?

Eg: Is it all right if you buy me some sugar?

Do you think you could...?

Eg: Do you think you could drive me home tonight?

I would/should be grateful if...

Eg: I should be grateful if you would let me know whether you have any vacancies at the moment.

I wish you could...

Eg: I wish you could drive me to the airport.

Do you think you could...?

Eg: Do you think you could allow me to go out for a few hours?

Would you be good/kind enough to...?

Eg: Would you be good enough to lend me some money?

Would you be so good/kind as to...?

Eg: Would you be so kind as to look after my house when I am away for a few days?

Đáp lại Câu yêu cầu

ĐỒNG Ý	TỪ CHỐI
• Certainly • Of course • Sure • Yes, that's fine • No problem • What can I do for you? • How can I help you? • By all means! • Yes, with pleasure	• I'm sorry, but ... • I'd like to, but ... • I'd really like to help you, but ... • I'd love to, but... • I'm afraid I can't. • I wish I could. • It's impossible for me to ... • Well, the problem is...

LƯU Ý: Do you mind/Would you mind V-ing?

Eg: Do you mind calling me when you arrive?

ĐỒNG Ý	TỪ CHỐI
• No, not at all. • No, that would be fine. • Of course not. • I'm glad to. • I'd be happy/glad to.	• Yes, I would. • I'd rather not. • I'd love to, but... • I'm sorry I can't (Giống với cách từ chối câu yêu cầu bình thường)

LƯU Ý

Chúng ta có thể trả lời yes/no cho lời yêu cầu. Nhưng thường không chỉ trả lời đơn giản yes/no rồi ngưng ở đó mà phải nói thêm, hoặc xin lỗi và giải thích lý do tại sao từ chối.

• Đồng ý:

Eg: Can you help me with the Cancer Society?

- Yes, I'm more than willing to contribute to the Cancer Society.

• Từ chối:

Eg: Is it all right if you lend me that book?

- I'm afraid I can't because I am about to read it.

II. CÂU ĐỀ NGHỊ

Eg: Let me help you!

What can I do for you?

May I help you?

Can I help you?

Do you need any help?

Would you like me to V?

Eg: Would you like me to clean your car?

Do you want me to V?

Eg: Do you want me to come?

❖ Đáp lại Câu đề nghị

ĐỒNG Ý	TỪ CHỐI
• Yes, thank you. • Thanks a lot. • That's very kind/nice of you. • That would be great. • Oh, would you really?	• Thanks but I can manage. • Thanks anyway, but I can do it. • Don't worry! I can do it. • No, thank you. • No, there's no need. But thanks all the same. (nên cảm ơn khi người khác đề nghị giúp đỡ mình)

III. CÂU XIN PHÉP

May/Can/Could I...?

Eg: May I go out?

• Could I have a day off next week?

Do you mind if I...?

Would you mind if I...?

Eg: Do you mind if I call you tonight?

• Would you mind if I called you tonight?

I wonder if/whether if I can/could...

Do you think I can/could...?

Is it all right if I...?

Eg: I am wondering if I could have tomorrow off?

Do you thing I could have tomorrow off?

Is it all right if I have tomorrow off?

Đáp lại Câu xin phép

ĐỒNG Ý	TỪ CHỐI
• Certainly • Of course • Sure • Yes, that's fine • No problem • Please do. • Please go ahead. • Help yourself. • Yes, by all means	• I'd rather you didn't. • I'd prefer you didn't. • No, I'm afraid you can't. • I'm sorry, but you can't. • I don't think you should. • Well, the problem is...

LƯU Ý: Do you mind if I ...?/ Would you mind if I...?

Eg: Do you mind if I hand in the assignment later?

Would you mind if I handed in the assignment later?

ĐỒNG Ý	TỪ CHỐI
• No, not at all. • No, of course not. • Please do. • Please go head. • Please go on.	• I'd rather you didn't. • I'd prefer you didn't. • No, I'm afraid you can't. • Well, the problem is.... • Sorry but... (Giống với cách từ chối câu xin phép bình thường)

IV. LỜI MỜI

Would you like...?

Eg: Would you like some tea?

Would you like to join us?

Would/Will/Could you ...?

Eg: Will you go out with me tonight?

Do you fancy/feel like V-ing...?

Eg: Do you fancy/feel like going to the cinema this weekend?

Đáp lại Lời mời

ĐỒNG Ý	TỪ CHỐI
• Yes, please • Yes, I'd love to, thanks • That's very kind of you, thanks. • That sounds lovely/interesting. • That's a good idea. • Why not?	• No, thanks for inviting. • I'd love to but... • Thanks but I'm afraid... • I'd better/rather not. • I'm sorry but ... • How about some other time? (nên cảm ơn khi được mời, dù mình từ chối, có thể thêm lí do hoặc giải thích)

V. LỜI KHUYÊN

Should/ought to/had better/need to

Eg: You should leave right now.

He ought not to neglect his study any longer.

You had better take off your wet shoes.

You need to read this book. It's marvellous.

If I were you...

Eg: If I were you, I wouldn't take this job.

I (would) advise to V

Eg: I would advise you to apply at one.

Why don't you...?

Eg: Why don't you take a holiday?

may/might as well to V

Eg: You might as well ask him for further information.

It's time for somebody to V

Eg: It's time for you to seek for another job.

It's (high/about) time S + past subjunctive

Eg: It's high time they learned to stand on their own foot.

Example 1:

A: "My math test is coming, but I'm not ready yet".

B: "If I were you, I would start reviewing it right away".

Example 2:

A: "I'm always broke at the end of the month".

B: "I think you should reconsider your spending".

VI. LỜI GỢI Ý

suggest/propose (that) S (should) V

Eg: I suggest you go home now.

I propose (that) you should send the report to me.

suggest/propose V-ing

Eg: I suggest (your) repaying the loan.

Let's...

Eg: Let's start!

Let's not start too early!

Shall we....?

Eg: Shall we do this way or that way?

Why don't we...?

Eg: Why don't we meet and discuss it?

How/What about N/V-ing...?

Eg: How about asking the boss for a pay rise?

What about a break?

We could...

Eg: We could travel abroad next month.

Have you thought of....?

Eg: Have you ever thought of giving him a tie?

Đáp lại lời gợi ý

ĐỒNG Ý	TỪ CHỐI
• It's a good idea. • Sounds great/good/interesting/fun. • There is no doubt about it.	• It's a good idea but... • I don't think it's a good idea. • I'd love to but I'm afraid... • What a pity!

Example 1:

A: "Why don't we eat at Pablo's? It's wonderful".

B: "Sounds great! Let's go at 5 o'clock".

Example 2:

A: "I'm so bored. Sitting around here makes me sick".

B: "How about watching some movies?"

VII. LỜI CẢNH BÁO

Câu mệnh lệnh

Eg: Be careful!

Watch out!

Don't run! The road is very wet and slippery.

You'd better (not) + V...

Eg: You'd better not swim too far away.

Otherwise/or

Eg: Work harder, otherwise you won't get the promotion.

You'd better (not) + V...

Eg: You'd better not swim too far away.

❖ **Đáp lại Lời cảnh báo**

OK! I will/won't

Don't worry. I will/won't

Example 1:

A: "Don't stay up late, or you'll be late tomorrow."

B: "Don't worry, I won't (stay up late)."

Example 2:

A: "You'd better submit the assignment on time."

B: "OK. I will". (submit the assignment on time)

Một số ví dụ luyện tập (chữa trong video)

1. "I have a terrible headache." " _____ "

A. Maybe I'm not going to the doctor's.

B. Not very well. Thanks.

C. Maybe you should take a rest.

D. Not bad. I'm not going to the doctor's.

2. "Do you want me to help you with those suitcases?" - " _____ "

A. Of course, not for me.

B. No, I can't help you now.

C. No, those aren't mine.

D. No, I can manage them myself.

3. "Maybe you can take a vacation next month."

" _____ "

A. Nothing special.

B. You're welcome.

C. It's very expensive.

D. I don't think so. I'm teaching all summer.

4. "Can I try your new camera?" " _____ "

A. I'm sorry I can't. Let's go now.

B. Sure. I'd love to.

C. Sure. But please be careful with it.

D. I'm sorry. I'm home late.

5. " _____ " " No, thank you. That'll be all."
- A. What would you like?
 - B. It's very kind of you to help me.
 - C. Would you like anything else?
 - D. What kind of food do you like?
6. "Let me drive you home." " _____ "
- A. No problem.
 - B. Don't worry. I'm all right.
 - C. I usually drive home at five.
 - D. It's me.
7. "May you leave a message for Ms Davis?" " _____ "
- A. I'm afraid she's not here at the moment.
 - B. No, she's not here now.
 - C. She's leaving a message to you now.
 - D. Yes, I'll make sure she gets it.
8. "May I speak to the manager?" " _____ "
- A. He always comes late. He is not very well.
 - B. Thank you. Good bye.
 - C. I'm afraid he is not in. Can I take a message?
 - D. I'm afraid not. He works very hard.
9. "Why don't you turn the air conditioner on?" " _____ "
- A. I think it is bad condition.
 - B. I can't see anything.
 - C. It's a little hot in here.
 - D. It's a good idea.
10. "There is a baseball game tonight." " _____ "
- A. Great. Let's go.
 - B. I'm not a real fan of hers.
 - C. Don't mention it.
 - D. Thanks. I'd love to.
11. Lora : "Do you mind if I turn on the fan?"
Maria: " _____ ."
- A. Not for me
 - B. Not at all
 - C. Never mind
 - D. Not enough

12. Tom: "Can I have another cup of tea?"

Christy: "_____"

- A. Be yourself.
- B. Do it yourself.
- C. Help yourself.
- D. Allow yourself.

13. Ann: "Do you need any help?" - Kate: "_____".

- A. No, thanks, I can manage.
- B. I haven't got a clue.
- C. That's all for now.
- D. That's fine by me.

14. John: "Do you think that we should use public transportation to protect our environment?"

Laura: "_____"

- A. Of course not, you bet!
- B. Well, that's very surprising
- C. There is no doubt about it
- D. Yes, it's an absorb idea.

15. "Don't fail to send your parents my regards" - "_____"

- A. You are welcome.
- B. Good idea, thanks.
- C. Thanks, I'll.
- D. It's my pleasure.

16. "Would you like to join our volunteer group this summer?" - "_____"

- A. Do you think I would?
- B. I wouldn't thank you.
- C. Yes, you are a good friend.
- D. Yes, I'd love to, thanks.

17. Janet: "Do you feel like going to the cinema this evening?" - Susan: "_____"

- A. I don't agree, I am afraid.
- B. You're welcome.
- C. That would be great.
- D. I feel very bored

18. "Would you mind lending me your bike?" - "_____"

- A. Yes, here it is!
- B. Not at all.
- C. Great!
- D. Yes, let's.

19. Sue: "Can you help me with my essay?" - Robert: "_____"

- A. I think that, too.
- B. Yes, I'm afraid not.
- C. Not completely.
- D. Why not?

20. Mr Black: "I'd like to try on these shoes, please"

Salesgirl: "_____"

- A. Why not?
- B. By all means, sir.
- C. That's right, sir.
- D. I'd love to.

ĐÁP ÁN

1. C	2. D	3. C	4. C	5. C	6. B	7. D	8. C	9. D	10. A
11. B	12. C	13. A	14. C	15. C	16. D	17. C	18. B	19. D	20. B

VIII. LỜI CẢM ƠN

Lời cảm ơn	Đáp lại lời cảm ơn
• Thank you. • Thank you very much. • Thanks. • Thanks a lot. • Thanks anyway. • Many thanks. • Thanks for • It's very kind of you. • I'm really grateful to you. • I really/highly appreciate it.	• You're welcome • No problem • No worries • It's OK • Not at all • Never mind • Don't mention it • (It's) my pleasure • I'm glad you like it • Any time

Chú ý:

Đôi khi ta có thể thêm một ít thông tin trong lời cảm ơn, đặc biệt khi cảm ơn lời khuyên, lời động viên hoặc lời khen ngợi.

Example 1:

A: "What a beautiful dress you're wearing!"

B: "Thanks. I made it myself."

Example 2:

A: "It was very kind of you to help me."

B: "It's my pleasure."

IX. LỜI XIN LỖI

Lời xin lỗi	Đáp lại lời xin lỗi
• I'm sorry (for...) • I'm so/very/terrible/extremely sorry • I apologize for... • I hope you'll forgive my... • Please accept my apologies for...	• That's alright • Never mind • Don't worry about it • Don't apologize • It doesn't matter • It's OK • Forget about it • No harm done • It's not your fault • Please don't blame yourself

Chú ý:

Thông thường, người xin lỗi sẽ đưa ra lí do phạm lỗi, nhận trách nhiệm về mình, hoặc hứa một điều gì đó.

Example:

- Oh, I'm sorry. I didn't see you. (lí do làm sai)
- I'm so sorry. It's all my fault. (nhận trách nhiệm)
- I'm sorry. I'll be more careful next time. (lời hứa)

Người nói cũng có thể đưa ra lí do mình tha lỗi cho người khác.

Example 1:

A: "I apologize for the noise last night."

B: "Don't worry about it. I slept very well all night."

Example 2:

A: "I'm very sorry. I just forgot to bring your book."

B: "It's alright. I don't need it today, anyway."

X. LỜI KHEN

Lời khen dưới dạng câu khẳng định/câu cảm thán:

Eg: Your house is so beautiful.

I really love/like your house.

Isn't your house beautiful!

You look very good in that dress!

This soup is so delicious. My compliments to you!

- What (a/an) Adj + Noun!

Eg: What a nice house!

- How + Adj/Adv + S + V!

Eg: How gorgeous your house is!

Lời khen	Đáp lại lời khen
• Well done! • Good job! • I'm proud of you! • You deserve it! • Good for you!	• Thank you. • Thank you very much. • How nice of you to say so. • It's nice of you to say so. • I'm glad you like it. • Yeah, it's my favourite, too. • It was nothing really

Example 1:

A: "You look gorgeous in that dress!"

B: "Really? It's my favourite, too."

Example 2:

A: "Your performance was wonderful!"

B: "Thanks! I'm glad you liked it."

XI. LỜI CHÚC MỪNG

Để chúc mừng ta có thể dùng những câu hoặc cấu trúc sau:

Congratulations!

Congratulations on...!

Cách trả lời tốt nhất cho một lời chúc mừng là cảm ơn và đưa ra thêm một ít thông tin nếu cần thiết.

A: "Congratulations, Molly!"

B: "Thanks a lot. I'm glad you're here."

XII. LỜI ĐỘNG VIÊN

Khi cần động viên một người sắp thực hiện một việc gì đó ta có thể dùng:

- | | |
|------------------|----------------------------------|
| • Good luck! | I believe you can do/make it! |
| • Break a leg! | Don't worry. Just try your best! |
| • You can do it! | Be confident! |

Example:

A: "I have an interview tomorrow."

B: "Good luck!"

Để động viên người đang gặp khó khăn, buồn phiền:

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| • Don't worry. | • Take it easy. |
| • That's ok. | • Take it easy. |

Example:

A: "My French is hopeless."

B: "Don't worry. It's not that bad."

Cách trả lời tốt nhất cho một lời động viên là cảm ơn và đưa thêm một ít thông tin nếu cần thiết.

Example:

A: "Don't worry. Everything will be fine."

B: "Thank you. I really hope so."

XIII. SỰ ĐỒNG Ý

Khi thể hiện sự đồng tình, ta có thể dùng:

- I agree with you.
- You can say that again.
- I'm with you.
- You're (exactly) right.
- That's right/good.
- Good/Great idea.
- You bet! (= Yes)
- I couldn't agree more.
- I totally agree with you.
- There's no doubt about it.
- Me too/I do, too/So do I.
- Me neither/Neither do I/I don't either

XIV. SỰ KHÔNG ĐỒNG Ý

Khi thể hiện sự không đồng tình, ta có thể dùng:

- I don't agree with you.
- I disagree with you.
- I'm afraid (that) I can't agree with you.
- I don't think you're right.
- I don't think so.
- I think you're wrong.
- Are you kidding me?

Example 1:

A: "I believe he is a spy."

B: "Me too/I do, too."

Example 2:

A: "I think you should meet her to say goodbye."

B: "I'm afraid I don't agree with you. She doesn't want to see me."

XV. CÁC MẪU CÂU KHÁC

1. Bày tỏ ý kiến

Để hỏi ý kiến một người nào đó ta có thể dùng một trong những cấu trúc sau:

- What do you think (about it)?
- What's your opinion (about that)?
- How do you feel (about that)?
- Do you have any ideas (about that)?
- Do you think that ...?

Eg:

How do you feel about a trip to Hawaii?

Để đưa ra ý kiến ta có thể dùng các câu hoặc cấu trúc sau:

- I (don't) think/believe/feel that...
- In my opinion/In my judgement ...
- If you ask me ...
- Of course./Of course not.
- There's no doubt about it./No doubt about it.
- Yes, it's a very good idea.
- No, that's ridiculous.
- No, it won't work.

Câu hỏi	Đáp lại
Hỏi đường: • Could you show me the way to...? • Could you tell me how to get to...? • Could you tell me where is ...?	• It's over there. • Turn left/right. • Cross the street. • Go straight ahead.
Hỏi giờ: • What time is it? • What is the time? • Do you have the time?	• It's three o'clock. • It's ten to nine. • It's a quarter past two.
Hỏi phương tiện: • How do you get here?	• By bus. • In my car. • On foot.

Câu hỏi	Đáp lại
Hỏi dự định: • What are you going to do this weekend? • Have you had any plan for this weekend?	• I'm going to ... • I'm about to... • I think I will...
Hỏi ngoại hình: • What does she look like?	• She has a round face. • She is tall and thin.
Hỏi tính cách: • What kind of person is he? • What is his personality? • What is he like?	• I think he's easygoing and humorous. • He is a worst person I've ever met. • He's skimpy, rude and violent.

Example 1:

A: "What was the last present that you received?"

B: "A fashion hat."

Example 2:

A: "Do you smoke?"

B: "Yes, about ten cigarettes a day."

Example 3:

A: "How have you been recently?"

B: "Pretty busy, I think."

Một số ví dụ luyện tập (chứa trong video)

1. "Thank you for taking the time to come here in person." " _____ "

A. It's my pleasure.

B. I don't know what time that person comes.

C. I'd love to come. What time?

D. Do you have time for some gossip?

2. "I have a terrible headache." " _____ "

A. Maybe I'm not going to the doctor's.

B. Not very well. Thanks.

C. Maybe you should take a rest.

D. Not bad. I'm not going to the doctor's.

3. A: "What does it cost to get to Manchester?"

B: "_____"

- A. It's interesting to travel to Manchester.
- B. It depends on how to go.
- C. I always go by train.
- D. I don't like to go by train.

4. "_____ " "Yes. Do you have any shirts?"

- A. Could you do me a favour?
- B. Oh, dear. What a nice shirt!
- C. May I help you?
- D. White, please!

5. "What's the best place to eat lunch?" "_____ "

- A. I'll have a soup, please.
- B. There's a great restaurant at the corner of the street.
- C. I usually eat lunch at twelve.
- D. Twelve would be convenient.

6. "What do you think of your new DVD player?" "_____ "

- A. I love it.
- B. My brother gave it to me.
- C. It was a gift from my brother.
- D. I always put it there.

7. "You are so patient with us." "_____ "

- A. Thanks, that's nice of you to say so.
- B. Thanks. Have a nice trip.
- C. I'm fine, thanks.
- D. I know. I have trouble controlling my temper.

8. "_____ " "No, nothing special."

- A. Did you watch the live show last weekend?
- B. Did you do anything special last weekend?
- C. Did you have a great time last weekend?
- D. Did you go anywhere last weekend?

9. "Your boss looks like the aggressive type." "_____ "

- A. Yes, he really wants to get ahead.
- B. Yes, he's quite gentle.
- C. Really? I've never seen him lie.
- D. Right. He 's so quiet.

10. "How can this dress be so expensive?" " _____ "

- A. Yes, it's the most expensive.
- B. What an expensive dress!
- C. You are paying for the brand.
- D. That's a good idea.

11. A: Thank you. I couldn't have finished my presentation without your help.

B: _____.

- A. Forget about it. I didn't mean so.
- B. I highly appreciate what you did.
- C. It doesn't matter anyway.
- D. Never mind.

12. A: I'm sorry. I was stuck in a traffic jam.

B: _____.

- A. It's ok. We've just started.
- B. Never mind. Thanks.
- C. Don't apologize. It's all my fault.
- D. My pleasure.

13. A: Don't worry. I'll wake you up tomorrow.

B: _____.

- A. It's alright. I'll wake you up tomorrow.
- B. Thanks anyway.
- C. Thanks. It's very kind of you.
- D. Thanks for your suggestion.

14. A: Do you think surfing is a dangerous sport?

B: _____.

- A. No. I don't think so.
- B. Yes, it's very ridiculous.
- C. In my opinion, I think it's not very dangerous.
- D. That's a good idea.

15. A: She's accepted my proposal.

B: _____.

- A. Wow! Congratulations.
- B. Thanks, but don't worry.
- C. What a nice girl!
- D. My pleasure.

ĐÁP ÁN

1. A	2. C	3. B	4. C	5. B	6. A	7. A	8. B
9. A	10. C	11. D	12. A	13. C	14. A	15. A	

Để làm tốt bài tập ở phần này, các em cần xác định được câu đó là loại câu nào trong số các mẫu câu cô đã nêu trong bài, và chọn được lời đáp phù hợp. Thông thường, các em cần phải hiểu được nghĩa của câu.

B - LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1: (ID: ET1177)

Câu 1 [ID: 318207]

A: "Would you like a coke?"

B: "_____."

- A. I like coke. Thanks
- B. It's ok. I'm proud of you.
- C. Yes, please. But just a small one.
- D. No, I wouldn't.

Câu 2 [ID: 318208]

A: "How about coming to my English class tonight?"

B: "_____."

- A. Sounds like fun! What time?
- B. English is my favourite subject.
- C. Don't worry. Thanks.
- D. Thanks. But what's the problem?

Câu 3 [ID: 318209]

A: "Can I ask you something?"

B: "_____."

- A. No. Just go ahead.
- B. Alright. Go ahead.
- C. Yes, please.
- D. No, please.

Câu 4 [ID: 318210]

A: "Do you mind if I stay here for a night?"

B: "_____."

- A. Yes. Just stay here as long as you like.
- B. Of course not. Let me make the bed for you.
- C. Yes. I don't want to sleep alone.
- D. Sure. Make yourself at home

Câu 5 [ID: 318211]

A: "My speaking skill is getting worse."

B: "_____, I would speak English in class more regularly."

- A. Don't ask me
- B. If I were you
- C. No problem
- D. Forgive me

Câu 6 [ID: 318212]

A: "Hey, Hurry up, _____ miss the train."

B: "Ok."

- A. or you'll
- B. you'd better
- C. you should
- D. or you ought to

Câu 7 [ID: 318213]

A: "Would you mind if I brought these pens away? "

B: "_____ "

- A. No. I'm using them
- B. Yes, please.
- C. No. Go ahead
- D. Yes. You can take as many as you want.

Câu 8 [ID: 318214]

A: "_____ make a phone call here?"

B: "Sure. Go ahead".

- A. Is it Ok if I
- B. Will I
- C. Would you mind if I
- D. Would I

Câu 9 [ID: 318215]

A: "Would it be ok if I went with you?"

B: "_____ "

- A. Yes, I guess so.
- B. No, I'll pick you up at 6.
- C. Yes, please don't.
- D. No, I wouldn't.

Câu 10 [ID: 318216]

A: "Why don't we have a holiday this weekend?"

B: "_____."

A. What time?

B. Yes, great idea. I am very busy this weekend.

C. Thanks!

D. Sorry. I broke the vase.

Câu 11 [ID: 318217]

A: "Would you like me to send this package for you?"

B: "_____."

A. That would be nice. Any problems?

B. Yes, please. If you don't mind.

C. I'm sorry, here you are.

D. No, thanks. I'm really busy.

Câu 12 [ID: 318218]

A: "Why don't you send her an apology email?"

B: "_____."

A. No, I don't.

B. Yeah. I think it's the best way. Thanks.

C. Yes, I do.

D. I don't think she will send me an email.

Câu 13 [ID: 318219]

A: "Is it alright if I call you tonight?"

B: "_____."

A. No. Just go ahead

B. Sure, but I'm not at home tonight.

C. Ok. I'll meet you tomorrow.

D. Please don't. I'll call you back tomorrow.

Câu 14 [ID: 318220]

A: "I need some information about robots for my presentation".

B: "_____ search for the web?"

A. Why don't you

B. How about

C. Will you

D. Why do you

Câu 15 [ID: 318221]

A: "The book the teacher has assigned us to read is so boring."

B: "Yeah, but _____ finish it soon."

- A. we'd better
- B. it's ok to
- C. we shouldn't
- D. otherwise we

Câu 16 [ID: 318222]

A: "_____ brought a friend of mine to the party?"

B: "Of course not."

- A. Do you mind if I
- B. Is it ok if I
- C. Would you mind if I
- D. Is it alright if I

Câu 17 [ID: 318223]

A: "Can I go to the party tonight, Mom?"

B: "_____"

- A. No, I don't mind at all.
- B. No. But remember to get home early.
- C. Sure. But I'm afraid it's not possible
- D. I'm afraid that's not a good idea

Câu 18 [ID: 318224]

A: "I wonder if you would like to come to my house for dinner next Saturday."

B: "_____"

- A. Sure, But I'd rather not.
- B. Yes, please.
- C. Thanks. You're very nice.
- D. I'd love to, but I have another appointment.

Câu 19 [ID: 318225]

A: "May I share the book with you? I forgot mine at home."

B: "_____"

- A. Sure. You can come to sit next to me.
- B. No. Go ahead. Come over here.
- C. I'd rather not. You need to sit next to me.
- D. I'm sorry, but you need to sit next to me.

Câu 20 [ID: 318226]

A: "Do you want some chicken?"

B: "_____"

- A. I don't like chicken. They're very noisy.
- B. That's ok. I can do it myself.
- C. No, thanks. I've just had a hamburger.
- D. Yes, please. Here you are.

Câu 21 [ID: 318227]

A: "Let me wash the vegetable while you're preparing the meat."

B: "_____"

- A. Good idea. I'll do it for you.
- B. No problem.
- C. Yes, please. But I can manage.
- D. Ok. Thank you very much.

Câu 22 [ID: 318228]

A: "Remember not to eat fat. It's not good for your health."

B: "_____"

- A. Alright. I won't. Thanks, doctor.
- B. It's ok. I will.
- C. Thanks for your suggestion.
- D. I'm sorry. I have eaten so much fat.

Câu 23 [ID: 318229]

A: "Do you mind if I watch TV late tonight?"

B: "_____"

- A. I'd rather not. I have to get up early tomorrow
- B. Please don't. I need to sleep early tonight.
- C. Yes. You can watch it as long as you want.
- D. Yes. I also want to watch the football match tonight.

Câu 24 [ID: 318230]

A: "Would you please tell her that I'm waiting for her call?"

B: "_____"

- A. Sure. I'll tell her to call you.
- B. Ok. Can you call her back?
- C. No problem. What time do you call her?
- D. Yes, I would call you about her.

Câu 25 [ID: 318231]

A: "Can you give me a hand on this?"

B: "_____"

- A. I have only two hands.
- B. No. My hands are busy now.
- C. Uh, sorry, but I'm busy at the moment.
- D. No, I can't. I'm not very busy.

Câu 26 [ID: 318232]

A: "I want to learn photography."

B: "So, _____ have at least a semi-professional camera."

- A. it's ok to
- B. otherwise
- C. I would
- D. you ought to

Câu 27 [ID: 318233]

A: "I can't get the tickets for the show tonight."

B: "That's ok. _____ watch it live on TV."

- A. We'd better
- B. Let's
- C. It's good to
- D. I don't want to

Câu 28 [ID: 318234]

A: "_____ preparing a presentation about endangered animals?"

B: "Sounds great."

- A. Why are we
- B. How about
- C. Why don't we
- D. Why don't you

Câu 29 [ID: 318235]

A: "Will you do me a favor?"

B: "_____"

- A. What's a favor? I don't have any.
- B. Sure. What can I do for you?
- C. No, thanks anyway. I have enough favor.
- D. Ok, but I'm busy now.

Câu 30 [ID: 318236]

A: "Let me make you something to drink."

B: "_____"

A. No. That's very kind of you. No. That's very kind of you.

B. Please. I'm really thirsty.

C. Thanks, but I don't think I can.

D. Sorry, but I rather not.

Câu 31 [ID: 318237]

A: "It's my mom's birthday next Wednesday, but I don't know what to give her."

B: "_____ making her a cake? It's really meaningful."

A. Will you

B. Have you ever thought of

C. Why don't you

D. Would you

Câu 32 [ID: 318238]

A: "Would you mind searching for this information for me?"

B: "_____"

A. Well. I'd really like to help you. But I need to finish my assignment.

B. Yes. I'll do it myself.

C. Good idea. What information do you need?

D. Yes. I just put it there.

Câu 33 [ID: 318240]

A: "Can you go to buy some potatoes and carrots? We've run out of them."

B: "_____"

A. Sure. Where and when?

B. Ok. I'll be right back.

C. No, thanks. I don't like vegetable.

D. Sounds good. I'm a vegetarian.

Câu 34 [ID: 318241]

A: "You need to do more exercises, or you won't pass the exam."

B: "_____"

A. Don't worry. I won't.

B. If I were in your shoes, I would.

C. Ok. I will.

D. I would. Don't worry.

Câu 35 [ID: 318242]

A: "_____ hold a football match to raise money."

B: "Yeah, that's a good idea."

- A. What about
- B. Would we
- C. Will we
- D. Why don't we

Câu 36 [ID: 318243]

A: "Do you want me to lay the table now?"

B: "_____"

- A. Sure. But I can do it myself.
- B. That's ok. I can manage
- C. No. The table is a mess
- D. Thank you. You deserve it.

Câu 37 [ID: 318244]

A: "Yoga is really an interesting activity to do."

B: "Right, but _____ consult an expert before you do it."

- A. it's ok to
- B. it's a good idea to
- C. let's
- D. you should

Câu 38 [ID: 318245]

A: "_____ work on marine animals first."

B: "I don't think that's a good idea."

- A. I suggest we
- B. How about
- C. You would
- D. We would

Câu 39 [ID: 318246]

A: "Can I help you?"

B: "_____"

- A. Yes, please. What can I do for you?
- B. Sounds good. I'm looking for a pair of shoes for my daughter
- C. No, thanks. I just look around.
- D. I'd rather not. Thanks anyway.

Câu 40 [ID: 318247]

_____. There is a car coming.

- A. If you ask me!
- B. If I were you!
- C. You'd better not.
- D. Watch out!

Câu 41 [ID: 318248]

A: "I am feeling so bad. Maybe I have had a cold."

B: "_____."

- A. If I were you, I would go to visit my doctor.
- B. You shouldn't have a cold.
- C. You can go out.
- D. Don't worry. It's all right.

Câu 42 [ID: 318249]

A: "Is it ok if I stay here?"

B: "_____."

- A. As long as you want to.
- B. As long as you go away now.
- C. You are supposed to be here.
- D. Neither you nor he can.

Câu 43 [ID: 318250]

A: "Don't be afraid. Everything will be alright!"

B: "_____."

- A. Sorry I can't.
- B. If I were you, I would not be there.
- C. Please call me John.
- D. Thank you! Hope it would be.

Câu 44 [ID: 318251]

A: "_____."

B: "No, that would be fine".

- A. Are you closing the window?
- B. Could you close the window?
- C. Would you mind if I closed the window?
- D. Would you close the window?

Câu 45 [ID: 318252]

A: "Could I possibly come a bit late?"

B: "_____."

- A. Yes, you could.
- B. Yes, you should.
- C. No, of course, I won't.
- D. Yes, you must.

Câu 46 [ID: 318253]

A: "Let me help you!"

B: "_____."

- A. No, there is no need. But thanks all the same.
- B. Sounds good. Go ahead.
- C. Could you please do me a favor?
- D. Thank you. You deserve it.

Câu 47 [ID: 318254]

A: "I am wondering if I could turn up a little bit late?"

B: "_____."

- A. Yes, that's fine.
- B. No, you can.
- C. Sure, but remember to arrive on time.
- D. Great!

Câu 48 [ID: 318255]

A: "I am too tired to do anything."

B: "_____."

- A. It's time for you to take a rest.
- B. You can do it later.
- C. You have to be responsible
- D. No way! You have done it already?

Câu 49 [ID: 318256]

A: "How about a break?"

B: "_____."

- A. Yeah! It's lunch time.
- B. Sorry! Could you say that again?
- C. Break what?
- D. You shouldn't have broken the vase.

Câu 50 [ID: 318257]

A: "Work hard! Otherwise, you may fail the exam."

B: "_____."

- A. Ok, I will.
- B. I think you have to.
- C. I can't fail the exam.
- D. I see, don't worry, I won't.

ĐÁP ÁN

1. C	2. A	3. B	4. B	5. B	6. A	7. C	8. A	9. A	10. A
11. B	12. B	13. D	14. A	15. A	16. C	17. D	18. D	19. A	20. C
21. D	22. A	23. A	24. A	25. C	26. D	27. B	28. B	29. B	30. B
31. B	32. A	33. B	34. C	35. D	36. B	37. D	38. A	39. C	40. D
41. A	42. A	43. D	44. C	45. A	46. A	47. A	48. A	49. A	50. A

LUYỆN TẬP 2 (ID: ET1178)

Câu 1 [ID: 318972]

Lam: "Bye!" - Lan "_____."

- A. See you lately.
- B. See you later.
- C. Thank you.
- D. Meet you again.

Câu 2 [ID: 318982]

Hung: "Would you like to have dinner with me?" - Lam: "_____."

- A. Yes, I'd love to.
- B. I'm very happy.
- C. Yes, it is.
- D. Yes, it is.

Câu 3 [ID: 318986]

A: "_____." - B: "Certainly."

- A. Welcome back!
- B. What are you doing there?
- C. I'm sorry I am late.
- D. May I borrow a pencil, please?

Câu 4 [ID: 318989]

A: "Would you like some more tea?" - B: "_____."

- A. Yes, please.
- B. Here you are.

C. It doesn't matter.

D. I'm OK.

Câu 5 [ID: 318992]

A: "Let's meet for a coffee tonight." – B: "_____"

A. I hope not.

B. I'm afraid I can.

C. Yes, let's.

D. Yes, thank you.

Câu 6 [ID: 318996]

A: "_____?" – B: "Yes. I want to send some flowers to my wife in Italy".

A. Do you like flowers

B. What do you like

C. Can you help me

D. Can I help you

Câu 7 [ID: 319001]

A: "_____?" – B: "Yes, I'd like some information about trains, please."

A. Can I help you?

B. May I help you?

C. What can I do for you?

D. All are correct

Câu 8 [ID: 319004]

A: "How about a biscuit?" – B: "_____ I'm on a diet."

A. Yes, please.

B. Yes, thank you.

C. No, thanks.

D. It's OK.

Câu 9 [ID: 319005]

"I need some ice. Can you get some from the fridge for me?" – "_____"

A. No, thanks.

B. Yes, please.

C. Certainly.

D. Yes, thank you.

Câu 10 [ID: 319007]

"The room is too hot. _____ if I turn the fan on?" – "No"

A. Do you mind

B. Would you like

C. Do you like

D. Could you please

Câu 11 [ID: 319010]

A: "May I borrow your pen for a minute, please?" – B "_____"

A. Yes, certainly.

B. Yes, thank you.

C. No, thanks.

D. No, of course.

Câu 12 [ID: 319013]

Customer: "Waiter! I'd like the menu, please." – "_____"

A. But I don't like.

B. Here are you, sir.

C. Here you are sir.

D. Yes, thank you.

Câu 13 [ID: 319015]

"Can I carry the bag for you? It seems very heavy" – "_____. I can manage."

A. No, thanks.

B. Yes, please.

C. Sorry.

D. You are welcome.

Câu 14 [ID: 319017]

"Why don't you ask Helen for help? I think he is always ready." – "_____."

A. Yes, please.

B. I hope so.

C. I hope not.

D. That is a good idea.

Câu 15 [ID: 319018]

"How about having a drive to the countryside this weekend?" – "_____"

A. Not at all.

B. You are welcome.

C. No, thanks.

D. That's a good idea.

Câu 16 [ID: 319019]

Anne: "Make yourself at home." – John: "_____"

A. Yes, Can I help you?

B. Not at all. Don't mention it.

C. Thanks! Same to you.

D. That's very kind. Thank you.

Câu 17 [ID: 319022]

Janet: "Do you feel like going to the cinema this evening?" – Susan: "_____"

A. I don't agree, I'm afraid.

B. You are welcome.

C. That would be great.

D. I feel very boring.

Câu 18 [ID: 319024]

A: "I'd like you to pick up some oil on the way home, if you have time."

B: "_____."

A. I can't do that because I won't be back until 11:00.

B. Yes, certainly!

C. No way! It's too late if I go out now.

D. Please don't. I can't think of anything else.

Câu 19 [ID: 319028]

A: "Go out tonight?" B: "_____."

A. I think I should.

B. Sorry. I'm already tied up

C. Perhaps we should go home now

D. Do you think we can?

Câu 20 [ID: 319030]

"Don't fail to look after yourself, Mary!" - "_____".

A. Of course, you are an adult.

B. Oh, I knew about that.

C. Thanks, me too.

D. Thanks, I will.

Câu 21 [ID: 319032]

"Could you save my place for me, please? Nature's calling." - "_____".

A. No problem. But the line is moving fast.

B. Sure. But hurry. The line is moving fast.

C. Yes, please. But in a minute or so.

D. Yes, I can. I'm in a hurry.

Câu 22 [ID: 319034]

A: "Hi, do you think it's possible for us to have a talk sometime today?" B: "I'd love to but _____".

- A. I've got a pretty tight schedule today.
- B. I'm fine now.
- C. Is tomorrow OK.
- D. I'm pretty tight schedule today.

Câu 23 [ID: 319036]

"What would you do in my situation?" " _____ "

- A. Let's ask for a loan from the bank.
- B. I think you should ask for a loan from the bank.
- C. I think you would ask for a loan from the bank.
- D. Please ask for a loan from the bank.

Câu 24 [ID: 319037]

"Can I get you something to drink?" - " _____ "

- A. I'd like some Coke, thanks.
- B. Thank you. You're welcome.
- C. Yes, why not?
- D. Yes, you can, of course.

Câu 25 [ID: 319039]

Customer: "Can I have a look at that pullover, please?" - Salesgirl: " _____ ".

- A. It's much cheaper
- B. Which one? This one?
- C. Sorry, it is out of stock.
- D. Can I help you?

Câu 26 [ID: 319041]

"Can I make an appointment to see the doctor, please?" - " _____ ".

- A. Not at the moment. He can't be disturbed.
- B. OK, you will need to check my diary.
- C. OK, let me check the diary.
- D. Have a seat and I'll be with you in an hour.

Câu 27 [ID: 319043]

"Shall I collect the tickets for you?" - " _____ "

- A. I think you shall.
- B. In my opinion you would.
- C. That would be a real help.
- D. No, I don't have tickets.

Câu 28 [ID: 319045]

"Let's listen to this new CD" - " _____ "

- A. Who's the singer?
- B. It's in the record shop.
- C. I can hear it.
- D. I'll listen.

Câu 29 [ID: 319046]

Allan: "Do you mind if I use your dictionary? - Nick: " _____ "

- A. I'm afraid not.
- B. Without doubt.
- C. No, feel free.
- D. Straight ahead.

Câu 30 [ID: 319048]

"Hurry up! I need the report right now!" - "You'll get it when it's finished! _____ "

- A. All in good time!
- B. Have a thin time of it!
- C. A stitch in time saves nine!
- D. It's just the fullness of time!

ĐÁP ÁN

1. B	2. A	3. D	4. A	5. C	6. D	7. D	8. C	9. C	10. A
11. A	12. C	13. A	14. D	15. D	16. D	17. C	18. A	19. B	20. D
21. B	22. A	23. B	24. A	25. B	26. C	27. C	28. A	29. C	30. A

LUYỆN TẬP 3 (ID: ET1179)

Câu 1 [ID: 319759]

Ann: "Do you think you'll get the job?"

Mary: " _____ "

- A. I know so.
- B. Well, I hope so.
- C. I think not.
- D. Yes, that's right.

Câu 2 [ID: 319760]

A: "How's life?"

B: " _____ "

- A. Sure.
- B. Not too bad, but very busy.
- C. Very well, thank you.
- D. Pleased to meet you.

Câu 3 [ID: 319761]

A: "I hope to see you again."

B: "_____"

- A. I hope so, too.
- B. Good enough.
- C. Thank you.
- D. I really enjoy meeting you, too.

Câu 4 [ID: 319762]

"_____ was he driving when the accident happened?"

"About 60 kilometres an hour."

- A. How far
- B. How quick
- C. How fast
- D. How long

Câu 5 [ID: 319763]

Alice: "What shall we do this evening?"

Carol: "_____"

- A. Let's go out for dinner.
- B. Oh, that's good!
- C. No problem
- D. I went out for dinner

Câu 6 [ID: 319764]

"How do you do?"

"_____"

- A. How do you do?
- B. Good morning!
- C. Good morning
- D. I'm fine, thanks.

Câu 7 [ID: 319765]

A: "_____"

B: "By bus."

- A. What do you go to school?
- B. Do you go to school by bus?
- C. Who are you taken to school by?
- D. How do you come to school?

Câu 8 [ID: 319766]

A: " _____ "

B: "I've got no idea."

- A. It's your turn
- B. Are you tired?
- C. Let's go.
- D. What about you?

Câu 9 [ID: 319767]

"Sorry, I'm late."

" _____ We haven't started yet."

- A. Don't worry.
- B. Thank you.
- C. You are welcome.
- D. Why?

Câu 10 [ID: 319768]

"Have a good holiday, Peter!"

" _____ , Mary."

- A. You too
- B. You will
- C. You do
- D. You have

Câu 11 [ID: 319769]

John: "I've passed my final exam."

Tom: " _____ "

- A. Good luck.
- B. It's nice of you to say so.
- C. That's a good idea.
- D. Congratulations!

Câu 12 [ID: 319770]

Peter: "I enjoy listening to pop music."

Maria: " _____ "

- A. I'm, too.
- B. I don't.
- C. Neither do I.
- D. So am I.

Câu 13 [ID: 319771]

Ann: "Are you going to visit Britain next month?"

Kim: "Yes, _____"

- A. I am.
- B. I do.
- C. I like.
- D. I going.

Câu 14 [ID: 319772]

Bod: "James is a very brave man." David: "Yes, I wish I _____ his courage."

- A. had
- B. will have
- C. have had
- D. have

Câu 15 [ID: 319775]

David: "You've got a beautiful dress!"

Helen: " _____"

- A. I do.
- B. Thanks for your compliment.
- C. You, too.
- D. Okay.

Câu 16 [ID: 319781]

A: "Sorry I'm late."

B: " _____"

- A. OK.
- B. Don't worry.
- C. Hold the line, please.
- D. Go ahead.

Câu 17 [ID: 319785]

A: "Good morning. My name is Turner. I have a reservation."

B: " _____"

- A. What do you want?
- B. Yes, a single room for two nights.
- C. I haven't decided yet. What about you?
- D. What do you like?

Câu 18 [ID: 319786]

A: "Thank you for the lovely present."

B: "_____."

- A. Go ahead.
- B. Yes.
- C. Come on.
- D. I'm pleased you like it.

Câu 19 [ID: 319787]

A: "_____ do they travel abroad?"

B: "Once a year."

- A. When
- B. How
- C. What time
- D. How often

Câu 20 [ID: 319788]

Tom: "Congratulations!"

John: "_____"

- A. What a pity!
- B. Thank you.
- C. I'm sorry.
- D. You are welcome.

Câu 21 [ID: 319797]

Laura: "What a lovely house you have!"

Maria: "_____"

- A. Of course not, it's not costly.
- B. Thank you. Hope you will drop in.
- C. I think so.
- D. No problem.

Câu 22 [ID: 319800]

A: "I'm terribly sorry. I just forgot to call you yesterday."

B: "_____"

- A. Never mind. You need to remember next time.
- B. You're welcome.
- C. It's alright. We can talk about it today.
- D. That's ok. I'll remember.

Câu 23 [ID: 319801]

A: "I don't like living in an apartment. It's very inconvenient."

B: "_____"

A. But it isn't.

B. You bet!

C. No. I'm with you.

D. Of course.

Câu 24 [ID: 319802]

A: "You seemed to be so rude yesterday. What happened?"

B: "_____"

A. Don't apologize. It's not your fault.

B. Not at all. I just don't remember about it.

C. Thank you. Yesterday was not very good to me.

D. I'm sorry, but I wasn't very well yesterday.

Câu 25 [ID: 319803]

A: "Vietnam will take the first place on the medal table this SEA games."

B: "_____"

A. So will I.

B. There's no doubt about it.

C. I will, too.

D. Are you kidding me? It will.

Câu 26 [ID: 319804]

A: "I'm stuck in here. I just don't know what to do."

B: "_____"

A. Take it easy. We'll find out what happened.

B. Good luck.

C. Thanks, but don't mention it.

D. I'm glad you say so.

Câu 27 [ID: 319805]

A: "Relax, Harry. Everything will be alright."

B: "_____"

A. I'm glad you say so.

B. It's ok. I'm proud of you.

C. Thanks, John. But I'm really upset.

D. Thank you. You deserve it.

Câu 28 [ID: 319806]

A: "Passing a university entrance exam is not difficult."

B: "_____"

- A. I couldn't agree more. It's not easy.
- B. You must be kidding me. It's not easy.
- C. But I don't. I failed it last year.
- D. I do, too. I passed it last year.

Câu 29 [ID: 319807]

A: "What if I fail the exam tomorrow?"

B: "_____"

- A. It's ok. Thanks.
- B. Be confident.
- C. Not at all. You can make it.
- D. You can do it. Thanks anyway.

Câu 30 [ID: 319808]

"I can't thank you enough for your help."

"_____"

- A. My pleasure.
- B. My goodness
- C. I'd rather not.
- D. I don't mind.

Câu 31 [ID: 319809]

A: "This is a souvenir for you. I bought it when I was in Scotland."

B: "_____"

- A. Thank you very much. It's so beautiful.
- B. My pleasure. It's really nice.
- C. Don't mention it. It must have cost a lot.
- D. Thanks anyway. I really love it.

Câu 32 [ID: 319810]

A: "I feel that in 20 more years, a treatment for cancer will be discovered."

B: "_____"

- A. I don't think you're right. I couldn't agree more.
- B. Yes. I feel happy.
- C. Of course. That's not what I think.
- D. So do I.

Câu 33 [ID: 319811]

A: "Your designs look so gorgeous."

B: "_____"

- A. Thanks. These are my favourite, too.
- B. Never mind. Thanks.
- C. Very well-done.
- D. It doesn't matter.

Câu 34 [ID: 319812]

A: "Do you know what? They just called and offered me the job."

B: "_____"

- A. Be strong.
- B. It was nothing really.
- C. I'm glad you say so.
- D. Really? Congratulations.

Câu 35 [ID: 319813]

A: "In my opinion, robots will do all the difficult work in the future."

B: "_____"

- A. I'm afraid you bet.
- B. So will I.
- C. You can say that again.
- D. But, I won't.

Câu 36 [ID: 319814]

A: "Did you send the letter for me yet?"

B: "_____"

- A. Oh, I'm sorry. I'll do it right now.
- B. Not yet. Don't worry.
- C. Thanks. It's alright.
- D. Don't worry. No harm done.

Câu 37 [ID: 319815]

"Your parents must be proud of your result at school".

"_____"

- A. Sorry to hear that.
- B. Thanks. It's certainly encouraging.
- C. Of course
- D. I am glad you like it.

Câu 38 [ID: 319816]

A: "Your essay was just excellent. You deserved an A+."

B: "_____"

- A. That's ok. Take it easy.
- B. I believe you can do it.
- C. Thanks, Sir. I'm glad you like it.
- D. Thanks for your suggestion.

Câu 39 [ID: 319817]

A: "I think teenagers like us can change the world."

B: "_____"

- A. You're right. We can't do it.
- B. I couldn't agree more.
- C. Really? I think so.
- D. Neither do I.

Câu 40 [ID: 319818]

"Don't fail to send your parents my regards"

"_____"

- A. You are welcome.
- B. Good idea, thanks.
- C. Thanks, I'll remember.
- D. It's my pleasure.

Câu 41 [ID: 319819]

Tom "How did you get there?"

John: "_____"

- A. I came here last night.
- B. I came here by train.
- C. The train is so crowded.
- D. Is it far from here?

Câu 42 [ID: 319820]

Helen: "Would you rather go to the beach or to the mountain?"

Kim: "_____"

- A. That's very nice of you.
- B. The beach definitely.
- C. I'd love to go.
- D. Thanks for the mountains.

Câu 43 [ID: 319821]

Jack: "What's wrong with you?"

Jill: " _____ "

- A. Thank you very much.
- B. I'm having a slight headache.
- C. No, I don't care.
- D. Yes, I was tired yesterday.

Câu 44 [ID: 319822]

Mike: "So, you have your fifth high-school reunion coming up?"

Lane: " _____ "

- A. Oh, the school reunion was wonderful.
- B. The food at the reunion was excellent.
- C. Yes, I'm really looking forward to it.
- D. No, you're in no mood for the event.

Câu 45 [ID: 319823]

John: "What kind of job would you like?"

Mike: " _____ "

- A. Is there a good chance of promotion?
- B. I'm good at computing.
- C. Anytime after next week.
- D. Anything to do with computers.

Câu 46 [ID: 319824]

Peter: How are you today?

Susan: _____

- A. I feel like a million dollars.
- B. I feel like a million stars.
- C. I feel your ears burning.
- D. I can feel it in my bone.

Câu 47 [ID: 319825]

Henry: "Well, it was nice talking to you, but I have to dash."

Liz: " _____ "

- A. OK, see you.
- B. Yes, I enjoyed talking to you, too.
- C. Thanks! I will stop now.
- D. Yes, It was.

Câu 48 [ID: 319826]

"Could I speak to Susie May, please?"

"Yes, _____."

- A. Answering.
- B. Talking.
- C. Saying.
- D. Speaking.

Câu 49 [ID: 319827]

"All right. Keep your receipt. If something comes up, you can show it to us and you can get a refund."

"_____."

- A. OK, I won't use it.
- B. Thanks. I'll put it in a safe place.
- C. You are welcome. See you.
- D. Thank you. I'll keep it for you.

Câu 50 [ID: 319828]

"Mrs. Brown passed away yesterday."

"David has told me that. _____"

- A. By God.
- B. God rest her.
- C. God save the Queen.
- D. God bless.

ĐÁP ÁN

1. B	2. C	3. A	4. C	5. A	6. A	7. D	8. A	9. A	10. A
11. D	12. B	13. A	14. A	15. B	16. B	17. B	18. D	19. D	20. B
21. B	22. C	23. B	24. D	25. B	26. A	27. C	28. B	29. C	30. A
31. A	32. D	33. A	34. D	35. C	36. A	37. B	38. B	39. B	40. C
41. B	42. B	43. B	44. C	45. D	46. A	47. A	48. D	49. B	50. B

LUYỆN TẬP 4 (ID: EY1182)

Câu 1 [ID: 320506]

A: "I didn't see you when I came back here yesterday."

B: "_____"

- A. Thank you. I'll finish all my work today.
- B. I'm sorry, but I didn't see you here, either.
- C. I'm very sorry. My son had an accident yesterday afternoon.
- D. Forget about it. It's not your fault.

Câu 2 [ID: 320522]

A: "What do you think about his new car?"

B: "_____"

- A. You can say that again.
- B. Yes. It's really beautiful.
- C. I think it's a little expensive.
- D. Yes, I'm with you.

Câu 3 [ID: 320533]

A: "I think listening to music while learning is good."

B: "_____"

- A. Sorry, but I'm not in agreement with you.
- B. I'm afraid I couldn't agree more.
- C. Me neither.
- D. I don't agree. You can say that again.

Câu 4 [ID: 320550]

A: "Zoology is one of the most interesting subjects."

B: "_____"

- A. I don't think you're right. It's so boring.
- B. I couldn't agree more. It's so boring.
- C. No. It's very exciting.
- D. I'm afraid I'm not with you. It's very exciting.

Câu 5 [ID: 320572]

A: "How do you feel about his comment?"

B: "_____"

- A. I don't think he knew what he was saying.
- B. If you ask me, I feel tired.
- C. Yes, it's a very good idea.
- D. I'm afraid I disagree with you.

Câu 6 [ID: 320575]

A: "I've found out the answer for your question. Is it Mexico?"

B: "_____"

- A. How nice of you to say so.
- B. You've done a good job.
- C. Take it easy. Everything will be fine.
- D. Don't give up.

Câu 7 [ID: 320630]

A: "I've finished all the assignments for this week."

B: " _____ "

- A. Good job.
- B. Be confident.
- C. Good luck.
- D. Be strong.

Câu 8 [ID: 320631]

A: "Do you think reading books is a good hobby?"

B: " _____ "

- A. In my judgement, you should read more.
- B. I believe you're right.
- C. Certainly. It's much better than playing games.
- D. It's alright.

Câu 9 [ID: 320632]

A: "I'm sorry. But I don't know where it is."

B: " _____ "

- A. Thank you. I'll do it myself.
- B. It's ok. Thanks anyway.
- C. That's alright. I'm so sorry.
- D. I really appreciate it.

Câu 10 [ID: 320633]

A: "This is really a nice dress. Thanks, Tom."

B: " _____ "

- A. Not at all. I'm glad you like it.
- B. I apologize for this dress.
- C. You're welcome. It was very nice of you.
- D. Thanks anyway.

Câu 11 [ID: 320634]

A: "You have done a really good job."

B: " _____ "

- A. Thanks. How nice of you to say so.
- B. Thank you. You really deserve it.
- C. Thanks. I'm proud of you.
- D. Thank you. It's going to be alright.

Câu 12 [ID: 320635]

A: "I think swimming helps us exercise all our muscles."

B: " _____ "

- A. Yes. Swimming does, too.
- B. Right. I'm not with you.
- C. There's no doubt about it.
- D. No. You can say that again.

Câu 13 [ID: 320636]

A: "Thanks for helping me with my homework, John."

B: " _____ "

- A. I don't mean so.
- B. Please don't blame yourself.
- C. Don't mention it.
- D. No harm done.

Câu 14 [ID: 320637]

A: "I'm so upset. Everybody seems to betray me."

B: " _____ "

- A. Relax. It's not that bad.
- B. Yeah. I think you can do it.
- C. Oh. I'm sorry.
- D. Don't apologize them.

Câu 15 [ID: 320638]

A: "Do you believe that we are destroying our environment?"

B: " _____ "

- A. Yes, I believe in you.
- B. That's exactly what I think.
- C. I believe in anything we do.
- D. It's certain that our environment is being destroyed.

Câu 16 [ID: 320639]

A: "I'm very sorry for letting you wait for so long."

B: " _____ "

- A. Don't apologize. I've just arrived here.
- B. You're welcome.
- C. It's doesn't matter. Thank you.
- D. My pleasure. Don't worry about it.

Câu 17 [ID: 320640]

A: "You're late again, Michael."

B: " _____ "

- A. Never mind. I stayed up too late last night.
- B. I'm so sorry. The traffic was terrible.
- C. It's ok. Thanks for telling me.
- D. That's alright. It's my fault, anyway.

Câu 18 [ID: 320641]

A: "I got 500 for the TOEFL, Dad."

B: " _____ "

- A. Good for you. Thank you.
- B. I'm glad you say so.
- C. Well done, son! I'm very proud of you.
- D. You can do it.

Câu 19 [ID: 320642]

A: "I believe studying abroad is the only way to get a good job."

B: " _____ "

- A. I'm sorry, but I can't agree more.
- B. That's right. That's why I just want to study in my own country.
- C. I don't think you're right, but I do believe so.
- D. Are you kidding me? It's never the only way.

Câu 20 [ID: 320643]

A: "I don't think I can solve this problem."

B: " _____ "

- A. That's ok. Try your best.
- B. Congratulations
- C. Good for you.
- D. Come on! Don't give up.

Câu 21 [ID: 320644]

A: "Which hat do you like best?"

B: " _____ "

- A. Yes, I like it best
- B. The one I tried on first
- C. Which one do you like?
- D. No, I haven't tried any

Câu 22 [ID: 320645]

A: "You must have found reading my essay very tiring."

B: "_____. I enjoyed it"

- A. Not in the least.
- B. Just in case.
- C. at all costs.
- D. you are welcome.

Câu 23 [ID: 320646]

A: "Where is your studying group going to meet next weekend?"

B: "_____."

- A. We are too busy on week days.
- B. The library could be best.
- C. Why don't you look at the atlas.
- D. Studying in a group is great fun!

Câu 24 [ID: 320647]

A: "Has an announcement been made about the eight o'clock flight to Paris?"

B: "_____."

- A. Not yet.
- B. Yes, It was.
- C. I don't think that.
- D. Sorry I don't.

Câu 25 [ID: 320648]

A: "What do you usually do on Sundays?"

B: "_____."

- A. I used to drive to work
- B. I'd be sleeping all day
- C. I'm not doing anything
- D. I usually sleep until noon

Câu 26 [ID: 320649]

A: "I've got to go, Sarah. So long."

B: "So long, Jack. And_____."

- A. be careful.
- B. don't hurry.
- C. take care.
- D. don't take it seriously.

Câu 27 [ID: 320650]

A: "Happy Christmas!"

B: "_____."

- A. You are the same!
- B. Same for you!
- C. The same to you!
- D. Happy Christmas with you!

Câu 28 [ID: 320651]

A: "Why do you think most people learn English?"

B: "_____."

- A. All of them are.
- B. I heard it was very good.
- C. Very often it's to get a better job.
- D. Because I like it.

Câu 29 [ID: 320652]

A: "Excuse me! Where's the nearest police station?"

B: "_____."

- A. It's over there.
- B. I'm afraid not.
- C. Don't worry.
- D. Yes, I think so.

Câu 30 [ID: 320653]

A: "How do you do?"

B: "_____."

- A. Yeah, OK.
- B. Not too bad.
- C. How do you do?
- D. I'm well. Thank you.

ĐÁP ÁN

1. C	2. C	3. A	4. A	5. A	6. B	7. A	8. C	9. B	10. A
11. A	12. C	13. C	14. A	15. B	16. A	17. B	18. C	19. D	20. D
21. B	22. A	23. B	24. A	25. D	26. C	27. C	28. C	29. A	30. C

C- THI ONLINE

Truy cập [ID: ET1180, ET1181](#).

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 14: SỐ CẾM - ĐO LƯỜNG

- CÁC QUY TẮC CHÍNH TẮ

LÝ THUYẾT (ID: EV1068)

Trong tiết học này, chúng ta sẽ tìm hiểu về cách viết của số, ngày tháng và các đại lượng đo lường, các quy tắc chính tả trong tiếng Anh.

Đây là một phần kiến thức khá cơ bản nhưng đôi khi lại khiến chúng ta nhầm lẫn, chúng ta cùng tìm hiểu các em nhé!

I. SỐ, NGÀY THÁNG VÀ CÂN ĐO (Numerals dates, weights and measures)

1. Số đếm (Cardinal number) (Tính từ và đại từ)

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. One (một) | 2. Two (hai) |
| 3. Three (ba) | 4. Four (bốn) |
| 5. Five (năm) | 6. Six (sáu) |
| 7. Seven (bảy) | 8. Eight (tám) |
| 9. Nine (chín) | 10. Ten (mười) |
| 11. Eleven (mười một) | 18. Eighteen (mười tám) |
| 13. Thirteen (mười ba) | 20. Twenty (hai mươi) |
| 15. Fifteen (mười lăm) | 22. Twenty-two (hai mươi hai) |
| 17. Seventeen (mười bảy) | 24. Twenty-four (hai mươi bốn) |
| 19. Nineteen (mười chín) | 26. Twenty-six (hai mươi sáu) |
| 21. Twenty-one (hai mươi mốt) | 28. Twenty-eight (hai mươi tám) |
| 23. Twenty-three (hai mươi ba) | 30. Thirty (ba mươi) |
| 25. Twenty-five (hai mươi lăm) | 40. Forty (bốn mươi) |
| 27. Twenty-seven (hai mươi bảy) | 50. Fifty (năm mươi) |
| 29. Twenty-nine (hai mươi chín) | 70. Seventy (bảy mươi) |
| 31. Thirty-one (ba mươi mốt) | 90. Ninety (chín mươi) |
| 12. Twelve (mười hai) | 60. Sixty (sáu mươi) |
| 14. Fourteen (mười bốn) | 80. Eighty (tám mươi) |
| 16. Sixteen (mười sáu) | 100. A hundred (một trăm) |

1,000. A thousand (một nghìn)	140. A hundred and forty (một trăm bốn mươi)
400 Four hundred (bốn trăm)	
1,000,000. A million (một triệu)	1,006. A/one thousand and six. (một nghìn lẻ sáu)
	5,000. Five thousand (năm nghìn)

260,127. Two hundred and sixty thousand, one hundred and twenty-seven (hai trăm sáu mươi nghìn một trăm hai mươi bảy)

2. Các điểm cần lưu ý về số đếm:

a) Khi viết, hoặc đọc, một số gồm có ba chữ số trở lên, ta đặt "and" trước hàng chục và hàng đơn vị:

Eg: 713. seven hundred and thirteen (bảy trăm mười ba)

5,102. five thousand, one hundred and two. (năm ngàn một trăm lẻ hai)

6,100. sixthousand, one hundred (sáu ngàn một trăm)

"and" cũng được dùng tương tự như thế với hàng trăm ngàn:

Eg: 320,410. three hundred and twenty thousand, four hundred and ten (ba trăm hai chục ngàn bốn trăm mười)

và hàng trăm triệu

Eg: 303,000,000. three hundred and three million (ba trăm lẻ ba triệu)

b) Trước các số chỉ trăm, ngàn, triệu v.v... ta hãy dùng "a" hơn "one", khi các số này đứng một mình

Eg: 100. a hundred

1000. a thousand

1,000,000. a hundred thousand (một trăm ngàn)

Đối với các số 101, 102, v.v... và 1001, 1002, v.v... ta cũng có thể dùng "a"

Mặt khác ta dùng "one"

Eg: 1,040. a/one thousand and forty (một nghìn lẻ bốn mươi),

Nhưng 1,140. one thousand, one hundred and forty (một ngàn một trăm bốn mươi)

c) Các từ "hundred, thousand, million, dozen" khi dùng chỉ một số lượng xác định, không bao giờ có số nhiều:

Eg: Six hundred men (sáu trăm người)

Ten thousand pounds (mười ngàn bảng)

Two dozen eggs (hai tá trứng)

Tuy nhiên, nếu các số từ này được dùng để chỉ một số lượng lớn không xác định, chúng có dạng số nhiều:

Eg: Hundreds of people (hàng trăm người)

Thousands of birds (hàng ngàn con chim)

Dozens of times (hàng chục lần)

Lưu ý ở đây có giới từ "of" đi sau các từ *hundreds*, "of" không được dùng với số lượng xác định ngoại trừ trước "the/them these/those" hoặc các từ sở hữu:

Eg: Six of the blue ones. (Sáu cái màu xanh)

Ten of these (Mười cái này)

Four of Tom's brothers. (Bốn anh em của Tom)

d) Các số có thể 4 chữ số trở lên được chia làm hai nhóm. Dấu thập phân được đọc là "point" (chấm)

Eg: 10.92 ten point nine two (mười chấm chín mươi hai)

Chữ số zero sau dấu đọc là "o" và zero

3. Số thứ tự (ordinal numbers)

First (thứ nhất)

Second (thứ hai)

Third (thứ ba)

Fourth (thứ tư)

Fifth (thứ năm)

Sixth (thứ sáu)

Seventh (thứ bảy)

Eighth (thứ tám)

Ninth (thứ chín)

Tenth (thứ mười)

Eleventh (thứ mười một)

Twelfth (thứ mười hai)

Thirteenth (thứ mười ba)

Fourteenth (thứ mười bốn)

Fifteenth (thứ mười lăm)

Sixteenth (thứ mười sáu)

Seventeenth (thứ mười bảy)

Eighteenth (thứ mười tám)

Nineteenth (thứ mười chín)

Twentieth (thứ hai mươi)

Twenty-first (thứ hai mươi một)

Twenty-second (thứ hai mươi hai)

Twenty-third (thứ hai mươi ba)

Twenty-fourth (thứ hai mươi tư)

Twenty-fifth (thứ hai mươi năm)

Twenty-sixth (thứ hai mươi sáu)

Twenty-seventh (thứ hai mươi bảy)

Twenty-eighth (thứ hai mươi tám)

Twenty-ninth (thứ hai mươi chín)

Thirtieth (thứ ba mươi)

Thirty-first (thứ ba mươi một)

Hundredth (thứ một trăm)

Thirtieth (thứ ba mươi)

Millionth (thứ một triệu)

Fortieth (thứ bốn mươi)

Seventieth (thứ bảy mươi)

Sixtieth (thứ sáu mươi)

Thousandth (thứ một nghìn)

Khi viết hoặc đọc các phân số khác ($1/2$ và $1/4$) ta dùng liên kết giữa số đếm và 1 số thứ tự

Eg: $1/5$: a/one fifth

$1/10$: a/one tenth

$3/5$: three fifths

$7/10$: seven tenths

Một số nguyên + một phân số có thể được theo sau bởi một danh từ số nhiều:

Eg: $2\frac{1}{4}$ miles: two and a quarter miles ($2\frac{1}{4}$ dặm)

$\frac{1}{2}$ (phần nửa - half) có thể có danh từ trực tiếp theo sau nhưng không có of (điều này khác với các phân số khác)

Eg: Half a second (nửa giây)

Nhưng A quarter of second ($1/4$ giây)

Half + of cũng có thể được dùng, nhưng of được dùng tùy ý:

Half (of) my earnings go in tax.

(Nửa số thu nhập của tôi đi vào thuế)

4. Các điểm cần lưu ý về số thứ tự:

a) Hãy lưu ý chính tả đặc biệt của fifth, eighth, ninth và twelfth

b) Khi số thứ tự được trình bày bằng con số, hai chữ cái cuối cùng của chữ viết phải được giữ lại:

Eg: First = 1st

Third = 3rd

Twenty-first = 21st

Sixty-third = 63rd

Second = 2nd

Fourth = 4th

Eightieth = 80th

c) Trong các số thứ tự kép qui tắc về từ "and" cũng giống như trong số điểm kép:

Eg: 101 st = the hundred and first (Thứ 101)

Trước số thứ tự thường có the:

Eg: The sixtieth day (Ngày thứ 60)

The fortieth visitor (Vị khách thứ 40)

Tước hiệu vua được viết bằng số La Mã

Eg: Charles V (vua Charles đệ Ngũ)

James III (vua Jame đệ Tam)

Elizabeth II (Nữ hoàng Elizabeth đệ Nhị)

Nhưng trong văn nói ta dùng the + số thứ tự

Eg: Charles the Fifth/James the Third/Elizabeth the Second.

5. Ngày, tháng, năm

a)

• Ngày trong tuần

Sunday (Sun) (chủ nhật)

Monday (Mon) (thứ hai)

Tuesday (Tues) (thứ ba)

Wednesday (Wed) (thứ tư)

Thursday (Thurs) (thứ năm)

Friday (Fri) (thứ sáu)

Saturday (Sat) (thứ bảy)

• Tháng trong năm

January (Jan) (tháng Giêng)

February (Feb) (Tháng Hai)

March (Mar) (Tháng Ba)

April (Apr) (Tháng Tư)

May (Tháng Năm)

June (Tháng Sáu)

July (Tháng Bảy)

August (Aug) (Tháng Tám)

September (Sept) (Tháng Chín)

October (Oct) (Tháng Mười)

November (Nov) (Tháng Mười một)

December (Dec) (Tháng Mười hai)

Ngày tháng thường được viết hoa.

Ngày được viết bằng chữ số thứ tự:

Eg: March the tenth (Ngày 10-3)

July the fourteenth (Ngày 14 tháng 7)

Hoặc: The tenth of March.

Tuy nhiên, chúng có thể được viết bằng nhiều cách khác nhau, ví dụ:

Eg: March the tenth có thể được viết là:

March 10, 10 March, 10th of March

March 10th, 10th March, March the 10th

b) Năm

Khi đọc hoặc nói ta dùng thuật ngữ hundred chứ không dùng thousand.

Do đó năm 1987 được đọc là "Nineteen hundred and eighty-seven" hoặc "Nineteen eight-seven".

Các năm trước Thiên Chúa Giáng sinh thường có BC kèm theo sau. Còn những năm sau Thiên Chúa trở đi thỉnh thoảng có AD kèm theo sau. (AD = Anno Domini)

6. Trọng lượng, chiều dài và dung tích.

a) Trọng lượng

Trọng lượng trong tiếng Anh được tính như sau:

- 16 ounces (oz) (ao xơ) = 1 pound (lb.) (1 cân)
- 14 pounds = 1 stone (st.) (1 yến)
- 8 stone = 1 hundred weight (wt.) (1 tạ)
- 20 hundred weight = 1 ton (1 tấn Anh)
- 1 pound = 0.454 kilogram (0,454 kg)
- 2.2 pounds = 1 kilogram (1 kg)
- 2.204.6 lbs = 1 metric tone (1 tấn theo hệ mét)

Các dạng số nhiều:

"Ounce, pound và ton" có thể có "s" khi chúng được dùng như danh từ. Còn "stone" và "hundredweight" không có "s". Ví dụ ta nói six pounds of sugar (sáu cân đường) nhưng: ten hundredweight of coal (mười tạ than), thì không có thay đổi gì cả

Khi dùng trong tính từ kép, các thuật từ này không có "s"

Eg: A ten-ton lorry (một chiếc xe tải 10 tấn)

Kilo hoặc kilogram thường có s ở dạng số nhiều khi dùng như danh từ:

Eg: Two kilos/kilograms of apples (hai ký lô táo)

b) Độ dài

Độ dài trong tiếng Anh được tính như sau:

- 12 inches (in) = 1 foot (ft.) (bộ)
- 3 feet = 1 yard (yd.) (ya)
- 1.760 yard = 1 mile (m.) (dặm)
- 1 inch = 2.54 centimetres (cm) (2,54cm)
- 1 yard = 0.914 metre (m) (0,914 m)
- 1 mile = 1,609 metres (m) (1,609 km)

Dạng số nhiều

Khi có số nhiều inch/dặm/xăngtimet ta thường dùng dạng số nhiều "s":

Eg: one inch (1 in), ten inches (10 in) one mile (1 dặm), four miles (4 dặm)
one centimeter (1cm), five centimeters (5 xangtimet)

Khi có nhiều fut dùng foot hoặc feet. Đối với chiều cao ta hay dùng feet hơn.

Eg: six foot/feet tall. (cao sáu fut)

two foot/feet long (dài hai fut)

Trong các tính từ ghép ta không dùng dạng số nhiều:

Eg: a two-mile walk (một cuộc đi bộ dài 2 dặm)
a six-inch ruler (một cây thước dài 6 inxơ)

c) Đồng chất lỏng:

- 2 pints (pt.) (panh) = 1 quart (qt.)
- 4 quarts = 1 gallon (gal.)
- 1 pint = 0.568 litre (l) (0,568 lít)
- 1 gallon = 4,55 litres (4,55 lít)

II. CÁC QUY TẮC CHÍNH TẢ (Spelling Rules)

1. Giới thiệu

Các nguyên âm gồm: a, e, i, o, u

Các phụ âm gồm: b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, w, x, y, z

Một tiếp vị ngữ là một nhóm ngữ cái gán vào đuôi từ: beauty-beautiful (ful là tiếp vị ngữ)

2. Sự gấp đôi phụ âm

a) Các từ đơn âm tiết có một nguyên âm và tận cùng bằng một phụ âm đơn được gấp đôi phụ âm cuối khi ta thêm vào nó hậu tố có nguyên âm đi đầu:

Eg: hit + ing = hitting, nhưng keep – keeping (hai nguyên âm)

knit + ed = knitted, nhưng help – helped (hai phụ âm)

run + er = runner, nhưng love – lover (có một nguyên âm cuối)

qu được xem là phụ âm: quit – quitting.

Khi phụ âm cuối là w, x, hoặc y có không có gấp đôi:

Eg: row + ed = rowed, box + ing = boxing.

b) Các từ hai hoặc ba âm tiết có một phụ âm đi sau chót, trước nó là một nguyên âm đơn và khi dấu nhấn rơi vào âm tiết cuối, ta gấp đôi phụ âm cuối đó.

Eg: acquit + ed = acquitted

begin + er = beginner, nhưng murmur + ed = murmured

deter + ed = deterred, nhưng answer + ed = answered

recur + ing = recurring nhưng orbit + ing = orbiting.

Tuy nhiên, focus + ed có thể là focused, hoặc focussed và bias + ed có thể là biased hoặc biassed.

c) Các phụ âm cuối của handicap, kidnap, worship cũng được gấp đôi:

handicap – handicapped; worship – worship; kidnap – kidnapped

d) Các từ tận cùng là l trước đó là một nguyên âm hoặc hai nguyên âm đọc rời nhau, ta gấp đôi l.

Eg: appal – appalled, model – mode/ling, cruel – cruelly, refuel – refuel/ed

distil – distiller, repel – repelled, duel – duel/ist, signal – signal/ed.

3. Sự lược bỏ nguyên âm e.

a) Các từ có âm cuối là e đi sau một phụ âm, khi thêm hậu tố vào ta bỏ “e”

Eg: believe + er = believer, move + able = movable

love + ing = loving

Nhưng “dye” và “sing” vẫn giữ “e” khi thêm ing vào để tránh nhầm lẫn với “die” và “sing”

Eg: dye – dyeing, singe – singeing

Trong tiếng Mỹ, "age" vẫn giữ "e" khi thêm "ing" vào:

age – ageing

likable cũng có thể viết likeable.

Các từ tận cùng bằng "ce" hoặc "ge" đôi khi vẫn giữ lại "e".

b) Âm cuối e vẫn giữ lại khi hậu tố bắt đầu một phụ âm:

Eg: engage – engagement, fortunate – fortunate – fortunately.

hope – hopeful, immediate – immediately.

sincere – sincerely

Nhưng âm e trong able/ible bị bỏ đi khi đổi sang trạng từ:

Eg: comfortable – comfortably, incredible – incredibly

Âm cuối e cũng bị lược bỏ trong các từ sau: argue – argument, due – duly

Eg: judge – judgement hoặc judgment

true – truly, whole – wholly

c) Các từ tận cùng là ee thì không thể bỏ e trước một hậu tố:

Eg: agree – agreed, agreeing, agreement.

foresee – foreseeing, foreseeable.

4. Các từ tận cùng bằng ce và ge.

a) Các từ tận cùng là ce, ge không bỏ e khi thêm hậu tố bắt đầu bằng a, o hoặc u

Eg: courage – courageous, peace – peaceful

manage – manageable, replace – replaceable

outrage – outrageous, trace – traceable

Điều này để tránh sự thay đổi trong cách đọc, bởi vì c và f, g thường được đọc mềm trước e và i nhưng đứng trước a, o, u

b) Các từ tận cùng bằng ce đổi e thành i trước ous:

Eg: grace – gracious, space – spacious, malice – malicious, vice – vicious.

5. Hậu tố ful

a) Khi full được gắn vào một từ ta bỏ đi chữ l thứ hai:

Eg: beauty + ful = beautiful (nhưng: beautifully)

use + full = useful (nhưng usefully)

Nếu từ gốc có hai chữ l ta bỏ chữ l thứ hai:

Eg: skill + full = skilful

Lưu ý: full + fill = fulfil

6. Các từ tận cùng bằng y.

Các từ tận cùng là y trước đó là một phụ âm ta đổi y thành i trước bất cứ hậu tố nào ngoại trừ ing.

Eg: carry + ed = carried nhưng carry + ing = carrying.

happy + ly = happily nhưng hurry + ing = hurrying

sunny + er = sunnier

y theo sau bằng một nguyên âm thì không đổi:

Eg: obey + ed = obeyed, play + er = player

7. Nguyên âm ie và ei

Quy tắc thông thường i đi trước e, ngoại trừ sau c: believe, sieve nhưng deceive, receipt.

Tuy nhiên vẫn có một số ngoại lệ sau:

beige (màu be)

counterfeit (vật giả)

deign (chiếu cố, hạ cố)

eiderdown (nệm lông vịt)

eight (tám)

either (hoặc là)

feign (giả đò)

feint (đánh nhử)

neigh (tiếng ngựa hí)

neighbor (láng giềng)

neither (cũng không)

reign (triều đại)

rein (dây cương)

seize (nhắm bắt)

skein (cuộn chỉ)

sleigh (xe trượt tuyết)

foreign (ngoại quốc), sleight (trong sleight of hand : trò quỷ thuật, sự lừa dối)

forfeit (tiền phạt, tiền bồi thường)

freight (tiền thuê tàu)

heifer (bê cái)

height (chiều cao)

heinous (tàn ác)

heir (người thừa kế)

inveigh (đả kích)

inveigle (dụ dỗ)

leisure (sự thành thời)

surfeit (sự ngấy)

their (của họ)

veil (trướng, màn)

vein (tĩnh mạch)

weight (trọng lượng)

weir (đập nước)

weird (kỳ quặc, khó hiểu)

8. Dấu gạch nối

a) Một từ ghép do hai hay nhiều từ ghép lại thành một đơn vị từ. Ta có thể viết:

- như một từ: bystander (người ngoài cuộc), hairdresser (thợ uốn cắt tóc), teacup (tách uống trà)
- như hai hay nhiều từ: amusement arcade (phòng trò chơi), post office (bưu điện)
- với một dấu gạch nối: launching – pad (bệ phóng tên lửa) lay – by (góc đỗ xe), tooth – brush (bàn chải đánh răng)

Trong hầu hết các trường hợp không có quy tắc cố định là có dùng dấu gạch nối hay không. Khi một từ ghép đã được sử dụng nhiều thì có thể bỏ dấu gạch nối đi như: layby, toothbrush. Tuy vậy, điều này không phải lúc nào cũng xảy ra và một nhà văn Anh có thể viết toothbrush, tooth brush hoặc tooth-brush tùy ý.

Nếu từ kép do các từ đơn âm tiết ghép lại, ta có thể bỏ đi dấu gạch nối.

b) Dấu gạch nối cần thiết phải có:

- Khi thiếu có cách đọc hoặc nghĩa của nó có thể không rõ:

Eg: co-operate (hợp tác) re – cover (đậy/che/phủ lại)

- Khi các từ tạo thành một từ ghép trong câu:

a do – it – yourself shop (một cửa hiệu bán hàng cho những người khéo tay hay làm (tự làm lấy công việc thay vì đi thuê người khác những công việc sửa chữa, trang trí... nhà cửa)

Eg: a go – as – you – please railway ticket

(một vé xe lửa tự do, tức có thể đi lúc nào cũng được)

- Trong các cụm tính từ chỉ tuổi tác, kích cỡ, trọng lượng và khoảng thời gian:

Eg: a five – year – old child (một đứa trẻ 5 tuổi)

a six – foot wall (một bức tường cao 6 feet)

a five – minute interval (một khoảng năm phút)

Lưu ý từ ghép không có dạng số nhiều (không có s)

Các tổ hợp trạng từ/phân từ dùng như tính từ thường có dấu gạch nối đặc biệt là để tránh hiểu lầm.

Eg: Low – flying aircraft (Một chiếc máy bay thấp)

Quick – dissolving sugar (đường tan nhanh)

c) Dấu gạch nối được dùng để ngắt quãng, tách âm tiết đầu hoặc cuối của từ nhiều âm tiết khi viết ở cuối hàng:

Eg: dis – courage, look – ing, inter – val

Một từ đơn âm tiết không nên chia ra.

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN
ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI
16 Hàng Chuối - Hai Bà Trưng - Hà Nội

Giám đốc - Tổng Biên tập: (04) 39715011
Quản lý xuất bản: (04) 39728806
Biên tập: (04) 39714896
Kỹ thuật xuất bản: (04) 39715013

Chịu trách nhiệm xuất bản: Giám đốc - Tổng biên tập: TS. PHẠM THỊ TRÂM

Biên tập xuất bản: PHAN HẢI NHƯ

Biên tập chuyên ngành: DƯƠNG THU TRANG

Chế bản: ĐÀO BÍCH DIỆP

Trình bày bìa: NGUYỄN TUẤN SANG

Đối tác liên kết: Công ty cổ phần Công nghệ Giáo dục trực tuyến ALADANH

PRO S TIẾNG ANH - TẬP 2

Mã số: 2L - 1243 PT2017

In 2000 cuốn, khổ 19x27cm tại Công ty TNHH in Khuyến học

Địa chỉ: Số 0/64 ngõ 35 phố Cát Linh, phường Cát Linh, quận Đống Đa, Hà Nội

Số xuất bản: 3736- 2017/CXBIPH/04 - 350/ĐHQGHN, ngày 27/10/2017

Quyết định xuất bản số: 1384 LK-XH/QĐ-NXB ĐHQGHN ngày 09/11/2017

In xong và nộp lưu chiểu năm 2017